**Latin for Beginners eBook**

**Latin for Beginners**

The following sections of this BookRags Literature Study Guide is offprint from Gale's For Students Series: Presenting Analysis, Context, and Criticism on Commonly Studied Works: Introduction, Author Biography, Plot Summary, Characters, Themes, Style, Historical Context, Critical Overview, Criticism and Critical Essays, Media Adaptations, Topics for Further Study, Compare & Contrast, What Do I Read Next?, For Further Study, and Sources.

(c)1998-2002; (c)2002 by Gale. Gale is an imprint of The Gale Group, Inc., a division of Thomson Learning, Inc. Gale and Design and Thomson Learning are trademarks used herein under license.

The following sections, if they exist, are offprint from Beacham's Encyclopedia of Popular Fiction: "Social Concerns", "Thematic Overview", "Techniques", "Literary Precedents", "Key Questions", "Related Titles", "Adaptations", "Related Web Sites". (c)1994-2005, by Walton Beacham.

The following sections, if they exist, are offprint from Beacham's Guide to Literature for Young Adults: "About the Author", "Overview", "Setting", "Literary Qualities", "Social Sensitivity", "Topics for Discussion", "Ideas for Reports and Papers". (c)1994-2005, by Walton Beacham.

All other sections in this Literature Study Guide are owned and copyrighted by BookRags, Inc.

**Contents**

**Table of Contents**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Table of Contents | |
| Section | Page |
|  | |
| Start of eBook | 1 |
| PART III.  CONSTRUCTIONS | 1 |
| APPENDIXES AND VOCABULARIES | 1 |
| APPENDIX II.  RULES OF SYNTAX 261-264 | 1 |
| APPENDIX III.  REVIEWS 265-282 | 1 |
| INDEX 344-348 | 2 |
| TO THE STUDENT—­BY WAY OF INTRODUCTION | 2 |
| PART I | 4 |
| THE ALPHABET | 4 |
| SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS[1] | 4 |
| SYLLABLES | 6 |
| QUANTITY | 7 |
| ACCENT | 8 |
| HOW TO READ LATIN | 8 |
| PART II | 9 |
| LESSON I | 9 |
| LESSON II | 11 |
| LESSON III | 12 |
| LESSON IV | 14 |
| LESSON V | 15 |
| LESSON VI | 17 |
| JULIA AND GALBA | 19 |
| LESSON VII | 19 |
| LESSON VIII | 21 |
| LESSON IX | 24 |
| GALBA AND MARCUS | 25 |
| LESSON X | 25 |
| LESSON XI | 27 |
| LESSON XII | 28 |
| GERMANIA | 29 |
| LESSON XIII | 29 |
| MARCUS AND CORNELIUS | 31 |
| THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS | 31 |
| LESSON XV | 33 |
| LESSON XVI | 34 |
| EXAMPLES | 35 |
| LESSON XVII | 36 |
| EXAMPLES | 37 |
| CORNELIUS AND MARCUS | 37 |
| THE BOYS SEXTUS AND MARCUS | 39 |
| LESSON XIX | 40 |
| LESSON XX | 42 |
| LESSON XXI | 43 |
| LESSON XXII | 45 |
| LESSON XXIII | 46 |
| LESSON XXIV | 47 |
| LESSON XXV | 48 |
| LESSON XXVI | 49 |
| LESSON XXVII | 51 |
| LESSON XXVIII | 53 |
| LESSON XXIX | 54 |
| LESSON XXX | 56 |
| LESSON XXXI | 58 |
| THE BOYS TITUS, MARCUS, AND QUINTUS | 60 |
| LESSON XXXII | 60 |
| LESSON XXXIII | 62 |
| LESSON XXXIV | 64 |
| LESSON XXXV | 65 |
| LESSON XXXVI | 67 |
| LESSON XXXVII | 70 |
| LESSON XXXVIII | 72 |
| LESSON XXXIX | 75 |
| CLASS I | 76 |
| LESSON XL | 77 |
| CLASS II | 77 |
| MASCULINES AND FEMININES | 77 |
| LESSON XLI | 78 |
| LESSON XLII | 79 |
| LESSON XLIII | 80 |
| LESSON XLIV | 82 |
| LESSON XLV | 84 |
| CLASS I | 85 |
| CLASS II | 85 |
| CLASS III | 85 |
| LESSON XLVI | 86 |
| PARADIGMS | 87 |
| LESSON XLVII | 87 |
| LESSON XLVIII | 90 |
| LESSON XLIX | 92 |
| LESSON L | 94 |
| LESSON LI | 96 |
| LESSON LII | 97 |
| LESSON LIII | 100 |
| LESSON LIV | 102 |
| LESSON LV | 103 |
| LESSON LVI | 104 |
| EXAMPLES | 105 |
| LESSON LVII | 106 |
| LESSON LVIII | 108 |
| LESSON LIX | 110 |
| LESSON LX | 111 |
| PART III | 113 |
| INTRODUCTORY NOTE | 113 |
| LESSON LXI | 113 |
| LESSON LXII | 115 |
| LESSON LXIII | 116 |
| LESSON LXIV | 119 |
| EXAMPLES | 120 |
| LESSON LXV | 121 |
| LESSON LXVI | 122 |
| LESSON LXVII | 125 |
| LESSON LXVIII | 127 |
| LESSON LXIX | 129 |
| LESSON LXX | 131 |
| LESSON LXXI | 133 |
| PARADIGM OF THE GERUND | 133 |
| LESSON LXXII | 135 |
| LESSON LXXIII | 138 |
| LESSON LXXIV | 141 |
| LESSON LXXV | 142 |
| LESSON LXXVI | 143 |
| LESSON LXXVII | 145 |
| LESSON LXXVIII | 146 |
| LESSON LXXIX | 147 |
| READING MATTER | 148 |
| THE LABORS OF HERCULES | 150 |
| LIV.  HERCULES CONQUERS THE MINYAE | 150 |
| HE COMMITS A CRIME AND GOES TO THE DELPHIAN ORACLE TO SEEK EXPIATION | 151 |
| LVI.  SLAYING THE LERNE’AN HYDRA | 152 |
| LVII.  THE ARCADIAN STAG AND THE ERYMANTHIAN BOAR | 152 |
|  | 153 |
| THE FLESH-EATING HORSES OF DIOME’DES | 153 |
| LX.  THE BELT OF HIPPOL’YTE, QUEEN OF THE AMAZONS | 154 |
| THE DESCENT TO HADES AND THE DOG CER’BERUS | 154 |
| LXI.  PUBLIUS IS BORN NEAR POMPE’II | 154 |
| LXII.  HIS LIFE ON THE FARM | 155 |
|  | 156 |
| LXIV.  LENTULUS REACHES HOME :  PUBLIUS VISITS POMPEII WITH HIS FATHER | 157 |
| LXV.  A DAY AT POMPEII | 158 |
| LXVI.  LENTULUS ENGAGES A TUTOR FOR HIS SON | 159 |
| SCENE IN SCHOOL :  AN EXERCISE IN COMPOSITION | 160 |
| LXVII.  PUBLIUS GOES TO ROME TO FINISH HIS EDUCATION | 160 |
| LXVIII.  PUBLIUS PUTS ON THE TOGA VIRILIS | 161 |
| LXIX.  PUBLIUS JOINS CAESAR’S ARMY IN GAUL | 163 |
| HOW THE ROMANS MARCHED AND CAMPED | 163 |
| LXX.  THE RIVAL CENTURIONS | 164 |
| LXXI.  THE ENEMY BESIEGING THE CAMP ARE REPULSED | 166 |
| LXXII.  PUBLIUS GOES TO GERMANY :  ITS GREAT FORESTS AND STRANGE ANIMALS | 166 |
| LXXIII.  THE STORMING OF A CITY | 168 |
| LXXIV.  THE CITY IS TAKEN :  THE CAPTIVES ARE QUESTIONED | 169 |
|  | 170 |
| LXXVI.  THE TRIUMPH OF CAESAR | 172 |
| APPENDIX I | 174 |
| NOUNS | 174 |
| CLASSIFICATION | 175 |
| ADJECTIVES | 178 |
| PRONOUNS | 182 |
| REGULAR VERBS | 185 |
| IRREGULAR VERBS | 193 |
| APPENDIX II | 196 |
| APPENDIX III | 200 |
| I. REVIEW OF VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR THROUGH LESSON VIII | 200 |
| II.  REVIEW OF LESSONS IX-XVII | 202 |
| III.  REVIEW OF LESSONS XVIII-XXVI | 204 |
| IV.  REVIEW OF LESSONS XXVII-XXXVI | 205 |
| V. REVIEW OF LESSONS XXXVII-XLIV | 207 |
| VI.  REVIEW OF LESSONS XLV-LII | 209 |
| VII.  REVIEW OF LESSONS LIII-LX | 212 |
| VIII.  REVIEW OF LESSONS LXI-LXIX | 215 |
| SPECIAL VOCABULARIES | 216 |
| LESSON IV, Sec. 39 | 216 |
| LESSON VI, Sec. 56 | 217 |
| LESSON VIII, Sec. 69 | 217 |
| LESSON X, Sec. 82 | 218 |
| LESSON XII, Sec. 90 | 218 |
| LESSON XIV, Sec. 99 | 219 |
| LESSON XVII, Sec. 117 | 219 |
| LESSON XX, Sec. 136 | 220 |
| LESSON XXII, Sec. 146 | 220 |
| LESSON XXVIII, Sec. 171 | 220 |
| LESSON XXX, Sec. 182 | 221 |
| LESSON XXXII, Sec. 193 | 221 |
| LESSON XXXVI, Sec. 211 | 222 |
| LESSON XXXIX, Sec. 234 | 223 |
| LESSON XLI, Sec. 239 | 223 |
| LESSON XLIV, Sec. 249 | 224 |
| LESSON XLVI, Sec. 261 | 224 |
| LESSON XLVIII, Sec. 276 | 225 |
| LESSON L, Sec. 288 | 226 |
| LESSON LII, Sec. 298 | 226 |
| LESSON LIV, Sec. 310 | 227 |
| LESSON LVI, Sec. 318 | 228 |
| LESSON LVIII, Sec. 332 | 228 |
| LESSON LX, Sec. 341 | 229 |
| A | 230 |
| B | 233 |
| C | 233 |
| D | 238 |
| E | 240 |
| F | 242 |
| G | 243 |
| H | 244 |
| I | 244 |
| L | 247 |
| M | 249 |
| N | 251 |
| O | 252 |
| P | 253 |
| Q | 258 |
| R | 258 |
| S | 260 |
| T | 263 |
| U | 264 |
| V | 265 |
| ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY | 266 |
| A | 266 |
| B | 267 |
| C | 268 |
| D | 268 |
| E | 269 |
| F | 269 |
| G | 270 |
| H | 270 |
| I | 271 |
| J | 271 |
| K | 271 |
| L | 271 |
| M | 272 |
| N | 272 |
| O | 272 |
| P | 273 |
| Q | 273 |
| R | 273 |
| S | 273 |
| T | 274 |
| U | 275 |
| V | 275 |
| W | 275 |
| Y | 276 |
| Z | 276 |
| INDEX | 276 |

**Page 1**

**PART III.  CONSTRUCTIONS**

LXI.  THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—­Inflection of the Present—­ *Indicative and Subjunctive Compared* 148-152

LXII.  THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE 152-153

LXIII.  INFLECTION OF THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE—­*Sequence  
of Tenses* 153-155

LXIV.  INFLECTION OF THE PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT  
SUBJUNCTIVE—­*Substantive Clauses of Purpose* 156-159

LXV.  SUBJUNCTIVE OF possum—­*Verbs of Fearing* 160-161

LXVI.  THE PARTICIPLES—­Tenses and Declension 161-164

LXVII.  THE IRREGULAR VERBS volo, nolo, malo—­ *Ablative Absolute* 164-166

LXVIII.  THE IRREGULAR VERB fio—­*Subjunctive of Result* 167-168

LXIX.  SUBJUNCTIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC—­*Predicate  
Accusative* 169-171

LXX.  CONSTRUCTIONS WITH cum—­*Ablative of  
Specification* 171-173

LXXI.  VOCABULARY REVIEW—­*Gerund and Gerundive*—­ *Predicate Genitive* 173-177

LXXII.  THE IRREGULAR VERB eo—­*Indirect Statements* 177-180

LXXIII.  VOCABULARY REVIEW—­THE IRREGULAR VERB fero—­ *Dative with Compounds* 181-183

LXXIV.  VOCABULARY REVIEW—­*Subjunctive in Indirect  
Questions* 183-185

LXXV.  VOCABULARY REVIEW—­*Dative of Purpose or End for  
Which* 185-186

LXXVI.  VOCABULARY REVIEW—­*Genitive and Ablative of  
Quality or Description* 186-188

LXXVII.  REVIEW OF AGREEMENT—­*Review of the Genitive,  
Dative, and Accusative* 189-190

LXXVIII.  REVIEW OF THE ABLATIVE 191-192

LXXIX.  REVIEW OF THE SYNTAX OF VERBS 192-193

**READING MATTER**

INTRODUCTORY SUGGESTIONS 194-195

  THE LABORS OF HERCULES 196-203

  P. CORNELIUS LENTULUS:  THE STORY OF A ROMAN BOY 204-215

**APPENDIXES AND VOCABULARIES**

  APPENDIX I. TABLES OF DECLENSIONS, CONJUGATIONS, NUMERALS,  
    ETC. 226-260

**APPENDIX II.  RULES OF SYNTAX 261-264**

**APPENDIX III.  REVIEWS 265-282**

**Page 2**

  SPECIAL VOCABULARIES 283-298

  LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY 299-331

  ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY 332-343

**INDEX 344-348**

**LATIN FOR BEGINNERS**

**TO THE STUDENT—­BY WAY OF INTRODUCTION**

What is Latin?  If you will look at the map of Italy on the opposite page, you will find near the middle of the peninsula and facing the west coast a district called Latium,[1] and Rome its capital.  The Latin language, meaning the language of Latium, was spoken by the ancient Romans and other inhabitants of Latium, and Latin was the name applied to it after the armies of Rome had carried the knowledge of her language far beyond its original boundaries.  As the English of to-day is not quite the same as that spoken two or three hundred years ago, so Latin was not always the same at all times, but changed more or less in the course of centuries.  The sort of Latin you are going to learn was in use about two thousand years ago.  And that period has been selected because the language was then at its best and the greatest works of Roman literature were being produced.  This period, because of its supreme excellence, is called the Golden Age of Roman letters.

    [Footnote 1:  Pronounce *La:’shi-um*.]

The Spread of Latin.  For some centuries after Rome was founded, the Romans were a feeble and insignificant people, their territory was limited to Latium, and their existence constantly threatened by warlike neighbors.  But after the third century before Christ, Rome’s power grew rapidly.  She conquered all Italy, then reached out for the lands across the sea and beyond the Alps, and finally ruled over the whole ancient world.  The empire thus established lasted for more than four hundred years.  The importance of Latin increased with the growth of Roman power, and what had been a dialect spoken by a single tribe became the universal language.  Gradually the language changed somewhat, developing differently in different countries.  In Italy it has become Italian, in Spain Spanish, and in France French.  All these nations, therefore, are speaking a modernized form of Latin.

The Romans and the Greeks.  In their career of conquest the Romans came into conflict with the Greeks.  The Greeks were inferior to the Romans in military power, but far superior to them in culture.  They excelled in art, literature, music, science, and philosophy.  Of all these pursuits the Romans were ignorant until contact with Greece revealed to them the value of education and filled them with the thirst for knowledge.  And so it came about that while Rome conquered Greece by force of arms, Greece conquered Rome by force of her intellectual superiority and became her schoolmaster.

**Page 3**

It was soon the established custom for young Romans to go to Athens and to other centers of Greek learning to finish their training, and the knowledge of the Greek language among the educated classes became universal.  At the same time many cultured Greeks—­poets, artists, orators, and philosophers—­flocked to Rome, opened schools, and taught their arts.  Indeed, the preeminence of Greek culture became so great that Rome almost lost her ambition to be original, and her writers vied with each other in their efforts to reproduce in Latin what was choicest in Greek literature.  As a consequence of all this, the civilization and national life of Rome became largely Grecian, and to Greece she owed her literature and her art.

Rome and the Modern World.  After conquering the world, Rome impressed her language, laws, customs of living, and modes of thinking upon the subject nations, and they became Roman; and the world has remained largely Roman ever since.  Latin continued to live, and the knowledge of Latin was the only light of learning that burned steadily through the dark ages that followed the downfall of the Roman Empire.  Latin was the common language of scholars and remained so even down to the days of Shakespeare.  Even yet it is more nearly than any other tongue the universal language of the learned.  The life of to-day is much nearer the life of ancient Rome than the lapse of centuries would lead one to suppose.  You and I are Romans still in many ways, and if Caesar and Cicero should appear among us, we should not find them, except for dress and language, much unlike men of to-day.

Latin and English.  Do you know that more than half of the words in the English dictionary are Latin, and that you are speaking more or less Latin every day?  How has this come about?  In the year 1066 William the Conqueror invaded England with an army of Normans.  The Normans spoke French—­which, you remember, is descended from Latin—­and spread their language to a considerable extent over England, and so Norman-French played an important part in the formation of English and forms a large proportion of our vocabulary.  Furthermore, great numbers of almost pure Latin words have been brought into English through the writings of scholars, and every new scientific discovery is marked by the addition of new terms of Latin derivation.  Hence, while the simpler and commoner words of our mother tongue are Anglo-Saxon, and Anglo-Saxon forms the staple of our colloquial language, yet in the realms of literature, and especially in poetry, words of Latin derivation are very abundant.  Also in the learned professions, as in law, medicine, and engineering, a knowledge of Latin is necessary for the successful interpretation of technical and scientific terms.

**Page 4**

Why study Latin?  The foregoing paragraphs make it clear why Latin forms so important a part of modern education.  We have seen that our civilization rests upon that of Greece and Rome, and that we must look to the past if we would understand the present.  It is obvious, too, that the knowledge of Latin not only leads to a more exact and effective use of our own language, but that it is of vital importance and of great practical value to any one preparing for a literary or professional career.  To this it may be added that the study of Latin throws a flood of light upon the structure of language in general and lays an excellent foundation for all grammatical study.  Finally, it has been abundantly proved that there is no more effective means of strengthening the mind than by the earnest pursuit of this branch of learning.

Review Questions.  Whence does Latin get its name?  Where is Latium?  Where is Rome?  Was Latin always the same?  What sort of Latin are we to study?  Describe the growth of Rome’s power and the spread of Latin.  What can you say of the origin of Italian, French, and Spanish?  How did the ancient Greeks and Romans compare?  How did Greece influence Rome?  How did Rome influence the world?  In what sense are we Romans still?  What did Latin have to do with the formation of English?  What proportion of English words are of Latin origin, and what kind of words are they?  Why should we study Latin?

**PART I**

**THE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN**

**THE ALPHABET**

*1.* The Latin alphabet contains the same letters as the English except that it has no *w* and no *j*.

*2.* The vowels, as in English, are *a, e, i, o, u, y*.  The other letters are consonants.

*3.* *I* is used both as a vowel and as a consonant.  Before a vowel in the same syllable it has the value of a consonant and is called *I consonant*.

Thus in Iu:-li-us the first *i* is a consonant, the second a vowel.

**SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS[1]**

[Footnote 1:  N.B.  The sounds of the letters are best learned by hearing them correctly pronounced.  The matter in this section is, therefore, intended for reference rather than for assignment as a lesson.  As a first step it is suggested that the teacher pronounce the examples in class, the pupils following.]

*4.* Latin was not pronounced like English.  The Romans at the beginning of the Christian era pronounced their language substantially as described below.

*5.* The vowels have the following sounds:

  VOWELS[2] LATIN EXAMPLES

**Page 5**

  a:  as in *father* ha:c, sta:s  
  a like the first *a* in *aha’*,  
    never as in *hat* a’-mat, ca-na:s  
  e:  as in *they* te:’-la, me:’-ta  
  e as in *met* te’-net, mer’-ce:s  
  i:  as in *machine* ser’-ti:, pra:’-ti:   
  i as in *bit* si’-tis, bi’-bi:   
  o:  as in *holy* Ro:’-ma, o:’-ris  
  o as in *wholly*, never as in  
    *hot* mo’-do, bo’-no:s  
  u:  as in *rude*, or as *oo* in  
    *boot* u:’-mor, tu:’-ber  
  u as in *full*, or as *oo* in  
    *foot* ut, tu:’-tus

NOTE.  It is to be observed that there is a decided difference in sound, except in the case of *a*, between the long and the short vowels.  It is not merely a matter of *quantity* but also of *quality*.

    [Footnote 2:  Long vowels are marked ^, short ones ... ]

[Transcriber’s Note:  In this version of the text, long vowels are shown as a:, e:, i:  ... and short vowels are unmarked, as described in the introductory notes.]

*6.* In *diphthongs\ (two-vowel sounds) both vowels are heard in a single syllable.*

  DIPHTHONGS LATIN EXAMPLES

*ae\ as \_ai\_ in \_aisle\_ tae’-dae*au\ as *ou* in *out* gau’-det  
  *ei\ as \_ei\_ in \_eight\_ dein’-de*eu\ as *e’[oo]* (a short *e*  
    followed by a short *u* in  
    one syllable) seu  
  *oe\ like \_oi\_ in \_toil\_ foe’-dus*ui\ like *[oo]’i* (a short *u*  
    followed by a short *i* in one  
    syllable.  Cf.  English *we*) cui, huic

NOTE.  Give all the vowels and diphthongs their proper sounds and do not slur over them in unaccented syllables, as is done in English.

*7.* Consonants are pronounced as in English, except that

  CONSONANTS LATIN EXAMPLES

*c\ is always like \_c\_ in \_cat\_,  
    never as in \_cent\_ ca’-do:, ci’-bus, ce:’-na*g\ is always like *g* in *get*,  
    never as in *gem* ge’-mo:, gig’-no:   
  *i consonant\ is always like  
    \_y\_ in \_yes\_ iam, io’-cus*n\ before *c, qu*, or *g* is  
    like *ng* in *sing* (compare  
    the sound of *n* in *anchor*) an’-co-ra (ang’-ko-ra)  
  *qu\,* gu\, and sometimes *su\  
    before a vowel have the sound  
    of \_qw, gw\_, and \_sw\_.  Here  
    \_u\_ has the value of consonant  
    \_v\_ and is not counted a vowel in’-quit, qui:, lin’-gua,  
                                      san’-guis,*

***Page 6***

*sua:’-de-o:*s\ is like *s* in *sea*, never  
    as in *ease* ro’-sa, is  
  *t\ is always like \_t\_ in  
    \_native\_, never as in \_nation\_ ra’-ti-o:, na:’-ti-o:*v\ is like *w* in *wine*, never  
    as in *vine* vi:’-num, vir  
  *x\ has the value of two  
    consonants (\_cs\_ or \_gs\_) and  
    is like \_x\_ in \_extract\_, not  
    as in \_exact\_ ex’-tra:, ex-a:c’-tus*bs\ is like *ps* and *bt\ like  
    \_pt\_ urbs, ob-ti’-ne-o:*ch\, *ph\, and* th\ are like  
    *c*, *p*, *t* pul’-cher, Phoe’-be:,  
                                      the-a:’-trum
*a.* In combinations of consonants give each its distinct sound.  Doubled consonants should be pronounced with a slight pause between the two sounds.  Thus pronounce *tt* as in *rat-trap*, not as in *rattle*; *pp* as in *hop-pole*, not as in *upper*.  Examples, *mit’-to:\,* Ap’pi-us\, *bel’-lum\.*

**SYLLABLES**

\_8.\_ A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs.  Thus aes-ta:’-te\ has three syllables, *au-di-en’-dus\ has four.*

*a.* Two vowels with a consonant between them never make one  
    syllable, as is so often the case in English.  Compare English  
    *inside* with Latin i:n-si:’-de.

*9.* Words are divided into syllables as follows:

1.  A single consonant between two vowels goes with the second.  Thus *a-ma:’-bi-lis\,* me-mo’-ri-a\, *in-te’-re-a:\,* a’-best\, *pe-re:’-git\.[3]*

    [Footnote 3:  In writing and printing it is customary to divide  
    the parts of a compound, as *inter-ea:\,* ab-est\, *sub-a:ctus\,*per-e:git\, contrary to the correct phonetic rule.]

2.  Combinations of two or more consonants:

*a.* A consonant followed by *l* or *r* goes with the *l* or *r*.   
    Thus *pu:’-bli-cus\,* a’-gri:\.

EXCEPTION.  Prepositional compounds of this nature, as also *ll* and *rr*, follow rule *b*.  Thus *ab’-lu-o:\,* ab-rum’-po:\, *il’-le\,* fer’-rum\.

*b.* In all other combinations of consonants the first consonant  
    goes with the preceding vowel.[4] Thus *mag’-nus\,* e-ges’-ta:s\,  
    *vic-to:’-ri-a\,* hos’-pes\, *an’-nus\,* su-ba:c’-tus\.

    [Footnote 4:  The combination nct is divided nc-t, as fu:nc-tus,  
    sa:nc-tus.]

3.  The last syllable of a word is called the *ul’-ti-ma*; the one next to the last, the *pe-nult’*; the one before the penult, the *an’-te-pe-nult’*.

*10.* EXERCISE

Divide the words in the following passage into syllables and pronounce them, placing the accent as indicated:

**Page 7**

Va:’de ad formi:’cam, O:  pi’ger, et co:nsi:’dera:  vi’a:s e’ius et di’sce sapie’ntiam:  quae cum no:n ha’beat du’cem nec praecepto:’rem nec pri:’ncipem, pa’rat in aesta:’te ci’bum si’bi et co’ngregat in me’sse quod co’medat.

[[Go to the ant, thou sluggard; consider her ways, and be wise:  which, having no guide, overseer, or ruler, provideth her meat in the summer and gathereth her food in the harvest.]]

**QUANTITY**

*11.* The quantity of a vowel or a syllable is the time it takes to pronounce it.  Correct pronunciation and accent depend upon the proper observance of quantity.

*12.* Quantity of Vowels.  Vowels are either long (^) or short.  In this book the long vowels are marked.  Unmarked vowels are to be considered short.

[Transcriber’s Note:  The wording of Sec. 12 is as in the original, except that the macron (long-vowel symbol) has been replaced with a caret ("hat"), and the breve (short-vowel symbol) has been omitted.]

  1.  A vowel is short before another vowel or *h*; as *po-e:’-ta\,*tra’-ho:\.

2.  A vowel is short before *nt* and *nd*, before final *m* or *t*, and, except in words of one syllable, before final *l* or *r*.  Thus *a’-mant\,* a-man’-dus\, *a-ma:’-bam\,* a-ma:’-bat\, *a’-ni-mal\,* a’-mor\.

  3.  A vowel is long before *nf*, *ns*, *nx*, and *nct*.  Thus  
  *i:n’-fe-ro:\,* re’-ge:ns\, *sa:n’-xi:\,* sa:nc’-tus\.

  4.  Diphthongs are always long, and are not marked.

*13.* Quantity of Syllables.  Syllables are either long or short, and their quantity must be carefully distinguished from that of vowels.

  1.  A syllable is short,

*a.* If it ends in a short vowel; as *a’-mo:\,* pi’-gri\.

NOTE.  In final syllables the short vowel may be followed by a final consonant.  Thus the word *me-mo’-ri-am\ contains four short syllables.  In the first three a short vowel ends the syllable, in the last the short vowel is followed by a final consonant.*

  2.  A syllable is long,

*a.* If it contains a long vowel or a diphthong, as *cu:’-ro:\,*poe’-nae\, *aes-ta:’-te\.*

*b.* If it ends in a consonant which is followed by another  
    consonant, as *cor’-pus\,* mag’-nus\.

NOTE.  The vowel in a long syllable may be either long or short, and should be pronounced accordingly.  Thus in *ter’-ra\,* in’-ter\, the first syllable is long, but the vowel in each case is short and should be given the short sound.  In words like *saxum\ the first syllable is long because \_x\_ has the value of two consonants (\_cs\_ or \_gs\_).*

  3.  In determining quantity *h* is not counted a consonant.

**Page 8**

NOTE.  Give about twice as much time to the long syllables as to the short ones.  It takes about as long to pronounce a short vowel plus a consonant as it does to pronounce a long vowel or a diphthong, and so these quantities are considered equally long.  For example, it takes about as long to say *cur’-ro:\ as it does* cu:’-ro:\, and so each of these first syllables is long.  Compare *mol’-lis\ and* mo:’-lis\, *a:-mis’-si:\ and* a:-mi’-si:\.

**ACCENT**

*14.* Words of two syllables are accented on the first, as *me:n’-sa\,* Cae’-sar\.

*15.* Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult if the penult is long.  If the penult is short, accent the antepenult.  Thus *mo-ne:’-mus\,* re’-gi-tur\, *a-gri’-co-la\,* a-man’-dus\.

NOTE.  Observe that the position of the accent is determined by the length of the *syllable* and not by the length of the vowel in the syllable. (Cf.  Sec. 13.2, Note.)

*16.* Certain little words called *enclit’ics*[5] which have no separate existence, are added to and pronounced with a preceding word.  The most common are /-que\, *and*; /-ve\, *or*; and /-ne\, the question sign.  The syllable before an enclitic takes the accent, regardless of its quantity.  Thus *populus’que\,* dea’que\, *re:gna’ve\,* audit’ne\.

    [Footnote 5:  Enclitic means *leaning back*, and that is, as you see,  
    just what these little words do.  They cannot stand alone and so they  
    lean back for support upon the preceding word.]

**HOW TO READ LATIN**

*17.* To read Latin well is not so difficult, if you begin right.  Correct habits of reading should be formed now.  Notice the quantities carefully, especially the quantity of the penult, to insure your getting the accent on the right syllable. (Cf.  Sec. 15.) Give every vowel its proper sound and every syllable its proper length.  Then bear in mind that we should read Latin as we read English, in phrases rather than in separate words.  Group together words that are closely connected in thought.  No good reader halts at the end of each word.

*18.* Read the stanzas of the following poem by Longfellow, one at a time, first the English and then the Latin version.  The syllables inclosed in parentheses are to be slurred or omitted to secure smoothness of meter.

EXCELSIOR [[HIGHER]]! [6]

The shades of night were falling fast,  
As through an Alpine village passed  
A youth, who bore, ’mid snow and ice,  
A banner with the strange device,  
  
                  Excelsior!Cade:bant noctis umbrae, dum  
Ibat per vi:cum Alpicum  
Gelu:  nivequ(e) adole:sce:ns,  
Ve:xillum cum signo:  fere:ns,  
  
                  Excelsior!

**Page 9**

His brow was sad; his eye beneath,  
Flashed like a falchion from its sheath,  
And like a silver clarion rung  
The accents of that unknown tongue,  
  
                  Excelsior!Fro:ns tri:stis, micat oculus  
Velut e:  va:gi:na:  gladius;  
Sonantque simile:s tubae  
Accentu:s lingu(ae) incognitae,  
  
                  Excelsior!In happy homes he saw the light  
Of household fires gleam warm and bright;  
Above, the spectral glaciers shone,  
And from his lips escaped a groan,  
  
                  Excelsior!In domibus videt cla:ra:s  
Foco:rum lu:ce:s calida:s;  
Relucet glacie:s a:cris,  
Et rumpit gemitu:s labri:s,  
  
                  Excelsior!“Try not the Pass!” the old man said;  
“Dark lowers the tempest overhead,  
The roaring torrent is deep and wide!”  
And loud that clarion voice replied,  
  
            Excelsior!Di:cit senex, “Ne:  tra:nsea:s!   
Supra:  nigre:scit tempesta:s;  
La:tus et altus est torre:ns.”   
Cla:ra ve:nit vo:x responde:ns,  
  
            Excelsior!At break of day, as heavenward  
The pious monks of Saint Bernard  
Uttered the oft-repeated prayer,  
A voice cried through the startled air,  
  
            Excelsior!Iam lu:ce:sce:bat, et fra:tre:s  
Sa:ncti:  Bernardi:  vigile:s  
O:ra:bant prece:s solita:s,  
Cum vo:x cla:ma:vit per aura:s,  
  
            Excelsior!A traveler, by the faithful hound,  
Half-buried in the snow was found,  
Still grasping in his hand of ice  
That banner with the strange device,  
  
            Excelsior!Se:mi-sepultus via:tor  
Can(e) a:  fi:do:  reperi:tur,  
Compre:nde:ns pugno:  gelido:   
Illud ve:xillum cum signo:,  
  
            Excelsior!There in the twilight cold and gray,  
Lifeless, but beautiful, he lay,  
And from the sky, serene and far,  
A voice fell, like a falling star,  
  
            Excelsior!Iacet corpus exanimum  
Sed lu:ce fri:gida:  pulchrum;  
Et caelo:  procul exie:ns  
Cadit vo:x, ut Stella cade:ns,  
  
        Excelsior!

    [Footnote 6:  Translation by C. W. Goodchild in *Praeco Latinus*,  
    October, 1898.]

**PART II**

**WORDS AND FORMS**

**LESSON I**

**FIRST PRINCIPLES**

*19.* Subject and Predicate.  
  1.  Latin, like English, expresses thoughts by means of sentences.   
  A sentence is a combination of words that expresses a thought, and in  
  its simplest form is the statement of a single fact.  Thus,

**Page 10**

*Galba is a farmer*  
    Galba est agricola  
  *The sailor fights*  
    Nauta pugnat

In each of these sentences there are two parts:

  SUBJECT PREDICATE  
    *Galba* *is a farmer*  
      Galba  
    *The sailor* *fights*  
      Nauta pugnat

  2.  The subject is that person, place, or thing about which something  
  is said, and is therefore a *noun* or some word which can serve the  
  same purpose.

*a.* Pronouns, as their name implies (*pro*, “instead of,” and  
    *noun*), often take the place of nouns, usually to save repeating  
    the same noun, as, *Galba is a farmer; /he\ is a sturdy fellow*.

  3.  The predicate is that which is said about the subject, and consists  
  of a verb with or without modifiers.

*a.* A verb is a word which asserts something (usually an act)  
    concerning a person, place, or thing.

*20.* The Object.  In the two sentences, *The boy hit the ball* and *The ball hit the boy*, the same words are used, but the meaning is different, and depends upon the order of the words.  The *doer\ of the act, that about which something is said, is, as we have seen above, the* subject\. *That to which something is done\ is the* direct object\ of the verb. *The boy hit the ball* is therefore analyzed as follows:

SUBJECT PREDICATE
/-----------\
*The boy* *hit the ball*
(verb) (direct object)
*a.* A verb whose action passes over to the object directly, as in the sentence above, is called a *transitive verb\.  A verb which does not admit of a direct object is called* intransitive\, as, *I walk*, *he comes*.

*21.* The Copula.  The verb *to be* in its different forms—­*are*, *is*, *was*, *etc*.—­does not tell us anything about the subject; neither does it govern an object.  It simply connects the subject with the word or words in the predicate that possess a distinct meaning.  Hence it is called the *copula\, that is, \_the joiner\_ or \_link\_.*

*22.* In the following sentences pronounce the Latin and name the *nouns, verbs, subjects, objects, predicates, copulas*:

  1.  America est patria mea  
     *America is fatherland my*

  2.  Agricola filiam amat  
     *(The) farmer (his) daughter loves*

  3.  Filia est Iulia  
     *(His) daughter is Julia*

  4.  Iulia et agricola sunt in insula  
     *Julia and (the) farmer are on (the) island*

  5.  Iulia aquam portat  
     *Julia water carries*

  6.  Rosam in comis habet  
     *(A) rose in (her) hair (she) has*

  7.  Iulia est puella pulchra  
     *Julia is (a) girl pretty*

**Page 11**

  8.  Domina filiam pulchram habet  
     *(The) lady (a) daughter beautiful has*

*a.* The sentences above show that Latin does not express some words which are necessary in English.  First of all, *Latin has no article /the\ or /a\*; thus *agricola* may mean *the farmer, a farmer*, or simply *farmer*.  Then, too, the personal pronouns, *I, you, he, she*, *etc*., and the possessive pronouns, *my, your, his, her*, *etc*., are not expressed if the meaning of the sentence is clear without them.

**LESSON II**

FIRST PRINCIPLES (*Continued*)

*23.* Inflection.  Words may change their forms to indicate some change in sense or use, as, *is, are*; *was, were; who, whose, whom; farmer, farmer’s; woman, women*.  This is called *inflection\.  The inflection of a noun, adjective, or pronoun is called its* declension\, that of a verb its *conjugation\.*

*24.* Number.  Latin, like English, has two numbers, singular and plural.  In English we usually form the plural by adding \_-s\_ or \_-es\_ to the singular.  So Latin changes the singular to the plural by changing the ending of the word.  Compare

  Naut-a pugnat  
    *The sailor fights*  
  Naut-ae pugnant  
    *The sailors fight*

*25.* RULE. *Nouns that end in -a in the singular end in -ae in the plural*.

*26.* Learn the following nouns so that you can give the English for the Latin or the Latin for the English.  Write the plural of each.

agri’cola, *farmer* (agriculture)[1] aqua, *water* (aquarium) causa, *cause, reason* do’mina, *lady of the house, mistress* (dominate) filia, *daughter* (filial) fortu’na, *fortune* fuga, *flight* (fugitive) iniu’ria, *wrong, injury* luna, *moon* (lunar) nauta, *sailor* (nautical) puel’la, *girl* silva, forest (silvan) terra, *land* (terrace)

    [Footnote 1:  The words in parentheses are English words related to  
    the Latin.  When the words are practically identical, as *causa\,  
    \_cause\_, no comparison is needed.]*

*27.* Compare again the sentences

  Nauta pugna-t  
    *The sailor fights*  
  Nautae pugna-nt  
    *The sailors fight*

In the first sentence the verb *pugna-t\ is in the third person singular, in the second sentence* pugna-nt\ is in the third person plural.

*28.* RULE.  Agreement of Verb. *A finite verb must always be in the same person and number as its subject.*

*29.* RULE. *In the conjugation of the Latin verb the third person singular active ends in -t, the third person plural in -nt.  The endings which show the person and number of the verb are called /personal endings\.*

**Page 12**

*30.* Learn the following verbs and write the plural of each.  The personal pronouns *he*, *she*, *it*, *etc*., which are necessary in the inflection of the English verb, are not needed in the Latin, because the personal endings take their place.  Of course, if the verb’s subject is expressed we do not translate the personal ending by a pronoun; thus *nauta pugnat\ is translated \_the sailor fights\_, not \_the sailor he fights\_.*

ama-t *he (she, it) loves, is loving, does love* (amity, amiable) labo:’ra-t " " " *labors, is laboring, does labor* nu:ntia-t[2] " " " *announces, is announcing, does announce* porta-t " " " *carries, is carrying, does carry* (porter) pugna-t " " " *fights, is fighting, does fight* (pugnacious)

    [Footnote 2:  The *u* in *nu:ntio:\ is long by exception.   
    (Cf.  Sec. 12.2.)]*

*31.* EXERCISES

I. 1.  The daughter loves, the daughters love. 2.  The sailor is carrying, the sailors carry. 3.  The farmer does labor, the farmers labor. 4.  The girl is announcing, the girls do announce. 5.  The ladies are carrying, the lady carries.

II. 1.  Nauta pugnat, nautae pugnant. 2.  Puella amat, puellae amant. 3.  Agricola portat, agricolae portant. 4.  Filia laborat, filiae laborant. 5.  Nauta nuntiat, nautae nuntiant. 6.  Dominae amant, domina amat.

  [Illustration:  DOMINA]

**LESSON III**

FIRST PRINCIPLES (*Continued*)

*32.* Declension of Nouns.  We learned above (Secs. 19, 20) the difference between the subject and object, and that in English they may be distinguished by the order of the words.  Sometimes, however, the order is such that we are left in doubt.  For example, the sentence *The lady her daughter loves* might mean either that the lady loves her daughter, or that the daughter loves the lady.

1.  If the sentence were in Latin, no doubt could arise, because the subject and the object are distinguished, not by the order of the words, but by the endings of the words themselves.  Compare the following sentences:

  Domina filiam amat  
  Filiam domina amat  
  Amat filiam domina  
  Domina amat filiam  
    *The lady loves her daughter*

  Filia dominam amat  
  Dominam filia amat  
  Amat dominam filia  
  Filia amat dominam  
    *The daughter loves the lady*

*a.* Observe that in each case the subject of the sentence ends in -a and the object in -am.  The *form* of the noun shows how it is used in the sentence, and the order of the words has no effect on the essential meaning.2.  As stated above (Sec. 23), this change of ending is called *declension\, and each different ending produces what is called a* case\.  When we decline a noun, we give all its different cases,

**Page 13**

or changes of endings.  In English we have three cases,—­nominative, possessive, and objective; but, in nouns, the nominative and objective have the same form, and only the possessive case shows a change of ending, by adding *’s* or the apostrophe.  The interrogative pronoun, however, has the fuller declension, *who?* *whose?* *whom?*

*33.* The following table shows a comparison between English and Latin declension forms, and should be thoroughly memorized:

ENGLISH CASES LATIN CASES
+---+-------------+--------------+------------------+-------  
---------+
| | Declension | Name of case | Declension of | Name of case |
| | of *who?* | and use | *domina\ | and use |
| | | | and translation | |
+---+-------------+--------------+------------------+-------  
---------+
| | Who? | Nominative-- | do’min-a | Nominative-- |
| S | | case of the | \_the lady\_ | case of the |
| I | | subject | | subject |
| N | | | | |
| G | Whose? | Possessive-- | domin-ae | Genitive-- |
| U | | case of the | \_the lady’s\_ | case of the |
| L | | possessor | \_of the lady\_ | possessor |
| A | | | | |
| R | Whom? | Objective-- | domin-am | Accusative-- |
| | | case of the | \_the lady\_ | case of the |
| | | object | | direct object |
+---+-------------+--------------+------------------+-------  
---------+
| | Who? | Nominative-- | domin-ae | Nominative-- |
| | | case of the | \_the ladies\_ | case of the |
| P | | subject | | subject |
| L | | | | |
| U | Whose? | Possessive-- | domin-a:’rum | Genitive-- |
| R | | case of the | \_the ladies’\_ | case of the |
| A | | possessor | \_of the ladies\_ | possessor |
| L | | | | |
| | Whom? | Objective-- | domin-a:s | Accusative-- |
| | | case of the | \_the ladies\_ | case of the |
| | | object | | direct object |
+---+-------------+--------------+------------------+-------  
---------+*

When the nominative singular of a noun ends in -a, observe that

*a.* The nominative plural ends in -ae.

*b.* The genitive singular ends in -ae and the genitive plural in  
    -a:rum.

*c.* The accusative singular ends in -am and the accusative plural  
    in -a:s.

*d.* The genitive singular and the nominative plural have the same  
    ending.

**Page 14**

*34.* EXERCISE

Pronounce the following words and give their general meaning.  Then give the number and case, and the use of each form.  Where the same form stands for more than one case, give all the possible cases and uses.

1.  Silva, silvas, silvam. 2.  Fugam, fugae, fuga. 3.  Terrarum, terrae, terras. 4.  Aquas, causam, lunas. 5.  Filiae, fortunae, lunae. 6.  Iniurias, agricolarum, aquarum. 7.  Iniuriarum, agricolae, puellas. 8.  Nautam, agricolas, nautas. 9.  Agricolam, puellam, silvarum.

**LESSON IV**

FIRST PRINCIPLES (*Continued*)

  [Special Vocabulary]

  [See Transcriber’s Note at beginning of text.]

  NOUNS  
  *dea\, \_goddess\_ (deity)  
   Dia:’na, \_Diana\_*fera\, *a wild beast* (fierce)  
   La:to:’na, *Latona*  
  *sagit’ta\, \_arrow\_*

  VERBS  
  *est\, \_he (she, it) is\_;* sunt\, *they are*  
  *necat\, \_he (she, it) kills, is killing, does kill\_*

  CONJUNCTION[A]  
  *et\, \_and\_*

  PRONOUNS  
  *quis\, interrog. pronoun, nom. sing., \_who?\_*cuius\ (pronounced *c[oo]i’y[oo]s*, two syllables), interrog.  
    pronoun, gen. sing., *whose?*

    [Footnote A:  A *conjunction* is a word which connects words, parts  
    of sentences, or sentences.]

*35.* We learned from the table (Sec. 33) that the Latin nominative, genitive, and accusative correspond, in general, to the nominative, possessive, and objective in English, and that they are used in the same way.  This will be made even clearer by the following sentence:

  Filia agricolae nautam amat,  
    *the farmer’s daughter* (or *the daughter of the farmer*)  
    *loves the sailor*

What is the subject? the direct object?  What case is used for the subject? for the direct object?  What word denotes the possessor?  In what case is it?

*36.* RULE.  Nominative Subject. *The subject of a finite verb is in the Nominative and answers the question Who? or What?*

*37.* RULE.  Accusative Object. *The direct object of a transitive verb is in the Accusative and answers the question Whom? or What?*

*38.* RULE.  Genitive of the Possessor. *The word denoting the owner or possessor of something is in the Genitive and answers the question Whose?*

  [Illustration:  DIANA SAGITTAS PORTAT ET FERAS NECAT]

*39.* EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 283.

I. 1.  Diana est dea. 2.  Latona est dea. 3.  Diana et Latona sunt deae. 4.  Diana est dea lunae. 5.  Diana est filia Latonae. 6.  Latona Dianam amat. 7.  Diana est dea silvarum. 8.  Diana silvam amat. 9.  Diana sagittas portat. 10.  Diana feras silvae necat. 11.  Ferae terrarum pugnant.

For the order of words imitate the Latin above.

**Page 15**

II. 1.  The daughter of Latona does love the forests. 2.  Latona’s daughter carries arrows. 3.  The farmers’ daughters do labor. 4.  The farmer’s daughter loves the waters of the forest. 5.  The sailor is announcing the girls’ flight. 6.  The girls announce the sailors’ wrongs. 7.  The farmer’s daughter labors. 8.  Diana’s arrows are killing the wild beasts of the land.

*40.* CONVERSATION

Translate the questions and answer them in Latin.  The answers may be found in the exercises preceding.

1.  Quis est Diana? 2.  Cuius filia est Diana? 3.  Quis Dianam amat? 4.  Quis silvam amat? 5.  Quis sagittas portat? 6.  Cuius filiae laborant?

**LESSON V**

FIRST PRINCIPLES (*Continued*)

  [Special Vocabulary]

  NOUNS  
  *coro:’na\, \_wreath, garland, crown\_  
   fa:’bula, \_story\_ (fable)*pecu:’nia\, *money* (pecuniary)  
  *pugna\, \_battle\_ (pugnacious)*victo:’ria\, *victory*

  VERBS  
  *dat\, \_he (she, it) gives\_  
   na:rrat, \_he (she, it) tells\_ (narrate)*

  CONJUNCTION[A]  
  *quia\ or* quod\, *because*

*cui\ (pronounced \_c[oo]i\_, one syllable), interrog. pronoun, dat.  
    sing., \_to whom?\_ \_for whom?\_*

    [Footnote A:  A *conjunction* is a word which connects words, parts  
    of sentences, or sentences.]

*41.* The Dative Case.  In addition to the relationships between words expressed by the nominative, genitive (possessive), and accusative (objective) cases, there are other relationships, to express which in English we use such words as *from*, *with*, *by*, *to*, *for*, *in*, *at*.[1]

    [Footnote 1:  Words like *to*, *for*, *by*, *from*, *in*, *etc*., which  
    define the relationship between words, are called *prepositions\.]*

Latin, too, makes frequent use of such prepositions; but often it expresses these relations without them by means of case forms which English does not possess.  One of the cases found in the Latin declension and lacking in English is called the *dative*.

*42.* When the nominative singular ends in -a, the dative singular ends in -ae and the dative plural in -i:s.

NOTE.  Observe that the *genitive singular*, the *dative singular*, and the *nominative plural* all have the same ending, -ae; but the uses of the three cases are entirely different.  The general meaning of the sentence usually makes clear which case is intended.

*a.* Form the dative singular and plural of the following nouns:   
    *fuga\,* causa\, *fortuna\,* terra\, *aqua\,* puella\, *agricola\,*nauta\, *domina\.*

*43.* The Dative Relation.  The dative case is used to express the relations conveyed in English by the prepositions *to*, *towards*, *for*.

**Page 16**

These prepositions are often used in English in expressions of motion, such as *She went to town*, *He ran towards the horse*, *Columbus sailed for America*.  In such cases the dative is not used in Latin, as *motion through space* is foreign to the dative relation.  But the dative is used to denote that *to* or *towards which* a benefit, injury, purpose, feeling, or quality is directed, or that *for which* something serves or exists.

*a.* What dative relations do you discover in the following?

The teacher gave a prize to John because he replied so promptly to all her questions—­a good example for the rest of us.  It is a pleasure to us to hear him recite.  Latin is easy for him, but it is very hard for me.  Some are fitted for one thing and others for another.

*44.* The Indirect Object.  Examine the sentence

  Nauta fugam nuntiat,  
    *the sailor announces the flight*

Here the verb, *nuntiat\, governs the direct object,* fugam\, in the accusative case.  If, however, we wish to mention the persons *to whom\ the sailor announces the flight, as, \_The sailor announces the flight* to the farmers\\_, the verb will have two objects:

  1.  Its direct object, *flight* (fugam)  
  2.  Its indirect object, *farmers*

According to the preceding section, *to the farmers* is a relation covered by the dative case, and we are prepared for the following rule:

*45.* RULE.  Dative Indirect Object. *The indirect object of a verb is in the Dative.*

*a.* The indirect object usually stands before the direct object.

*46.* We may now complete the translation of the sentence *The sailor announces the flight to the farmers*, and we have

  Nauta agricolis fugam nuntiat

*47.* EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 283.

*Point out the direct and indirect objects and the genitive of the possessor.*

I. 1.  Quis nautis pecuniam dat? 2.  Filiae agricolae nautis pecuniam dant. 3.  Quis fortunam pugnae nuntiat? 4.  Galba agricolis fortunam pugnae nuntiat. 5.  Cui domina fabulam narrat? 6.  Filiae agricolae domina fabulam narrat. 7.  Quis Dianae coronam dat? 8.  Puella Dianae coronam dat quia Dianam amat. 9.  Dea lunae sagittas portat et feras silvarum necat. 10.  Cuius victoriam Galba nuntiat? 11.  Nautae victoriam Galba nuntiat.

Imitate the word order of the preceding exercise.

II. 1.  To whom do the girls give a wreath? 2.  The girls give a wreath to Julia, because Julia loves wreaths. 3.  The sailors tell the ladies[2] a story, because the ladies love stories. 4.  The farmer gives his (Sec. 22.a) daughter water. 5.  Galba announces the cause of the battle to the sailor. 6.  The goddess of the moon loves the waters of the forest. 7.  Whose wreath is Latona carrying?  Diana’s.

**Page 17**

    [Footnote 2:  Observe that in English the indirect object often  
    stands without a preposition *to* to mark it, especially when it  
    precedes the direct object.]

**LESSON VI**

FIRST PRINCIPLES (*Continued*)

  [Special Vocabulary]

ADJECTIVES *bona\, \_good\_* gra:ta\, *pleasing* *magna\, \_large, great\_* mala\, *bad, wicked* *parva\, \_small, little\_* pulchra\, *beautiful, pretty* *so:la\, \_alone\_*

  NOUNS  
  ancil’la, \_maidservant\_  
  Iu:lia, \_Julia\_

  ADVERBS[A]  
  *cu:r\, \_why\_*no:n\, *not*

  PRONOUNS  
  *mea\, \_my\_;* tua\, *thy, your* (possesives)  
  *quid\, interrog. pronoun, nom. and acc. sing., \_what?\_*

  /-ne\, the question sign, an enclitic (Sec. 16) added to the first  
    word, which, in a question, is usually the verb, as *amat\, \_he  
    loves\_, but* amat’ne\? *does he love?* *est\, \_he is\_;* estne\?  
    *is he?* Of course /-ne\ is not used when the sentence contains  
    *quis\,* cu:r\, or some other interrogative word.

    [Footnote A:  An *adverb* is a word used to modify a verb, an  
    adjective, or another adverb; as, She sings *sweetly*; she is  
    *very* talented; she began to sing *very early*.]

*48.* The Ablative Case.  Another case, lacking in English but found in the fuller Latin declension, is the *ab’la-tive.*

*49.* When the nominative singular ends in -a, the ablative singular ends in -a:  and the ablative plural in -i:s.

*a.* Observe that the final -a of the nominative is short, while the  
    final -a:  of the ablative is long, as,

      Nom. filia  
      Abl. filia:

*b.* Observe that the ablative plural is like the dative plural.

*c.* Form the ablative singular and plural of the following nouns:   
    *fuga\,* causa\, *fortuna\,* terra\, *aqua\,* puella\, *agricola\,*nauta\, *domina\.*

*50.* The Ablative Relation.  The ablative case is used to express the relations conveyed in English by the prepositions *from*, *with*, *by*, *at*, *in*.  It denotes

  1.  That from which something is separated, from which it starts, or of  
  which it is deprived—­generally translated by *from*.

  2.  That with which something is associated or by means of which it is  
  done—­translated by *with* or *by*.

  3.  The place where or the time when something happens—­translated by  
  *in* or *at*.

*a.* What ablative relations do you discover in the following?

**Page 18**

In our class there are twenty boys and girls.  Daily at eight o’clock they come from home with their books, and while they are at school they read with ease the books written by the Romans.  By patience and perseverance all things in this world can be overcome.

*51.* Prepositions.  While, as stated above (Sec. 41), many relations expressed in English by prepositions are in Latin expressed by case forms, still prepositions are of frequent occurrence, but only with the accusative or ablative.

*52.* RULE.  Object of a Preposition. *A noun governed by a preposition must be in the Accusative or Ablative case.*

*53.* Prepositions denoting the ablative relations *from, with, in, on*, are naturally followed by the ablative case.  Among these are

a:[1] or ab, *from, away from* de:, *from, down from* e:[1] or ex, *from, out from, out of* cum, *with* in, *in, on*

    [Footnote 1:  *a:\ and* e:\ are used only before words beginning with  
    a consonant; *ab\ and* ex\ are used before either vowels or  
    consonants.]

  1. *Translate into Latin, using prepositions.* In the water, on the  
  land, down from the forest, with the fortune, out of the forests, from  
  the victory, out of the waters, with the sailors, down from the moon.

*54.* Adjectives.  Examine the sentence

  Puella parva bonam deam amat,  
    *the little girl loves the good goddess*

In this sentence *parva\ (\_little\_) and* bonam\ (*good*) are not nouns, but are descriptive words expressing quality.  Such words are called *adjectives*,[2] and they are said to belong to the noun which they describe.

[Footnote 2:  *Pick out the adjectives in the following:* “When I was a little boy, I remember that one cold winter’s morning I was accosted by a smiling man with an ax on his shoulder.  ’My pretty boy,’ said he, ‘has your father a grindstone?’ ‘Yes, sir,’ said I.  ‘You are a fine little fellow,’ said he.  ’Will you let me grind my ax on it?’”]

You can tell by its ending to which noun an adjective belongs.  The ending of *parva\ shows that it belongs to* puella\, and the ending of *bonam\ that it belongs to* deam\.  Words that belong together are said to agree, and the belonging-together is called *agreement*.  Observe that *the adjective and its noun agree in number and case*.

*55.* Examine the sentences

  Puella est parva,  
    *the girl is little*  
  Puella parva bonam deam amat,  
    *the little girl loves the good goddess*

In the first sentence the adjective *parva\ is separated from its noun by the verb and stands in the predicate.  It is therefore called a \_predicate adjective\_.  In the second sentence the adjectives* parva\ and *bonam\ are closely attached to the nouns* puella\ and *deam\ respectively, and are called \_attributive adjectives.\_*

**Page 19**

*a.* Pick out the attributive and the predicate adjectives in the  
    following:

Do you think Latin is hard?  Hard studies make strong brains.  Lazy students dislike hard studies.  We are not lazy.

*56.* DIALOGUE

**JULIA AND GALBA**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 283.

  I. Quis, Galba, est Diana?   
  G. Diana, Iulia, est pulchra dea lunae et silvarum.   
  I. Cuius filia, Galba, est Diana?   
  G. Latonae filia, Iulia, est Diana.   
  I. Quid Diana portat?   
  G. Sagittas Diana portat.   
  I. Cur Diana sagittas portat?   
  G. Diana sagittas portat, Iulia, quod malas feras silvae magnae necat.   
  I. Amatne Latona filiam?   
  G. Amat, et filia Latonam amat.   
  I. Quid filia tua parva portat?   
  G. Coronas pulchras filia mea parva portat.   
  I. Cui filia tua coronas pulchras dat?   
  G. Dianae coronas dat.   
  I. Quis est cum filia tua?  Estne sola?   
  G. Sola non est; filia mea parva est cum ancilla mea.

*a.* When a person is called or addressed, the case used is called the *voc’ative* (Latin *vocare*, “to call"). *In form the vocative is regularly like the nominative*.  In English the name of the person addressed usually stands first in the sentence. *The Latin vocative rarely stands first*.  Point out five examples of the vocative in this dialogue.*b.* Observe that questions answered by *yes* or *no* in English are answered in Latin by repeating the verb.  Thus, if you wished to answer in Latin the question *Is the sailor fighting?* *Pugnatne nauta?\ you would say* Pugnat\, *he is fighting*, or *Non pugnat\, \_he is not fighting.\_*

**LESSON VII**

**THE FIRST OR \_A:\_-DECLENSION**

  [Special Vocabulary]

  NOUNS  
  *casa, -ae\, f., \_cottage\_  
   ce:na, -ae, f., \_dinner\_*galli:’na, -ae\, f., *hen, chicken*  
  *i:n’sula, ae\, f., \_island\_ (pen-insula)*

  ADVERBS  
  *de-in’de\, \_then, in the next place\_*ubi\, *where*

  PREPOSITION  
  *ad\, \_to\_, with acc. to express motion toward*

  PRONOUN  
  *quem\, interrog. pronoun, acc. sing., \_whom?\_*

  VERBS  
  ha’bitat, *he (she, it) lives, is living, does live* (inhabit)  
  *laudat\, \_he (she, it) praises, is praising, does praise\_ (laud)*parat\, *he (she, it) prepares, is preparing, does prepare*  
  *vocat\, \_he (she, it) calls, is calling, does call; invites,  
    is inviting, does invite\_ (vocation)*

*57.* In the preceding lessons we have now gone over all the cases, singular and plural, of nouns whose nominative singular ends in -a.  All Latin nouns whose nominative singular ends in -a belong to the First Declension.  It is also called the *A*-Declension because of the prominent part which the vowel *a\ plays in the formation of the cases.  We have also learned what relations are expressed by each case.  These results are summarized in the following table:*

**Page 20**

+-------+----------------+-------------------+---------  
----------------+
| CASE | NOUN | TRANSLATION | USE AND GENERAL MEANING |
| | | | OF EACH CASE |
+-------+----------------+-------------------+--------------  
-----------+
| | | SINGULAR | |
+-------+----------------+-------------------+--------------  
-----------+
| Nom. | do’min-a | *the lady* | The subject |
| | | | |
| Gen. | domin-ae | *of the lady*, | The possessor |
| | | or *the lady’s* | of something |
| | | | |
| Dat. | domin-ae | *to* or *for | Expressing the relation |
| | | the lady* | *to* or *for*, |
| | | | especially the |
| | | | indirect object |
| | | | |
| Acc. | domin-am | *the lady* | The direct object |
| | | | |
| Abl. | domin-a: | *from, with, by, | Separation (*from\_), |
| | | in, the lady\_ | association or means |
| | | | (*with, by*), place |
| | | | where or time when |
| | | | (*in, at*) |
+-------+----------------+-------------------+--------------  
-----------+
| | | PLURAL | |
+-------+----------------+-------------------+--------------  
-----------+
| Nom. | domin-ae | *the ladies* | |
| | | | |
| Gen. | domin-a:’rum | *of the ladies*, | |
| | | or *the ladies’* | |
| | | | |
| Dat. | domin-i:s | *to* or *for | The same as |
| | | the ladies* | the singular |
| | | | |
| Acc. | domin-a:s | *the ladies* | |
| | | | |
| Abl. | domin-i:s | *from, with, by*, | |
| | | *in, the ladies* | |
+-------+----------------+-------------------+--------------  
-----------+

*58.* The Base.  That part of a word which remains unchanged in inflection and to which the terminations are added is called the base.

**Page 21**

Thus, in the declension above, domin- is the base and -a is the termination of the nominative singular.

*59.* Write the declension of the following nouns, separating the base from the termination by a hyphen.  Also give them orally.

*pugna\,* terra\, *luna\,* ancil’la\, *coro’na\,* in’sula\, *silva\*

*60.* Gender.  In English, names of living beings are either masculine or feminine, and names of things without life are neuter.  This is called *natural gender\.  Yet in English there are some names of things to which we refer as if they were feminine; as, “Have you seen my yacht? \_She\_ is a beauty.”  And there are some names of living beings to which we refer as if they were neuter; as, “Is the baby here?  No, the nurse has taken \_it\_ home.”  Some words, then, have a gender quite apart from sex or real gender, and this is called* grammatical gender\.

Latin, like English, has three genders.  Names of males are usually masculine and of females feminine, but *names of things have grammatical gender and may be either masculine, feminine, or neuter*.  Thus we have in Latin the three words, *lapis\, \_a stone\_;* rupes\, *a cliff*; and *saxum\, \_a rock\_.* Lapis\ is *masculine*, *rupes\ \_feminine\_, and* saxum\ *neuter*.  The gender can usually be determined by the ending of the word, and *must always be learned*, for without knowing the gender it is impossible to write correct Latin.

*61.* Gender of First-Declension Nouns.  Nouns of the first declension are feminine unless they denote males.  Thus *silva\ is feminine, but* nauta\, *sailor*, and *agricola\, \_farmer\_, are masculine.*

*62.* EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 284.

I. 1.  Agricola cum filia in casa habitat. 2.  Bona filia agricolae cenam parat. 3.  Cena est grata agricolae[1] et agricola bonam filiam laudat. 4.  Deinde filia agricolae gallinas ad cenam vocat. 5.  Gallinae filiam agricolae amant. 6.  Malae filiae bonas cenas non parant. 7.  Filia agricolae est grata dominae. 8.  Domina in insula magna habitat. 9.  Domina bonae puellae parvae pecuniam dat.

II. 1.  Where does the farmer live? 2.  The farmer lives in the small cottage. 3.  Who lives with the farmer? 4. (His) little daughter lives with the farmer. 5. (His) daughter is getting (parat) a good dinner for the farmer. 6.  The farmer praises the good dinner. 7.  The daughter’s good dinner is pleasing to the farmer.

    [Footnote 1:  Note that the relation expressed by the dative case  
    covers that *to which a feeling is directed.* (Cf.  Sec. 43.)]

  [Illustration]

What Latin words are suggested by this picture?

*63.* CONVERSATION

Answer the questions in Latin.

1.  Quis cum agricola in casa habitat? 2.  Quid bona filia agricolae parat? 3.  Quem agricola laudat? 4.  Vocatne filia agricolae gallinas ad cenam? 5.  Cuius filia est grata dominae? 6.  Cui domina pecuniam dat?

**LESSON VIII**

**Page 22**

FIRST DECLENSION (*Continued*)

  [Special Vocabulary]

  NOUNS  
  *Italia, -ae\, f., \_Italy\_  
   Sicilia, -ae, f., \_Sicily\_*tuba, -ae\, f., *trumpet* (tube)  
  *via, -ae\, f., \_way, road, street\_ (viaduct)*

ADJECTIVES *alta\, \_high, deep\_ (altitude)* cla:ra\, *clear, bright; famous* *la:ta\, \_wide\_ (latitude)* longa\, *long* (longitude) *nova\, \_new\_ (novelty)*

\_64.\_ We have for some time now been using adjectives and nouns together and you have noticed an agreement between them in \_case\_ and in \_number\_ (Sec. 54).  They agree also in \_gender\_.  In the phrase silva magna\, we have a feminine adjective in -a agreeing with a feminine noun in -a.

*65.* RULE.  Agreement of Adjectives. *Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

*66.* Feminine adjectives in -a are declined like feminine nouns in -a, and you should learn to decline them together as follows:

          NOUN ADJECTIVE  
  domina (BASE domin-), bona (BASE bon-),  
    f., *lady* *good*

SINGULAR TERMINATIONS
Nom. do’mina bona -a
Gen. dominae bonae -ae
Dat. dominae bonae -ae
Acc. dominam bonam -am
Abl. domina: bona: -a:
PLURAL
Nom. dominae bonae -ae
Gen. domina:’rum bona:’rum -a:rum
Dat. domini:s boni:s -i:s
Acc. domina:s bona:s -a:s
Abl. domini:s boni:s -i:s

*a.* In the same way decline together *puella mala\, \_the bad girl\_;*ancil’la parva\, *the little maid*; *fortu’na magna\, \_great  
    fortune.\_*

*67.* The words *dea\, \_goddess\_, and* filia\, *daughter*, take the ending -a:bus instead of -i:s in the *dative and ablative plural.* Note the *dative and ablative plural* in the following declension:

  dea bona (BASES de- bon-)

SINGULAR PLURAL
Nom. dea bona deae bonae
Gen. deae bonae dea:’rum bona:’rum
Dat. deae bonae dea:’bus boni:s
Acc. deam bonam dea:s bona:s
Abl. dea: bona: dea’bus boni:s

*a.* In the same way decline together *filia parva\.*

*68.* Latin Word Order.  The order of words in English and in Latin sentences is not the same.

In English we arrange words in a fairly fixed order.  Thus, in the sentence *My daughter is getting dinner for the farmers*, we cannot alter the order of the words without spoiling the sentence.  We can, however, throw emphasis on different words by speaking them with more force.  Try the effect of reading the sentence by putting special force on *my, daughter, dinner, farmers*.

In Latin, where the office of the word in the sentence is shown by its *ending* (cf.  Sec. 32.1), and not by its *position*, the order of words is more free, and position is used to secure the same effect that in English is secured by emphasis of voice.  To a limited extent we can alter the order of words in English, too, for the same purpose.  Compare the sentences

**Page 23**

*I saw a game of football at Chicago last November* (normal order)  
    *Last November\ I saw a game of football at Chicago\_  
    \_At Chicago, last November, I saw a game of /football\\_*

1.  In a Latin sentence the most emphatic place is the *first*; next in importance is the *last*; the weakest point is the *middle*.  Generally the *subject* is the most important word, and is placed *first*; usually the *verb* is the next in importance, and is placed *last*.  The other words of the sentence stand between these two in the order of their importance.  Hence the normal order of words—­that is, where no unusual emphasis is expressed—­is as follows:

*subject*—­*modifiers of the subject*—­*indirect object*—­  
    *direct object*—­*adverb*—­*verb*

Changes from the normal order are frequent, and are due to the desire for throwing emphasis upon some word or phrase. *Notice the order of the Latin words when you are translating, and imitate it when you are turning English into Latin.*

  2.  Possessive pronouns and modifying genitives normally stand after  
  their nouns.  When placed before their nouns they are emphatic, as

    filia mea, *my daughter*;  
      mea filia, *my\ daughter\_;  
    casa Galbae, \_Galba’s cottage\_;  
      Galbae casa, \_/Galba’s\ cottage\_.*

  Notice the variety of emphasis produced by writing the following  
  sentence in different ways:

    Filia mea agricolis cenam parat (normal order)  
    Mea filia agricolis parat cenam (*mea\ and* cenam\ emphatic)  
    Agricolis filia mea cenam parat (*agricolis\ emphatic)*

  3.  An adjective placed before its noun is more emphatic than when it  
  follows.  When great emphasis is desired, the adjective is separated  
  from its noun by other words.

    Filia mea casam parvam non amat (*parvam\ not emphatic)  
    Filia mea parvam casam non amat (*parvam\ more emphatic)  
    Parvam filia mea casam non amat (*parvam\ very emphatic)*

  4.  Interrogative words usually stand first, the same as in English.

  5.  The copula (as *est\,* sunt\) is of so little importance that it  
  frequently does not stand last, but may be placed wherever it sounds  
  well.

*69.* EXERCISE

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 284.

*Note the order of the words in these sentences and pick out those that are emphatic.*

1.  Longae non sunt tuae viae. 2.  Suntne tubae novae in mea casa?  Non sunt. 3.  Quis lata in silva habitat?  Diana, lunae clarae pulchra dea, lata in silva habitat. 4.  Nautae altas et latas amant aquas. 5.  Quid ancilla tua portat?  Ancilla mea tubam novam portat. 6.  Ubi sunt Lesbia et Iulia?  In tua casa est Lesbia et Iulia est in mea. 7.  Estne Italia lata terra?  Longa est Italia, non lata. 8.  Cui Galba agricola fabulam novam narrat?  Filiabus dominae clarae fabulam novam narrat. 9.  Clara est insula Sicilia. 10.  Quem laudat Latona?  Latona laudat filiam.

**Page 24**

\* \* \* \* \*

  First Review of Vocabulary and Grammar, Secs. 502-505

\* \* \* \* \*

**LESSON IX**

**THE SECOND OR *O*-DECLENSION**

  [Special Vocabulary]

  NOUNS  
  *bellum, -i:\, n., \_war\_ (re-bel)*co:nstantia, -ae\, f., *firmness, constancy, steadiness*  
   dominus, -i:, m., *master, lord* (dominate)  
  *equus, -i:\, m., \_horse\_ (equine)*fru:mentum, -i:\, n., *grain*  
  *le:ga:tus, -i:\, m., \_lieutenant, ambassador\_ (legate)*Ma:rcus, -i:\, m., *Marcus, Mark*  
  *mu:rus, -i:\, m., \_wall\_ (mural)*oppida:nus, -i:\, m., *townsman*  
  *oppidum, -i:\, n., \_town\_*pi:lum, -i:\, n., *spear* (pile driver)  
  *servus, -i:\, m., \_slave, servant\_  
   Sextus, -i:, m., \_Sextus\_*

  VERBS  
  *cu:rat\, \_he (she, it) cares for\_, with acc.*properat\, *he (she, it) hastens*

*70.* Latin nouns are divided into five declensions.

The declension to which a noun belongs is shown by the ending of the genitive singular.  This should always be learned along with the nominative and the gender.

*71.* The nominative singular of nouns of the Second or *O*-Declension ends in -us, -er, -ir, or -um.  The genitive singular ends in -i:.

*72.* Gender.  Nouns in -um are neuter.  The others are regularly masculine.

*73.* Declension of nouns in -*us* and -*um*.  Masculines in -us and neuters in -um are declined as follows:

dominus (BASE domin-), pi:lum (BASE pi:l-),  
m., *master* n., *spear*

                  TERMINATIONS TERMINATIONS  
          SINGULAR  
  Nom. do’minus[1] -us pi:lum -um  
  Gen. domini:  -i:  pi:li:  -i:   
  Dat. domino:  -o:  pi:lo:  -o:   
  Acc. dominum -um pi:lum -um  
  Abl. domino:  -o:  pi:lo:  -o:   
  Voc. domine -e pi:lum -um

PLURAL
Nom. domini: -i: pi:la -a
Gen. domino:’rum -o:rum pi:lo:’rum -o:rum
Dat. domini:s -i:s pi:li:s -i:s
Acc. domino:s -o:s pi:la -a
Abl. domini:s -i:s pi:li:s -i:s

    [Footnote 1:  Compare the declension of *domina\ and of* dominus\.]

*a.* Observe that the masculines and the neuters have the same  
    terminations excepting in the nominative singular and the nominative  
    and accusative plural.

*b.* The vocative singular of words of the second declension in  
    -us ends in -e, as *domine\, \_O master\_;* serve\, *O slave*.   
    This is the most important exception to the rule in Sec. 56.a.

**Page 25**

*74.* Write side by side the declension of *domina\,* dominus\, and *pilum\.  A comparison of the forms will lead to the following rules, which are of great importance because they apply to all five declensions:*

*a.* The vocative, with a single exception (see Sec. 73.b), is like the nominative.  That is, the vocative singular is like the nominative singular, and the vocative plural is like the nominative plural.

*b.* The nominative, accusative, and vocative of neuter nouns are  
    alike, and in the plural end in -a.

*c.* The accusative singular of masculines and feminines ends in  
    -m and the accusative plural in -s.

*d.* The dative and ablative plural are always alike.

*e.* Final -i and -o are always *long*; final -a is *short*,  
    except in the ablative singular of the first declension.

*75.* Observe the sentences

  Lesbia est bona,  
    *Lesbia is good*  
  Lesbia est ancilla,  
    *Lesbia is a maidservant*

We have learned (Sec. 55) that *bona\, when used, as here, in the predicate to describe the subject, is called a \_predicate adjective\_.  Similarly a \_noun\_, as* ancilla\, used in the *predicate* to define the subject is called a *predicate noun\.*

*76.* RULE.  Predicate Noun. *A predicate noun agrees in case with the subject of the verb.*

  [Illustration:  PILA]

*77.* DIALOGUE

**GALBA AND MARCUS**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 285.

  G. Quis, Marce, est legatus cum pilo et tuba?   
  M. Legatus, Galba, est Sextus.   
  G. Ubi Sextus habitat?[2]  
  M. In oppido Sextus cum filiabus habitat.   
  G. Amantne oppidani Sextum?   
  M. Amant oppidani Sextum et laudant, quod magna cum constantia pugnat.   
  G. Ubi, Marce, est ancilla tua?  Cur non cenam parat?   
  M. Ancilla mea, Galba, equo legati aquam et frumentum dat.   
  G. Cur non servus Sexti equum domini curat?   
  M. Sextus et servus ad murum oppidi properant.  Oppidani bellum  
    parant.[3]

    [Footnote 2:  *habitat\ is here translated \_does live\_.  Note the  
    \_three\_ possible translations of the Latin present tense:*habitat\  
          *he lives*  
          *he is living*  
          *he does live*  
    Always choose the translation which makes the best sense.]

    [Footnote 3:  Observe that the verb *paro\ means not only  
    \_to prepare\_ but also \_to prepare for\_, and governs the  
    accusative case.]*

  [Illustration:  LEGATUS CUM PILO ET TUBA]

*78.* CONVERSATION

Translate the questions and answer them in Latin.

1.  Ubi filiae Sexti habitant? 2.  Quem oppidani amant et laudant? 3.  Quid ancilla equo legati dat? 4.  Cuius equum ancilla curat? 5.  Quis ad murum cum Sexto properat? 6.  Quid oppidani parant?

**LESSON X**

**Page 26**

SECOND DECLENSION (*Continued*)

  [Special Vocabulary]

NOUNS *ami:cus, -i:\, m., \_friend\_ (amicable)* Germa:nia, -ae\, f., *Germany* *patria, -ae\, f., \_fatherland\_* populus, -i:\, m., *people* *Rhe:nus, -i:\, m., \_the Rhine\_* vi:cus, -i:\, m., *village*

*79.* We have been freely using feminine adjectives, like *bona\, in agreement with feminine nouns of the first declension and declined like them. \_Masculine\_ adjectives of this class are declined like* dominus\, and *neuters* like pilum.  The adjective and noun, masculine and neuter, are therefore declined as follows:

MASCULINE NOUN AND ADJECTIVE NEUTER NOUN AND ADJECTIVE
dominus bonus, *the good master* pi:lum bonum, *the good spear*
BASES domin- bon- BASES pi:l- bon-

                          TERMINATIONS TERMINATIONS  
          SINGULAR  
  Nom. do’minus bonus -us pi:lum bonum -um  
  Gen. domini:  boni:  -i:  pi:li:  boni:  -i:   
  Dat. domino:  bono:  -o:  pi:lo:  bono:  -o:   
  Acc. dominum bonum -um pi:lum bonum -um  
  Abl. domino:  bono:  -o:  pi:lo:  bono:  -o:   
  Voc. domine bone -e pi:lum bonum -um

PLURAL
Nom. domini: boni: -i: pi:la bona -a
Gen. domino:’rum bono:’rum -o:rum pi:lo:’rum bono:’rum -o:rum
Dat. domini:s boni:s -is pi:li:s boni:s -i:s
Acc. domino:s bono:s -o:s pi:la bona -a
Abl. domini:s boni:s -i:s pi:li:s boni:s -i:s

Decline together *bellum longum\,* equus parvus\, *servus malus\,* murus altus\, *frumentum novum\.*

*80.* Observe the sentences

  Lesbia ancilla est bona,  
    *Lesbia, the maidservant, is good*  
  Filia Lesbiae ancillae est bona,  
    *the daughter of Lesbia, the maidservant, is good*  
  Servus Lesbiam ancillam amat,  
    *the slave loves Lesbia, the maidservant*

In these sentences *ancilla\,* ancillae\, and *ancillam\ denote the class of persons to which \_Lesbia\_ belongs and explain who she is.  Nouns so related that the second is only another name for the first and explains it are said to be in apposition, and are always in the same case.*

*81.* RULE.  Apposition. *An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it explains.*

*82.* EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 285.

I. 1.  Patria servi boni, vicus servorum bonorum, bone popule. 2.  Populus oppidi magni, in oppido magno, in oppidis magnis. 3.  Cum pilis longis, ad pila longa, ad muros latos. 4.  Legate male, amici legati mali, cena grata domino bono. 5.  Frumentum equorum parvorum, domine bone, ad legatos claros. 6.  Rhenus est in Germania, patria mea. 7.  Sextus legatus pilum longum portat. 8.  Oppidani boni Sexto legato clara pecuniam dant. 9.  Mali servi equum bonum Marci domini necant. 10.  Galba agricola et Iulia filia bona laborant. 11.  Marcus nauta in insula Sicilia habitat.

**Page 27**

II. 1.  Wicked slave, who is your friend?  Why does he not praise Galba, your master? 2.  My friend is from (ex) a village of Germany, my fatherland. 3.  My friend does not love the people of Italy. 4.  Who is caring for[1] the good horse of Galba, the farmer? 5.  Mark, where is Lesbia, the maidservant? 6.  She is hastening[1] to the little cottage[2] of Julia, the farmer’s daughter.

    [Footnote 1:  See footnote 1, p. 33.  Remember that *curat\ is  
    transitive and governs a direct object.]*

    [Footnote 2:  Not the dative. (Cf.  Sec. 43.)]

**LESSON XI**

**ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS**

  [Special Vocabulary]

NOUNS *arma, armo:rum\, n., plur., \_arms\_, especially defensive weapons* fa:ma, -ae\, f., *rumor; reputation, fame* *galea, -ae\, f., \_helmet\_* praeda, -ae\, f., *booty, spoils* (predatory) *te:lum, -i:\, n., \_weapon of offense, spear\_*

  ADJECTIVES  
  du:rus, -a, -um\, *hard, rough; unfeeling, cruel; severe, toilsome*  
    (durable)  
  *Ro:ma:nus, -a, -um\, \_Roman\_.  As a noun,* Ro:ma:nus, -i:\, m.,  
    *a Roman*

*83.* Adjectives of the first and second declensions are declined in the three genders as follows:

        MASCULINE FEMININE NEUTER  
        SINGULAR  
  Nom. bonus bona bonum  
  Gen. boni:  bonae boni:   
  Dat. bono:  bonae bono:   
  Acc. bonum bonam bonum  
  Abl. bono:  bona:  bono:   
  Voc. bone bona bonum

PLURAL
Nom. boni: bonae bona
Gen. bono:rum bona:rum bono:rum
Dat. boni:s boni:s boni:s
Acc. bono:s bona:s bona
Abl. boni:s boni:s boni:s

*a.* Write the declension and give it orally *across the page*, thus  
    giving the three genders for each case.

*b.* Decline *gratus, -a, -um\;* malus, -a, -um\; *altus, -a, -um\;*parvus, -a, -um\.

*84.* Thus far the adjectives have had the same terminations as the nouns.  However, the agreement between the adjective and its noun does *not* mean that they must have the same termination.  If the adjective and the noun belong to different declensions, the terminations will, in many cases, not be the same.  For example, *nauta\, \_sailor\_, is masculine and belongs to the first declension.  The masculine form of the adjective* bonus\ is of the second declension.  Consequently, *a good sailor* is *nauta bonus\.  So, \_the wicked farmer\_ is* agricola malus\.  Learn the following declensions:

*85.* nauta bonus (bases naut- bon-), m., *the good sailor*

**Page 28**

SINGULAR
Nom. nauta bonus
Gen. nautae boni:
Dat. nautae bono:
Acc. nautam bonum
Abl. nauta: bono:
Voc. nauta bone

        PLURAL  
  Nom. nautae boni:   
  Gen. nauta:rum bono:rum  
  Dat. nauti:s boni:s  
  Acc. nauta:s bono:s  
  Abl. nauti:s boni:s  
  Voc. nautae boni:

*86.* EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 285.

I. 1.  Est[1] in vico nauta bonus. 2.  Sextus est amicus nautae boni. 3.  Sextus nautae bono galeam dat. 4.  Populus Romanus nautam bonum laudat. 5.  Sextus cum nauta bono praedam portat. 6.  Ubi, nauta bone, sunt anna et tela legati Romani? 7.  Nautae boni ad bellum properant. 8.  Fama nautarum bonorum est clara. 9.  Pugnae sunt gratae nautis bonis. 10.  Oppidani nautas bonos curant. 11.  Cur, nautae boni, mali agricolae ad Rhenum properant? 12.  Mali agricolae cum bonis nautis pugnant.

II. 1.  The wicked farmer is hastening to the village with (his) booty. 2.  The reputation of the wicked farmer is not good. 3.  Why does Galba’s daughter give arms and weapons to the wicked farmer? 4.  Lesbia invites the good sailor to dinner. 5.  Why is Lesbia with the good sailor hastening from the cottage? 6.  Sextus, where is my helmet? 7.  The good sailors are hastening to the toilsome battle. 8.  The horses of the wicked farmers are small. 9.  The Roman people give money to the good sailors. 10.  Friends care for the good sailors. 11.  Whose friends are fighting with the wicked farmers?

    [Footnote 1:  *Est\, beginning a declarative sentence, \_there is.\_]*

  [Illustration:  GALEAE]

**LESSON XII**

NOUNS IN \_-IUS\_ AND \_-IUM\_

  [Special Vocabulary]

  NOUNS  
  *fi:lius, fi:li:\, m., \_son\_ (filial)  
   fluvius, fluvi:, m., \_river\_ (fluent)*gladius, gladi:\, m., *sword* (gladiator)  
  *praesidium, praesi’di:\, n., \_garrison, guard, protection\_*proelium, proeli:\, n., *battle*

  ADJECTIVES  
  *fi:nitimus, -a, -um\, \_bordering upon, neighboring, near to\_.   
    As a noun,* fi:nitimi:, -o:rum\, m., plur., *neighbors*  
  *Germa:nus, -a, -um\, \_German\_.  As a noun,* Germa:nus, -i:\, m.,  
    *a German*  
  *multus, -a, -um\, \_much\_; plur., \_many\_*

  ADVERB  
  *saepe\, \_often\_*

*87.* Nouns of the second declension in -ius and -ium end in -i:  in the genitive singular, *not* in -ii:, and the accent rests on the penult; as, *fi:li:\ from* fi:lius\ (*son*), *praesi’di:\ from* praesi’dium\ (*garrison*).

*88.* Proper names of persons in -ius, and *fi:lius\, end in -i:  in the vocative singular, \_not\_ in -e, and the accent rests on the penult; as,* Vergi’li:\, *O Vergil*; *fi:li:\, \_O son.\_*

*a.* Observe that in these words the vocative and the genitive are  
    alike.

**Page 29**

*89.* praesidium (base praesidi-), fi:lius (base fi:li-),  
          n., *garrison* m., *son*

SINGULAR
Nom. praesidium fi:lius
Gen. praesi’di: fi:li:
Dat. praesidio: fi:lio:
Acc. praesidium fi:lium
Abl. praesidio: fi:lio:
Voc. praesidium fi:li:

The plural is regular.  Note that the -i- of the base is lost only in the genitive singular, and in the vocative of words like *filius\.*

Decline together *praesidium parvum\;* filius bonus\; *fluvius longus\, \_the long river\_;* proelium clarum\, *the famous battle.*

*90.* EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 285.

I. 1.  Frumentum bonae terrae, gladi mali, belli longi. 2.  Constantia magna, praesidia magna, clare Vergili. 3.  Male serve, O clarum oppidum, male fili, filii mali, fili mali. 4.  Fluvi longi, fluvii longi, fluviorum longorum, fama praesi’di magni. 5.  Cum gladiis parvis, cum deabus claris, ad nautas claros. 6.  Multorum proeliorum, praedae magnae, ad proelia dura.

**GERMANIA**

II.  Germania, patria Germanorum, est clara terra.  In Germania sunt fluvii multi.  Rhenus magnus et latus fluvius Germaniae est.  In silvis latis Germaniae sunt ferae multae.  Multi Germanii in oppidis magnis et in vicis parvis habitant et multi sunt agricolae boni.  Bella Germanorum sunt magna et clara.  Populus Germaniae bellum et proelia amat et saepe cum finitimis pugnat.  Fluvius Rhenus est finitimus oppidis[1] multis et claris.

    [Footnote 1:  Dative with *finitimus\. (See Sec. 43.)]*

**LESSON XIII**

SECOND DECLENSION (*Continued*)

  [Special Vocabulary]

  NOUNS  
  *ager, agri:\, m., \_field\_ (acre)*co:pia, -ae\, f., *plenty, abundance* (copious); plur., *troops,  
    forces*  
  *Corne:lius, Corne:’li:\, m., \_Cornelius\_*lo:ri:’ca, -ae\, f., *coat of mail, corselet*  
  *praemium, praemi:\, n., \_reward, prize\_ (premium)*puer, pueri:\, m., *boy* (puerile)  
  *Ro:ma, -ae\, f., \_Rome\_*scu:tum, -i:\, n., *shield* (escutcheon)  
  *vir, viri:\, m., \_man, hero\_ (virile)*

  ADJECTIVES  
  *legio:na:rius, -a, -um\,[A] \_legionary, belonging to the legion\_.   
    As a noun,* legio:na:rii:, -o:rum\, m., plur., *legionary soldiers*  
  *li:ber, li:bera, li:berum\, \_free\_ (liberty) As a noun.* li:beri:,  
    -o:rum\,  
    m., plur., *children* (lit. *the freeborn*)  
  *pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum\, \_pretty, beautiful\_*

  PREPOSITION  
  *apud\, \_among\_, with acc.*

  CONJUNCTION  
  *sed\, \_but\_*

**Page 30**

[Footnote A:  The genitive singular masculine of adjectives in -ius  
ends in -ii:  and the vocative in -ie; not in -i:, as in nouns.]

*91.* Declension of Nouns in \_-er\_ and \_-ir\_.  In early Latin all the masculine nouns of the second declension ended in -os.  This -os later became -us in words like *servus\, and was dropped entirely in words with bases ending in -r, like* puer\, *boy*; *ager\, \_field\_; and* vir\, *man*.  These words are therefore declined as follows:

*92.* puer, m., *boy* ager, m., *field* vir, m., *man*  
         BASE puer- BASE agr- BASE vir-

SINGULAR TERMINATIONS
Nom. puer ager vir ——­
Gen. pueri: agri: viri: -i:
Dat. puero: agro: viro: -o:
Acc. puerum agrum virum -um
Abl. puero: agro: viro: -o:
PLURAL
Nom. pueri: agri: viri: -i:
Gen. puero:rum agro:rum viro:rum -o:rum
Dat. pueri:s agri:s viri:s -i:s
Acc. puero:s agro:s viro:s -o:s
Abl. pueri:s agri:s viri:s -i:s

*a.* The vocative case of these words is like the nominative,  
    following the general rule (Sec. 74.a).

*b.* The declension differs from that of *servus\ only in the  
    nominative and vocative singular.*

*c.* Note that in *puer\ the* e\ remains all the way through, while in *ager\ it is present only in the nominative.  In* puer\ the *e\ belongs to the base, but in* ager\ (base agr-) it does not, and was inserted in the nominative to make it easier to pronounce.  Most words in -er are declined like *ager\. \_The genitive shows whether you are to follow\_* puer\ *or* *ager\.*

\_93.\_ Masculine adjectives in -er of the second declension are declined like nouns in -er.  A few of them are declined like puer\, but most of them like *ager\.  The feminine and neuter nominatives show which form to follow, thus,*

  MASC.  FEM.  NEUT.  
  liber libera liberum (*free*)  
    is like *puer\  
  pulcher pulchra pulchrum (\_pretty\_)  
    is like* ager\

For the full declension in the three genders, see Sec. 469.\_b.\_ *c.*

*94.* Decline together the words *vir liber\,* terra libera\, *frumentum liberum\,* puer pulcher\, *puella pulchra\,* oppidum pulchrum\

*95.* ITALIA[1]

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 286.

Magna est Italiae fama, patriae Romanorum, et clara est Roma, domina orbis terrarum.[2] Tiberim,[3] fluvium Romanum, quis non laudat et pulchros fluvio finitimos agros?  Altos muros, longa et dura bella, claras victorias quis non laudat?  Pulchra est terra Italia.  Agri boni agricolis praemia dant magna, et equi agricolarum copiam frumenti ad oppida et vicos portant.  In agris populi Romani laborant multi servi.  Viae Italiae sunt longae et latae.  Finitima Italiae est insula Sicilia.

**Page 31**

    [Footnote 1:  In this selection note especially the emphasis as shown  
    by the order of the words.]

    [Footnote 2:  *orbis terrarum\, \_of the world\_.]*

    [Footnote 3:  *Tiberim\, \_the Tiber\_, accusative case.]*

*96.* DIALOGUE

**MARCUS AND CORNELIUS**

  C. Ubi est, Marce, filius tuus?  Estne in pulchra terra Italia?   
  M. Non est, Corneli, in Italia.  Ad fluvium Rhenum properat cum copiis  
    Romanis quia est[4] fama Novi belli cum Germanis.  Liber Germaniae  
    populus Romanos Non amat.   
  C. Estne filius tuus copiarum Romanarum legatus?   
  M. Legatus non est, sed est apud legionarios.   
  C. Quae[5] arma portat[6]?   
  M. Scutum magnum et loricam duram et galeam pulchram portat.   
  C. Quae tela portat?   
  M. Gladium et pilum longum portat.   
  C. Amatne legatus filium tuum?   
  M. Amat, et saepe filio meo praemia pulchra et praedam multam dat.   
  C. Ubi est terra Germanorum?   
  M. Terra Germanorum, Corneli est finitima Rheno, fluvio magno et alto.

    [Footnote 4:  *est\, before its subject, \_there is\_; so* sunt\,  
    *there are.*]

    [Footnote 5:  *Quae\, \_what kind of\_, an interrogative adjective  
    pronoun.]*

    [Footnote 6:  What are the three possible translations of the present  
    tense?]

  [Illustration:  LEGIONARIUS]

**LESSON XIV**

**THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS**

  [Special Vocabulary]

  NOUNS  
  *auxilium, auxi’li:\, n., \_help, aid\_ (auxiliary)*castrum, -i:\, n., *fort* (castle); plur., *camp* (lit. *forts*)  
  *cibus, -i:\, m., \_food\_*co:nsilium, co:nsi’li:\, n., *plan* (counsel)  
  *di:ligentia, -ae\, f.. \_diligence, industry\_  
   magister, magistri:, m., \_master, teacher\_[A]*

ADJECTIVES *aeger, aegra, aegrum\, \_sick\_* cre:ber, cre:bra, cre:brum\, *frequent* *miser, misera, miserum\, \_wretched, unfortunate\_ (miser)*

    [Footnote A:  Observe that dominus\, as distinguished from  
    *magister\, means \_master\_ in the sense of \_owner\_.]*

*97.* Observe the sentences

*This is my shield*  
  *This shield is mine*

In the first sentence *my* is a possessive adjective; in the second *mine* is a possessive pronoun, for it takes the place of a noun, *this shield is mine* being equivalent to *this shield is my shield*.  Similarly, in Latin the possessives are sometimes *adjectives* and sometimes *pronouns*.

*98.* The possessives *my, mine, your, yours*, *etc*. are declined like adjectives of the first and second declensions.

**Page 32**

SINGULAR *1st Pers.* meus, mea, meum *my, mine  
2d Pers.* tuus, tua, tuum *your, yours  
3d Pers.* suus, sua, suum *his (own), her (own),  
its (own)*  
PLURAL *1st Pers.* noster, nostra, nostrum *our, ours  
2d Pers.* vester, vestra, vestrum *your, yours  
3d Pers.* suus, sua, suum *their (own), theirs*

NOTE. *Meus\ has the irregular vocative singular masculine* mi:\, as *mi:  fi:li:\, \_O my son\_.*

*a.* The possessives agree with the name of the *thing possessed* in  
gender, number, and case.  Compare the English and Latin in

*Sextus is calling /his\ boy* Sextus } suum puerum vocat  
      *Julia is calling /her\ boy* Iulia }

    Observe that *suum\ agrees with* puerum\, and is unaffected by the  
    gender of Sextus or Julia.

*b.* When *your, yours*, refers to *one* person, use *tuus\; when to  
    \_more than one\_,* vester\; as,

*Lesbia, your wreaths are pretty*  
        Coronae tuae, Lesbia, sunt pulchrae  
      *Girls, your wreaths are pretty*  
        Coronae vestrae, puellae, sunt pulchrae

*c.* *Suus\ is a \_reflexive\_ possessive, that is, it usually stands in the predicate and regularly refers back to the \_subject\_.  Thus,* Vir suos servos vocat\ means *The man calls his (own) slaves.* Here *his* (suos) refers to *man* (vir), and could not refer to any one else.*d.* Possessives are used much less frequently than in English, being omitted whenever the meaning is clear without them. (Cf.  Sec. 22.a.) This is especially true of *suus, -a, -um\, which, when inserted, is more or less emphatic, like our \_his own, her own\_, etc.*

\_99.\_ EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 286.

I. 1.  Marcus amico Sexto consilium suum nuntiat 2.  Est copia frumenti in agris nostris. 3.  Amici mei bonam cenam ancillae vestrae laudant 4.  Tua lorica, mi fili, est dura. 5.  Scuta nostra et tela, mi amice, in castrls Romanis sunt. 6.  Suntne viri patriae tuae liberi?  Sunt. 7.  Ubi, Corneli, est tua galea pulchra? 8.  Mea galea, Sexte, est in casa mea. 9.  Pilum longum est tuum, sed gladius est meus. 10.  Iulia gallinas suas pulchras amat et gallinae dominam suam amant. 11.  Nostra castra sunt vestra. 12.  Est copia praedae in castris vestris. 13.  Amici tui miseris et aegris cibum et pecuniam saepe dant.

II. 1.  Our teacher praises Mark’s industry. 2.  My son Sextus is carrying his booty to the Roman camp.[1] 3.  Your good girls are giving aid to the sick and wretched.[2] 4.  There are [3] frequent battles in our villages. 5.  My son, where is the lieutenant’s food? 6.  The camp is mine, but the weapons are yours.

**Page 33**

    [Footnote 1:  Not the dative.  Why?]

    [Footnote 2:  Here the adjectives *sick* and *wretched* are used like  
    nouns.]

    [Footnote 3:  Where should *sunt\ stand?  Cf.  I. 2 above.]*

  [Illustration:  AGRICOLA ARAT]

**LESSON XV**

THE ABLATIVE DENOTING *WITH*

  [Special Vocabulary]

NOUNS *carrus, -i:\, m., \_cart, wagon\_* inopia, -ae\, f., *want, lack;* the opposite of *co:pia\* studium, studi:\, n., *zeal, eagerness* (study)

  ADJECTIVES  
  *arma:tus, -a, -um\, \_armed\_*i:nfi:rmus, -a, -um\, *week, feeble* (infirm)  
   vali’dus, -a, -um, *strong, sturdy*

  VERB  
  *ma:tu:rat\, \_he (she, it) hastens.\_ Cf. properat*

  ADVERB  
  *iam\, \_already, now\_*

  /-que\, conjunction, *and*; an enclitic (cf.  Sec. 16) and always added  
  to the *second* of two words to be connected, as *arma tela’que\,  
  \_arms and weapons\_.*

*100.* Of the various relations denoted by the ablative case (Sec. 50) there is none more important than that expressed in English by the preposition *with*.  This little word is not so simple as it looks.  It does not always convey the same meaning, nor is it always to be translated by *cum\.  This will become clear from the following sentences:*

*a.* Mark is feeble *with* (*for* or *because of*) want of food *b.* Diana kills the beasts *with* (or *by*) her arrows *c.* Julia is *with* Sextus *d.* The men fight *with* great steadiness*a.* In sentence *a*, *with want* (*of food*) gives the cause of Mark’s feebleness.  This idea is expressed in Latin by the ablative without a preposition, and the construction is called the *ablative of cause\:*

      Marcus est infirmus inopia cibi

*b.* In sentence *b*, *with* (or *by*) *her arrows* tells *by means of what\ Diana kills the beasts.  This idea is expressed in Latin by the ablative without a preposition, and the construction is called the* ablative of means\:

      Diana sagittis suis feras necat

*c.* In sentence *c* we are told that Julia is not alone, but *in company with\ Sextus.  This idea is expressed in Latin by the ablative with the preposition* cum\, and the construction is called the *ablative of accompaniment\:*

      Iulia est cum Sexto

*d.* In sentence *d* we are told how the men fight.  The idea is one of *manner\.  This is expressed in Latin by the ablative with* cum\, unless there is a modifying adjective present, in which case *cum\ may be omitted.  This construction is called the* ablative of manner\:

      Viri (cum) constantia magna pugnant

**Page 34**

*101.* You are now able to form four important rules for the ablative denoting *with*:

*102.* RULE.  Ablative of Cause. *Cause is denoted by the ablative without a preposition.  This answers the question Because of what?*

*103.* RULE.  Ablative of Means. *Means is denoted by the ablative without a preposition.  This answers the question By means of what?  With what?*

N.B. *Cum\ must never be used with the ablative expressing cause or means.*

*104.* RULE.  Ablative of Accompaniment. *Accompaniment is denoted by the ablative with /cum\.  This answers the question With whom?*

*105.* RULE.  Ablative of Manner. *The ablative with /cum\ is used to denote the manner of an action. /Cum\ may be omitted, if an adjective is used with the ablative.  This answers the question How?  In what manner?*

*106.* What uses of the ablative do you discover in the following passage, and what question does each answer?

The soldiers marched to the fort with great speed and broke down the gate with blows of their muskets.  The inhabitants, terrified by the din, attempted to cross the river with their wives and children, but the stream was swollen with (*or* by) the rain.  Because of this many were swept away by the waters and only a few, almost overcome with fatigue, with great difficulty succeeded in gaining the farther shore.

*107.* EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 286.

I. *The Romans prepare for War.* Romani, clarus Italiae populus, bellum parant.  Ex agris suis, vicis, oppidisque magno studio viri validi ad arma properant.  Iam legati cum legionariis ex Italia ad Rhenum, fluvium Germaniae altum et latum, properant, et servi equis et carris cibum frumentumque ad castra Romana portant.  Inopia bonorum telorum infirmi sunt Germani, sed Romani armati galeis, loricis, scutis, gladiis, pilisque sunt validi.

II. 1.  The sturdy farmers of Italy labor in the fields with great diligence. 2.  Sextus, the lieutenant, and (his) son Mark are fighting with the Germans. 3.  The Roman legionaries are armed with long spears. 4.  Where is Lesbia, your maid, Sextus?  Lesbia is with my friends in Galba’s cottage. 5.  Many are sick because of bad water and for lack of food. 6.  The Germans, with (their) sons and daughters, are hastening with horses and wagons.

**LESSON XVI**

**THE NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES**

*108.* There are nine irregular adjectives of the first and second declensions which have a peculiar termination in the genitive and dative singular of all genders:

MASC. FEM. NEUT.
Gen. -i:us -i:us -i:us
Dat. -i: -i: -i:

Otherwise they are declined like *bonus, -a, -um\.  Learn the list and the meaning of each:*

**Page 35**

*alius, alia, aliud\, \_other, another\_ (of several)* alter, altera, alterum\, *the one, the other* (of two) *u:nus, -a, -um\, \_one, alone\_; (in the plural) \_only\_* u:llus, -a, -um\, *any* *nu:llus, -a, -um\, \_none, no\_* so:lus, -a, -um\, *alone* *to:tus, -a, -um\, \_all, whole, entire\_* uter, utra, utrum\, *which?* (of two) *neuter, neutra, neutrum\, \_neither\_ (of two)*

\_109.\_ PARADIGMS

          SINGULAR  
          MASC.  FEM.  NEUT.   
  Nom. nu:llus nu:lla nu:llum  
  Gen. nu:lli:’us nu:lli:’us nu:lli:’us  
  Dat. nu:lli:  nu:lli:  nu:lli:   
  Acc. nu:llum nu:llam nu:llum  
  Abl. nu:llo:  nu:lla:  nu:llo:

MASC. FEM. NEUT.
Nom. alius alia aliud
Gen. ali:’us ali:’us ali:’us
Dat. alii: alii: alii:
Acc. alium aliam aliud
Abl. alio: alia: alio:

  THE PLURAL IS REGULAR

*a.* Note the peculiar neuter singular ending in -d of *alius\.   
    The genitive* ali:us\ is rare.  Instead of it use *alteri:us\, the  
    genitive of* alter\.

*b.* These peculiar case endings are found also in the declension  
    of pronouns (see Sec. 114).  For this reason these adjectives are  
    sometimes called the *pronominal adjectives\.*

*110.* Learn the following idioms:

*alter, -era, -erum\ ...* alter, -era, -erum\, *the one ... the other*  
    (of two)  
  *alius, -a, -ud\ ...* alius, -a, -ud\, *one ... another* (of any  
    number)  
  *alii, -ae, -a\ ...* alii, -ae, -a\, *some ... others*

**EXAMPLES**

  1.  Alterum oppidum est magnum, alterum parvum, *the one town is  
  large, the other small* (of two towns).

  2.  Aliud oppidum est validum, aliud infirmum, *one town is strong,  
  another weak* (of towns in general).

  3.  Alii gladios, alii scuta portant, *some carry swords, others  
  shields.*

*111.* EXERCISES

I. 1.  In utra casa est Iulia?  Iulia est in neutra casa. 2.  Nulli malo puero praemium dat magister. 3.  Alter puer est nauta, alter agricola. 4.  Alii viri aquam, alii terram amant. 5.  Galba unus (*or* solus) cum studio laborat. 6.  Estne ullus carrus in agro meo? 7.  Lesbia est ancilla alterius domini, Tullia alterius. 8.  Lesbia sola cenam parat. 9.  Cena nullius alterius ancillae est bona. 10.  Lesbia nulli alii viro cenam dat.

NOTE.  The pronominal adjectives, as you observe, regularly stand before and not after their nouns.

II. 1.  The men of all Germany are preparing for war. 2.  Some towns are great and others are small. 3.  One boy likes chickens, another horses. 4.  Already the booty of one town is in our fort. 5.  Our whole village is suffering for (i.e. *weak because of*) lack of food. 6.  The people are already hastening to the other town. 7.  Among the Romans (there) is no lack of grain.

**Page 36**

**LESSON XVII**

THE DEMONSTRATIVE *IS, EA, ID*

  [Special Vocabulary]

NOUNS *agri:  cultu:ra, -ae\, f., \_agriculture\_* Gallia, -ae\, f., *Gaul* *domicili:um, domi:ci’li:\, n., \_dwelling place\_ (domicile), \_abode\_* Gallus, -i\, m., *a Gaul* *lacrima, -ae\, f., \_tear\_* fe:mina, -ae\, f., *woman* (female) *numerus, -i:\, m., \_number\_ (numeral)*

  ADJECTIVE  
  ma:tu:rus, -a, -um\, *ripe, mature*

  ADVERB  
   quo:, *whither*

  VERBS  
   arat, *he (she, it) plows* (arable)  
  *de:si:derat\, \_he (she, it) misses, longs for\_ (desire), with acc.*

  CONJUNCTION  
  *an\, \_or\_, introducing the second half of a double question, as  
    \_Is he a Roman or a Gaul\_,* Estne Romanus an Gallus?\

*112.* A demonstrative is a word that points out an object definitely, as *this, that, these, those*.  Sometimes these words are pronouns, as, *Do you hear these?* and sometimes adjectives, as, *Do you hear these men?* In the former case they are called *demonstrative pronouns\, in the latter* demonstrative adjectives\.

*113.* Demonstratives are similarly used in Latin both as *pronouns* and as *adjectives*.  The one used most is

*is\, masculine;* ea\, feminine; *id\, neuter  
  SINGULAR:  \_this, that\_; PLURAL:  \_these, those\_*

*114.* *Is\ is declined as follows.  Compare its declension with that of* alius\, Sec. 109.

BASE e-

SINGULAR PLURAL  
MASC.  FEM.  NEUT.  MASC.  FEM.  NEUT.   
Nom. is ea id ei:  eae ea  
(*or* ii:)  
Gen. eius eius eius eo:rum ea:rum eo:rum  
Dat. ei:  ei:  ei:  ei:s ei:s ei:s  
(*or* ii:s ii:s ii:s)  
Acc. eum eam id eo:s ea:s ea  
Abl. eo:  ea:  eo:  ei:s ei:s ei:s  
(*or* ii:s ii:s ii:s)

Note that the base e- changes to i- in a few cases.  The genitive singular *eius\ is pronounced \_eh’yus\_.  In the plural the forms with two* i\’s are preferred and the two *i\’s are pronounced as one.  Hence, pronounce* ii:\ as *i:\ and* ii:s\ as *i:s\.*

*115.* Besides being used as demonstrative pronouns and adjectives the Latin demonstratives are regularly used for the personal pronoun *he, she, it*.  As a personal pronoun, then, *is\ would have the following meanings:*

  SINGULAR  
  Nom. is, *he*; ea, *she*; id, *it*  
  Gen. eius, *of him* or *his*;  
       eius, *of her, her*, or *hers*;  
       eius, *of it* or *its*  
  Dat. ei:, *to* or *for him*;  
       ei:, *to* or *for her*;

**Page 37**

       ei:, *to* or *for it*  
  Acc. eum, *him*; eam, *her*; id, *it*  
  Abl. eo:, *with, from*, *etc*., *him*;  
       ea:, *with, from*, *etc*., *her*;  
       eo:, *with, from*, *etc*., *it*

  PLURAL  
  Nom. ei:  or ii:, eae, ea, *they*  
  Gen. eo:rum, ea:rum, eo:rum, *of them, their*  
  Dat. ei:s or ii:s, ei:s or ii:s, ei:s or ii:s,  
          *to* or *for them*  
  Acc. eo:s, ea:s, ea, *them*  
  Abl. ei:s or ii:s, ei:s or ii:s, ei:s or ii:s,  
          *with, from*, *etc*., *them*

*116.* Comparison between *suus* and *is*.  We learned above (Sec. 98.c) that *suus\ is a \_reflexive\_ possessive.  When \_his, her\_ (poss.), \_its, their\_, do not refer to the subject of the sentence, we express \_his, her, its\_ by* eius\, the genitive singular of *is\,* ea\, *id\; and \_their\_ by the genitive plural, using* eorum\ to refer to a masculine or neuter antecedent noun and *earum\ to refer to a feminine one.*

**EXAMPLES**

*Galba calls his* (own) *son*,  
    Galba suum filium vocat  
  *Galba calls his son* (not his own, but another’s),  
    Galba eius filium vocat  
  *Julia calls her* (own) *children*,  
    Iulia suos liberos vocat  
  *Julia calls her children* (not her own, but another’s),  
    Iulia eius liberos vocat  
  *The men praise their* (own) *boys*,  
    viri suos pueros laudant  
  *The men praise their boys* (not their own, but others’),  
    viri eorum pueros laudant

*117.* EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 287.

1.  He praises her, him, it, them. 2.  This cart, that report, these teachers, those women, that abode, these abodes. 3.  That strong garrison, among those weak and sick women, that want of firmness, those frequent plans.

4.  The other woman is calling her chickens (*her own*). 5.  Another woman is calling her chickens (*not her own*). 6.  The Gaul praises his arms (*his own*). 7.  The Gaul praises his arms (*not his own*). 8.  This farmer often plows their fields. 9.  Those wretched slaves long for their master (*their own*). 10.  Those wretched slaves long for their master (*not their own*). 11.  Free men love their own fatherland. 12.  They love its villages and towns.

*118.* DIALOGUE[1]

**CORNELIUS AND MARCUS**

  M. Quis est vir, Corneli, cum puero parvo?  Estne Romanus et liber?   
  C. Romanus non est, Marce.  Is vir est servus et eius domicilium est in  
    silvis Galliae.   
  M. Estne puer filius eius servi an alterius?   
  C. Neutrius filius est puer.  Is est filius legati Sexti.   
  M. Quo puer cum eo servo properat?

**Page 38**

  C. Is cum servo properat ad latos Sexti agros.[2] Totum frumentum est  
    iam maturum et magnus servorum numerus in Italiae[3] agris laborat.   
  M. Agricolaene sunt Galli et patriae suae agros arant?   
  C. Non agricolae sunt.  Bellum amant Galli, non agri culturam.  Apud eos  
    viri pugnant et feminae auxilio liberorum agros arant parantque  
    cibum.   
  M. Magister noster pueris puellisque gratas Gallorum fabulas saepe  
    narrat et laudat eos saepe.   
  C. Mala est fortuna eorum et saepe miseri servi multis cum lacrimis  
    patriam suam desiderant.

    [Footnote 1:  There are a number of departures from the normal order  
    in this dialogue.  Find them, and give the reason.]

    [Footnote 2:  When a noun is modified by both a genitive and an  
    adjective, a favorite order of words is *adjective, genitive,  
    noun*.]

    [Footnote 3:  A modifying genitive often stands between a preposition  
    and its object.]

\* \* \* \* \*

  Second Review, Lessons IX-XVII, Secs. 506-509

\* \* \* \* \*

**LESSON XVIII**

CONJUGATION  
THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE TENSES OF *SUM\*

  [Special Vocabulary]

  NOUNS  
   lu:dus, -i:, m.,\_school\_  
  *socius, soci:\, m., \_companion, ally\_ (social)*

  ADJECTIVES  
  *i:ra:tus, -a, -um\, \_angry, furious\_ (irate)*laetus, -a, -um\, *happy, glad* (social)

  ADVERBS  
   hodie:, *to-day*  
  *ibi\, \_there, in that place\_  
   mox, \_presently, soon\_, of the immediate future*nunc\, *now, the present moment*  
  *nu:per\, \_lately, recently\_, of the immediate past*

*119.* The inflection of a verb is called its *conjugation* (cf.  Sec. 23).  In English the verb has but few changes in form, the different meanings being expressed by the use of personal pronouns and auxiliaries, as, *I am carried, we have carried, they shall have carried*, *etc*.  In Latin, on the other hand, instead of using personal pronouns and auxiliary verbs, the form changes with the meaning.  In this way the Romans expressed differences in *tense, mood, voice, person*, and *number*.

*120.* The Tenses.  The different forms of a verb referring to different times are called its *tenses*.  The chief distinctions of time are present, past, and future:

  1. *The present\, that is, \_what is happening now\_, or  
     \_what usually happens\_, is expressed by  
        THE PRESENT TENSE*

  2. *The past\, that is, \_what was happening, used to happen,  
      happened, has happened\_, or \_had happened\_, is expressed by  
        THE IMPERFECT, PERFECT, AND PLUPERFECT TENSES*

  3. *The future\, that is, \_what is going to happen\_, is expressed by  
        THE FUTURE AND FUTURE PERFECT TENSES*

**Page 39**

*121.* The Moods.  Verbs have inflection of *mood* to indicate the manner in which they express action.  The moods of the Latin verb are the *indicative, subjunctive, imperative*, and *infinitive*.

*a.* A verb is in the *indicative* mood when it makes a statement or  
    asks a question about something assumed as a fact.  All the verbs we  
    have used thus far are in the present indicative.

*122.* The Persons.  There are three persons, as in English.  The first person is the person speaking (*I sing*); the second person the person spoken to (*you sing*); the third person the person spoken of (*he sings*).  Instead of using personal pronouns for the different persons in the two numbers, singular and plural, the Latin verb uses the personal endings (cf.  Sec. 22 *a*; 29).  We have already learned that -t is the ending of the third person singular in the active voice and -nt of the third person plural.  The complete list of personal endings of the active voice is as follows:

SINGULAR PLURAL
*1st Pers.* *I* -m or -o: *we* -mus
*2d Pers.* *thou* or *you* -s *you* -tis
*3d Pers.* *he, she, it* -t *they* -nt

*123.* Most verbs form their moods and tenses after a regular plan and are called *regular* verbs.  Verbs that depart from this plan are called *irregular*.  The verb *to be* is irregular in Latin as in English.  The present, imperfect, and future tenses of the indicative are inflected as follows:

PRESENT INDICATIVE
SINGULAR PLURAL
*1st Pers.* su-m, *I am* su-mus, *we are2d Pers.* e-s, *you[1] are* es-tis, *you[1] are3d Pers.* es-t, *he, she*, or *it is* su-nt, *they are*

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE  
SINGULAR PLURAL *1st Pers.* er-a-m, *I was* er-a:’-mus, *we were  
2d Pers.* er-a:-s, *you were* er-a:’-tis, *you were  
3d Pers.* er-a-t, *he, she*, or *it was* er-a:-nt, *they were*

FUTURE INDICATIVE
SINGULAR PLURAL
*1st Pers.* er-o:, *I shall be* er’-i-mus, *we shall be2d Pers.* er-i-s, *you will be* er’-i-tis, *you will be3d Pers.* er-i-t, *he will be* er-u-nt, *they will be*

*a.* Be careful about vowel quantity and accent in these forms, and  
consult Secs. 12.2; 14; 15.

[Footnote 1:  Observe that in English *you are*, *you were*, *etc*. may  
be either singular or plural.  In Latin the singular and plural forms  
are never the same.]

*124.* DIALOGUE

**THE BOYS SEXTUS AND MARCUS**

**Page 40**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 287.

  S. Ubi es, Marce?  Ubi est Quintus?  Ubi estis, amici?   
  M. Cum Quinto, Sexte, in silva sum.  Non soli sumus; sunt in silva  
    multi alii pueri.   
  S. Nunc laetus es, sed nuper non laetus eras.  Cur miser eras?   
  M. Miser eram quia amici mei erant in alio vico et eram solus.  Nunc  
    sum apud socios meos.  Nunc laeti sumus et erimus.   
  S. Eratisne in ludo hodie?   
  M. Hodie non eramus in ludo, quod magister erat aeger.   
  S. Eritisne mox in ludo?   
  M. Amici mei ibi erunt, sed ego (*I*) non ero.   
  S. Cur non ibi eris?  Magister, saepe iratus, inopiam tuam studi  
    diligentiaeque non laudat.   
  M. Nuper aeger eram et nunc infirmus sum.

*125.* EXERCISE

1.  You are, you were, you will be, (*sing. and plur.*). 2.  I am, I was, I shall be. 3.  He is, he was, he will be. 4.  We are, we were, we shall be. 5.  They are, they were, they will be.

6.  Why were you not in school to-day?  I was sick. 7.  Lately he was a sailor, now he is a farmer, soon he will be a teacher. 8.  To-day I am happy, but lately I was wretched. 9.  The teachers were happy because of the boys’ industry.

  [Illustration:  PUERI ROMANI IN LUDO]

**LESSON XIX**

THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS  
PRESENT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF *AMO:* AND *MONEO:*

*126.* There are four conjugations of the regular verbs.  These conjugations are distinguished from each other by the final vowel of the present conjugation-stem.[1] This vowel is called the *distinguishing vowel*, and is best seen in the present infinitive.

[Footnote 1:  The *stem* is the body of a word to which the terminations are attached.  It is often identical with the base (cf.  Sec. 58).  If, however, the stem ends in a vowel, the latter does not appear in the base, but is variously combined with the inflectional terminations.  This point is further explained in Sec. 230.]

Below is given the *present infinitive* of a verb of each conjugation, the *present stem*, and the *distinguishing vowel.*

DISTINGUISHING
CONJUGATION PRES. INFIN. PRES. STEM VOWEL
I. ama:’re, *to love* ama:- a:
II. mone:’re, *to advise* mone:- e:
III. re’gere, *to rule* rege- e
IV. audi:’re, *to hear* audi- i:

*a.* Note that the present stem of each conjugation is found by  
    dropping -re, the ending of the present infinitive.

NOTE.  The present infinitive of *sum\ is* esse\, and es- is the present stem.

*127.* From the present stem are formed the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses.

*128.* The inflection of the Present Active Indicative of the first and of the second conjugation is as follows:

**Page 41**

a’mo:, ama:’re (*love*) mo’neo:, mone:’re (*advise*)
PRES. STEM ama:- PRES. STEM mone:-

      SINGULAR PLURAL PERSONAL ENDINGS  
  1. a’mo:, *I love* mo’neo:, *I advise* -o:   
  2. a’ma:s, *you love* mo’ne:s, *you advise* -s  
  3. a’mat, *he (she, it) loves* mo’net, *he (she, it) advises* -t

1. ama:’mus, *we love* mone:’mus, *we advise* -mus
2. ama:’tis, *you love* mone:’tis, *you advise* -tis
3. a’mant, *they love* mo’nent, *they advise* -nt
1.  The present tense is inflected by adding the personal endings to the present stem, and its first person uses -o and not -m.  The form *amo:\ is for* ama-o:\, the two vowels *a-o:\ contracting to* o:\.  In *moneo:\ there is no contraction. \_Nearly all regular verbs ending in -eo belong to the second conjugation.\_*

  2.  Note that the long final vowel of the stem is shortened before  
  another vowel (mone:-o:  = mo’neo:), and before final -t (amat,  
  monet) and -nt (amant, monent).  Compare Sec. 12.2.

*129.* Like *amo:\ and* moneo:\ inflect the present active indicative of the following verbs[2]:

    [Footnote 2:  The only new verbs in this list are the five of the  
    second conjugation which are starred.  Learn their meanings.]

  INDICATIVE PRESENT INFINITIVE PRESENT  
   a’ro, *I plow* ara’re, *to plow*  
   cu’ro, *I care for* cura’re, *to care for*  
  *de:’leo:, \_I destroy\_ de:le:’re, \_to destroy\_  
   desi’dero, \_I long for\_ desidera’re, \_to long for\_  
   do,[3] \_I give\_ da’re, \_to give\_*ha’beo:, *I have* habe:’re, *to have*  
   ha’bito, *I live, I dwell* habita’re, *to live, to dwell*  
  *iu’beo:, \_I order\_ iube:’re, \_to order\_  
   labo’ro, \_I labor\_ labora’re, \_to labor\_  
   lau’do, \_I praise\_ lauda’re, \_to praise\_  
   matu’ro, \_I hasten\_ matura’re, \_to hasten\_*mo’veo:, *I move* move:’re, *to move*  
   nar’ro, *I tell* narra’re, *to tell*  
   ne’co, *I kill* neca’re, *to kill*  
   nun’tio, *I announce* nuntia’re, *to announce*  
   pa’ro, *I prepare* para’re, *to prepare*  
   por’to, *I carry* porta’re, *to carry*  
   pro’pero, *I hasten* propera’re, *to hasten*  
   pug’no, *I fight* pugna’re, *to fight*  
  *vi’deo:, \_I see\_ vide:’re, \_to see\_  
   vo’co, \_I call\_ voca’re, \_to call\_*

**Page 42**

[Footnote 3:  Observe that in *do:, dare\, the* a\ is *short*, and that the present stem is da- and not da:-.  The only forms of *do:\ that have a long are* da:s\ (pres. indic.), *da:\ (pres. imv.), and* da:ns\ (pres. part.).]

*130.* The Translation of the Present.  In English there are three ways of expressing present action.  We may say, for example, *I live, I am living*, or *I do live*.  In Latin the one expression *habito\ covers all three of these expressions.*

*131.* EXERCISES

Give the *voice*, *mood*, *tense*, *person*, and *number* of each form.

I. 1.  Vocamus, properatis, iubent. 2.  Movetis, laudas, vides. 3.  Deletis, habetis, dant. 4.  Maturas, desiderat, videmus. 5.  Iubet, movent, necat. 6.  Narramus, moves, vident. 7.  Laboratis, properant, portas, parant. 8.  Delet, habetis, iubemus, das.

N.B.  Observe that the personal ending is of prime importance in translating a Latin verb form.  Give that your first attention.

II. 1.  We plow, we are plowing, we do plow. 2.  They care for, they are caring for, they do care for. 3.  You give, you are having, you do have (*sing*.). 4.  We destroy, I do long for, they are living. 5.  He calls, they see, we are telling. 6.  We do fight, we order, he is moving, he prepares. 7.  They are laboring, we kill, you announce.

**LESSON XX**

IMPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF *AMO:* AND *MONEO:*

  [Special Vocabulary]

  NOUNS  
  *fo:rma, -ae\, f., \_form, beauty\_*regi:na, -ae\, f., *queen* (regal)  
  *poena, -ae\, f., \_punishment, penalty\_  
   superbia, -ae, f., \_pride, haughtiness\_*potentia, -ae\, f., *power* (potent)  
  *tri:sti:ti:a, -ae\, f., \_sadness, sorrow\_*

  ADJECTIVES  
  *septem\, indeclinable, \_seven\_*superbus, -a, -um\, *proud, haughty* (superb)

   CONJUNCTIONS  
  *no:n so:lum ... sed etiam\, \_not only ... but also\_*

*132.* Tense Signs.  Instead of using auxiliary verbs to express differences in tense, like *was*, *shall*, *will*, *etc*., Latin adds to the verb stem certain elements that have the force of auxiliary verbs.  These are called *tense signs*.

*133.* Formation and Inflection of the Imperfect.  The tense sign of the imperfect is -ba:-, which is added to the present stem.  The imperfect consists, therefore, of three parts:

PRESENT STEM TENSE SIGN PERSONAL ENDING
ama:- ba- m
*loving* *was* *I*

The inflection is as follows:

CONJUGATION I CONJUGATION II  
PERSONAL  
SINGULAR ENDINGS  
1. ama:’bam, *I was loving* mone:’bam, *I was advising* -m 2. ama:’ba:s, *you were loving* mone:’ba:s, *you were advising* -s 3. ama:’bat, *he was loving* mone:’bat, *he was advising* -t

**Page 43**

PLURAL 1. ama:ba:’mus, *we were loving* mone:ba:’mus, *we were advising* -mus 2. ama:ba:’tis, *you were loving* mone:ba:’tis, *you were advising* -tis 3. ama:’bant, *they were loving* mone:’bant, *they wereadvising* -nt

*a.* Note that the *a:\ of the tense sign -ba:- is shortened before  
    -nt, and before* m\ and *t\ when final. (Cf.  Sec. 12.2.)*

In a similar manner inflect the verbs given in Sec. 129.

*134.* Meaning of the Imperfect.  The Latin imperfect describes an act as *going on* or *progressing in past time*, like the English past-progressive tense (as, *I was walking*).  It is the regular tense used to describe a past situation or condition of affairs.

*135.* EXERCISES

I. 1.  Videbamus, desiderabat, maturabas. 2.  Dabant, vocabatis, delebamus. 3.  Pugnant, laudabas, movebatis. 4.  Iubebant, properabatis, portabamus. 5.  Dabas, narrabant, laborabatis. 6.  Videbant, movebas, nuntiabamus. 7.  Necabat, movebam, habebat, parabatis.

II. 1.  You were having (*sing. and plur.*), we were killing, they were laboring. 2.  He was moving, we were ordering, we were fighting. 3.  We were telling, they were seeing, he was calling. 4.  They were living, I was longing for, we were destroying. 5.  You were giving, you were moving, you were announcing, (*sing. and plur.*). 6.  They were caring for, he was plowing, we were praising.

*136.* NI’OBE AND HER CHILDREN

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 287.

Niobe, regina Thebanorum, erat pulchra femina sed superba.  Erat superba non solum forma[1] sua maritique potentia[1] sed etiam magno liberorum numero.[1] Nam habebat[2] septem filios et septem filias.  Sed ea superbia erat reginae[3] causa magnae tristitiae et liberis[3] causa durae poenae.

NOTE.  The words *Niobe\,* Thebanorum\, and *mariti\ will be found in the general vocabulary.  Translate the selection without looking up any other words.*

    [Footnote 1:  Ablative of cause.]

    [Footnote 2:  Translate *had*; it denotes a past situation. (See  
    Sec. 134.)]

    [Footnote 3:  Dative, cf.  Sec. 43.]

**LESSON XXI**

FUTURE ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF *AMO:* AND *MONEO:*

  [Special Vocabulary]

  NOUNS  
   sacrum, -i:, n., *sacrifice, offering, rite*  
  *verbum, -i:\, n., \_word\_ (verb)*

  VERBS  
   sedeo:, -e:re, *sit* (sediment)  
   volo:, -a:re, *fly* (volatile)

ADJECTIVES *interfectus, -a, -um\, \_slain\_* molestus, -a, -um\, *troublesome, annoying* (molest) *perpetuus, -a, -um\, \_perpetual, continuous\_*

  ego\, personal pronoun, *I* (egotism).  Always emphatic in the  
    nominative.

**Page 44**

*137.* The tense sign of the Future Indicative in the first and second conjugations is -bi-.  This is joined to the present stem of the verb and followed by the personal ending, as follows:

PRESENT STEM TENSE SIGN PERSONAL ENDING
ama:- bi- s
*love* *will* *you*

*138.* The Future Active Indicative is inflected as follows.

     CONJUGATION I CONJUGATION II  
     SINGULAR  
  1. ama:’bo:, *I shall love* mone:’bo:, *I shall advise*  
  2. ama:’bis, *you will love* mone:’bis, *you will advise*  
  3. ama:’bit, *he will love* mone:’bit, *he will advise*

     PLURAL  
  1. ama:’bimus, *we shall love* mone:’bimus, *we shall advise*  
  2. ama:’bitis *you will love* mone:’bitis, *you will advise*  
  3. ama:’bunt, *they will love* mone:’bunt, *they will advise*

*a.* The personal endings are as in the present.  The ending -bo:  in the first person singular is contracted from -bi-o:.  The -bi- appears as -bu- in the third person plural.  Note that the inflection is like that of *ero:\, the future of* sum\. *Pay especial attention to the accent.*

In a similar manner inflect the verbs given in Sec. 129.

*139.* EXERCISES

I. 1.  Movebitis, laudabis, arabo. 2.  Delebitis, vocabitis, dabunt. 3.  Maturabis, desiderabit, videbimus. 4.  Habebit, movebunt, necabit. 5.  Narrabimus, monebis, videbunt. 6.  Laborabitis, curabunt, dabis. 7.  Habitabimus, properabitis, iubebunt, parabit. 8.  Nuntiabo, portabimus, iubebo.

II. 1.  We shall announce, we shall see, I shall hasten. 2.  I shall carry, he will plow, they will care for. 3.  You will announce, you will move, you will give, (*sing. and plur.*). 4.  We shall fight, we shall destroy, I shall long for. 5.  He will call, they will see, you will tell (*plur.*). 6.  They will dwell, we shall order, he will praise. 7.  They will labor, we shall kill, you will have (*sing. and plur.*), he will destroy.

*140.* NI’OBE AND HER CHILDREN (*Concluded*)

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 288.

Apollo et Diana erant liberi Latonae.  Iis Thebani sacra crebra parabant.[1] Oppidani amabant Latonam et liberos eius.  Id superbae reginae erat molestum.  “Cur,” inquit, “Latonae et liberis sacra paratis?  Duos liberos habet Latona; quattuordecim habeo ego.  Ubi sunt mea sacra?” Latona iis verbis[2] irata liberos suos vocat.  Ad eam volant Apollo Dianaque et sagittis[3] suis miseros liberos reginae superbae delent.  Niobe, nuper laeta, nunc misera, sedet apud liberos interfectos et cum perpetuis lacrimis[4] eos desiderat.

NOTE.  Consult the general vocabulary for *Apollo\,* inquit\, *duos\, and* quattuordecim\.  Try to remember the meaning of all the other words.

**Page 45**

    [Footnote 1:  Observe the force of the imperfect here, *used to  
    prepare*, *were in the habit of preparing*; so *amabant\ denotes a  
    past situation of affairs. (See Sec. 134.)]*

    [Footnote 2:  Ablative of cause.]

    [Footnote 3:  Ablative of means.]

[Footnote 4:  This may be either manner or accompaniment.  It is often impossible to draw a sharp line between means, manner, and accompaniment.  The Romans themselves drew no sharp distinction.  It was enough for them if the general idea demanded the ablative case.]

**LESSON XXII**

**REVIEW OF VERBS :  THE DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES**

  [Special Vocabulary]

  NOUNS  
  *discipli:na, -ae\, f., \_training, culture, discipline\_*Ga:ius, Ga:i:\, m., *Caius*, a Roman first name  
  *o:rna:mentum, -i:\, n., \_ornament, jewel\_  
   Tiberius, Tibe’ri:, m., \_Tiberius\_, a Roman first name*

  VERB  
  *doceo:, -e:re\, \_teach\_ (doctrine)*

  ADVERB  
  *maxime:\, \_most of all, especially\_*

  ADJECTIVE  
  *anti:quus, -qua, -quum\, \_old, ancient\_ (antique)*

*141.* Review the present, imperfect, and future active indicative, both orally and in writing, of *sum\ and the verbs in Sec. 129.*

*142.* We learned in Sec. 43 for what sort of expressions we may expect the dative, and in Sec. 44 that one of its commonest uses is with *verbs* to express the indirect object.  It is also very common with *adjectives* to express the object toward which the quality denoted by the adjective is directed.  We have already had a number of cases where *gratus\, \_agreeable to\_, was so followed by a dative; and in the last lesson we had* molestus\, *annoying to*, followed by that case.  The usage may be more explicitly stated by the following rule:

*143.* RULE.  Dative with Adjectives. *The dative is used with adjectives to denote the object toward which the given quality is directed.  Such are, especially, those meaning /near\, also /fit\, /friendly\, /pleasing\, /like\, and their opposites.*

*144.* Among such adjectives memorize the following:

ido:neus, -a, -um, *fit, suitable* (for) ami:cus, -a, -um, *friendly* (to) inimicus, -a, -um, *hostile* (to) gra:tus, -a, -um, *pleasing* (to), *agreeable* (to) molestus, -a, -um, *annoying* (to), *troublesome* (to) fi:nitimus, -a, -um, *neighboring* (to) proximus, -a, -um, *nearest, next* (to)

*145.* EXERCISES

I. 1.  Romani terram idoneam agri culturae habent. 2.  Galli copiis Romanis inimici erant. 3.  Cui dea Latona amica non erat? 4.  Dea Latona superbae reginae amica non erat. 5.  Cibus noster, Marce, erit armatis viris gratus. 6.  Quid erat molestum populis Italiae? 7.  Bella longa cum Gallis erant molesta populis Italiae. 8.  Agri Germanorum fluvio Rheno finitimi erant. 9.  Romani ad silvam oppido proximam castra movebant. 10.  Non solum forma sed etiam superbia reginae erat magna. 11.  Mox regina pulchra erit aegra tristitia. 12.  Cur erat Niobe, regina Thebanorum, laeta?  Laeta erat Niobe multis filiis et filiabus.

**Page 46**

II. 1.  The sacrifices of the people will be annoying to the haughty queen. 2.  The sacrifices were pleasing not only to Latona but also to Diana. 3.  Diana will destroy those hostile to Latona. 4.  The punishment of the haughty queen was pleasing to the goddess Diana. 5.  The Romans will move their forces to a large field[1] suitable for a camp. 6.  Some of the allies were friendly to the Romans, others to the Gauls.

    [Footnote 1:  Why not the dative?]

*146.* CORNELIA AND HER JEWELS

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 288.

Apud antiquas dominas, Cornelia, Africani filia, erat[2] maxime clara.  Filii eius erant Tiberius Gracchus et Gaius Gracchus.  Ii pueri cum Cornelia in oppido Roma, claro Italiae oppido, habitabant.  Ibi eos curabat Cornelia et ibi magno cum studio eos docebat.  Bona femina erat Cornelia et bonam disciplinam maxime amabat.

NOTE.  Can you translate the paragraph above?  There are no new words.

    [Footnote 2:  Observe that all the imperfects denote continued or  
    progressive action, or describe a state of affairs. (Cf.  Sec. 134.)]

**LESSON XXIII**

PRESENT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF *REGO:* AND *AUDIO:*

*147.* As we learned in Sec. 126, the present stem of the third conjugation ends in -e, and of the fourth in -i:.  The inflection of the Present Indicative is as follows:

CONJUGATION III CONJUGATION IV
re’go:, re’gere (*rule*) au’dio, audi:’re (*hear*)
PRES. STEM rege- PRES. STEM audi:-

     SINGULAR  
  1. re’go:, *I rule* au’dio:, *I hear*  
  2. re’gis, *you rule* au’di:s, *you hear*  
  3. re’git, *he (she, it) rules* au’dit, *he (she, it) hears*

PLURAL
1. re’gimus, *we rule* audi:’mus, *we hear*
2. re’gitis, *you rule* audi:’tis, *you hear*
3. re’gunt, *they rule* au’diunt, *they hear*

  1.  The personal endings are the same as before.

2.  The final short -e- of the stem rege- combines with the -o:  in the first person, becomes -u- in the third person plural, and becomes -i- elsewhere.  The inflection is like that of *ero:\, the future of* sum\.3.  In *audio:\ the personal endings are added regularly to the stem audi:-.  In the third person plural -u- is inserted between the stem and the personal ending, as* audi-u-nt\.  Note that the long vowel of the stem is shortened before final -t just as in *amo\ and* moneo\.  (Cf.  Sec. 12.2.)

Note that -i- is always short in the third conjugation and long in the fourth, excepting where long vowels are regularly shortened. (Cf.  Sec. 12.1, 2.)

*148.* Like *rego\ and* audio\ inflect the present active indicative of the following verbs:

**Page 47**

  INDICATIVE PRESENT INFINITIVE PRESENT

ago:, *I drive* agere, *to drive* di:co:, *I say* di:cere, *to say* du:co:, *I lead* du:cere, *to lead* mitto:, *I send* mittere, *to send* mu:nio:, *I fortify* mu:ni:re, *to fortify* reperio:, *I find* reperi:re, *to find* venio:, *I come* veni:re, *to come*

*149.* EXERCISES

I. 1.  Quis agit?  Cur venit?  Quem mittit?  Quem ducis? 2.  Quid mittunt?  Ad quem veniunt?  Cuius castra muniunt? 3.  Quem agunt?  Venimus.  Quid puer reperit? 4.  Quem mittimus?  Cuius equum ducitis?  Quid dicunt? 5.  Munimus, venitis, dicit. 6.  Agimus, reperitis, munis. 7.  Reperis, ducitis, dicis. 8.  Agitis, audimus, regimus.

II. 1.  What do they find?  Whom do they hear?  Why does he come? 2.  Whose camp are we fortifying?  To whom does he say?  What are we saying? 3.  I am driving, you are leading, they are hearing. 4.  You send, he says, you fortify (*sing. and plur.*). 5.  I am coming, we find, they send. 6.  They lead, you drive, he does fortify. 7.  You lead, you find, you rule, (*all plur.*).

*150.* CORNELIA AND HER JEWELS (*Concluded*)

Proximum domicilio Corneliae erat pulchrae Campanae domicilium.  Campana erat superba non solum forma sua sed maxime ornamentis suis.  Ea[1] laudabat semper.  “Habesne tu ulla ornamenta, Cornelia?” inquit.  “Ubi sunt tua ornamenta?” Deinde Cornelia filios suos Tiberium et Gaium vocat.  “Pueri mei,” inquit, “sunt mea ornamenta.  Nam boni liberi sunt semper bonae feminae ornamenta maxime clara.”

NOTE.  The only new words here are *Campana\,* semper\, and *tu\.*

    [Footnote 1:  *Ea\, accusative plural neuter.]*

  [Illustration:  “PUERI MEI SUNT MEA ORNAMENTA”]

**LESSON XXIV**

IMPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF *REGO:* AND *AUDIO:*  
THE DATIVE WITH SPECIAL INTRANSITIVE VERBS

*151.* PARADIGMS

     CONJUGATION III CONJUGATION IV  
     SINGULAR  
  1. rege:’bam, *I was ruling* audie:’bam, *I was hearing*  
  2. rege:’ba:s, *you were riding* audie:’ba:s, *you were hearing*  
  3. rege:’bat, *he was ruling* audie:’bat, *he was hearing*

     PLURAL  
  1. rege:ba:’mus, *we were ruling* audie:ba:’mus, *we were hearing*  
  2. rege:ba:’tis, *you were ruling* audie:ba:’tis, *you were hearing*  
  3. rege:’bant, *they were ruling* audie:’bant, *they were hearing*

  1.  The tense sign is -ba:-, as in the first two conjugations.

  2.  Observe that the final -e- of the stem is lengthened before the  
  tense sign -ba:-.  This makes the imperfect of the third conjugation  
  just like the imperfect of the second (cf. *mone:bam\ and* rege:bam\).

**Page 48**

  3.  In the fourth conjugation -e:- is inserted between the stem and  
  the tense sign -ba:- (audi-e:-ba-m).

  4.  In a similar manner inflect the verbs given in Sec. 148.

*152.* EXERCISES

I. 1.  Agebat, veniebat, mittebat, ducebant. 2.  Agebant, mittebant, ducebas, muniebant. 3.  Mittebamus, ducebatis, dicebant. 4.  Muniebamus, veniebatis, dicebas. 5.  Mittebas, veniebamus, reperiebat. 6.  Reperiebas, veniebas, audiebatis. 7.  Agebamus, reperiebatis, muniebat. 8.  Agebatis, dicebam, muniebam.

II. 1.  They were leading, you were driving (*sing. and plur.*), he was fortifying. 2.  They were sending, we were finding, I was coming. 3.  You were sending, you were fortifying, (*sing. and plur.*), he was saying. 4.  They were hearing, you were leading (*sing. and plur.*), I was driving. 5.  We were saying, he was sending, I was fortifying. 6.  They were coming, he was hearing, I was finding. 7.  You were ruling (*sing. and plur.*), we were coming, they were ruling.

*153.* The Dative with Special Intransitive Verbs.  We learned above (Sec. 20.a) that a verb which does not admit of a direct object is called an *intransitive* verb.  Many such verbs, however, are of such meaning that they can govern an indirect object, which will, of course, be in the dative case (Sec. 45).  Learn the following list of intransitive verbs with their meanings.  In each case the dative indirect object is the person or thing to which a benefit, injury, or feeling is directed. (Cf.  Sec. 43.)

cre:do:, cre:dere, *believe* (give belief to) faveo:, fave:re, *favor* (show favor to) noceo:, noce:re, *injure* (do harm to) pa:reo:, pa:re:re, *obey* (give obedience to) persua:deo:, persua:de:re, *persuade* (offer persuasion to) resisto:, resistere, *resist* (offer resistance to) studeo:, stude:re, *be eager for* (give attention to)

*154.* RULE.  Dative with Intransitive Verbs. *The dative of the indirect object is used with the intransitive verbs /credo\, /faveo\, /noceo\, /pareo\, /persuadeo\, /resisto\, /studeo\, and others of like meaning.*

*155.* EXERCISE

1.  Credisne verbis sociorum?  Multi verbis eorum non credunt. 2.  Mei finitimi consilio tuo non favebunt, quod bello student. 3.  Tiberius et Gaius disciplinae durae non resistebant et Corneliae parebant. 4.  Dea erat inimica septem filiabus reginae. 5.  Dura poena et perpetua tristitia reginae non persuadebunt. 6.  Nuper ea resistebat et nunc resistit potentiae Latonae. 7.  Mox sagittae volabunt et liberis miseris nocebunt.

**LESSON XXV**

FUTURE ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF *REGO:* AND *AUDIO:*

*156.* In the future tense of the third and fourth conjugations we meet with a new tense sign.  Instead of using -bi-, as in the first and second conjugations, we use -a:-[1] in the first person singular and -e:- in the rest of the tense.  In the third conjugation the final -e-of the stem is dropped before this tense sign; in the fourth conjugation the final -i:- of the stem is retained.[2]

**Page 49**

    [Footnote 1:  The -a:- is shortened before -m final, and -e:-  
    before -t final and before -nt. (Cf.  Sec. 12.2.)]

    [Footnote 2:  The -i:- is, of course, shortened, being before  
    another vowel. (Cf.  Sec. 12.1.)]

*157.* PARADIGMS

     CONJUGATION III CONJUGATION IV  
     SINGULAR  
  1. re’gam, *I shall rule* au’diam, *I shall hear*  
  2. re’ge:s, *you will rule* au’die:s, *you will hear*  
  3. re’get, *he will rule* au’diet, *he will hear*

     PLURAL  
  1. rege:’mus, *we shall rule* audie:’mus, *we shall hear*  
  2. rege:’tis, *you will rule* audie:’tis, *you will hear*  
  3. re’gent, *they will rule* au’dient, *they will hear*

  1.  Observe that the future of the third conjugation is like the  
  present of the second, excepting in the first person singular.

  2.  In the same manner inflect the verbs given in Sec. 148.

*158.* EXERCISES

I. 1.  Dicet, ducetis, muniemus. 2.  Dicent, dicetis, mittemus. 3.  Munient, venient, mittent, agent. 4.  Ducet, mittes, veniet, aget. 5.  Muniet, reperietis, agemus. 6.  Mittam, veniemus, regent. 7.  Audietis, venies, reperies. 8.  Reperiet, agam, ducemus, mittet. 9.  Videbitis, sedebo, vocabimus.

II. 1.  I shall find, he will hear, they will come. 2.  I shall fortify, he will send, we shall say. 3.  I shall drive, you will lead, they will hear. 4.  You will send, you will fortify, (*sing. and plur.*), he will say. 5.  I shall come, we shall find, they will send.

6.  Who[3] will believe the story?  I[4] shall believe the story. 7.  Whose friends do you favor?  We favor our friends. 8.  Who will resist our weapons?  Sextus will resist your weapons. 9.  Who will persuade him?  They will persuade him. 10.  Why were you injuring my horse?  I was not injuring your horse. 11.  Whom does a good slave obey?  A good slave obeys his master. 12.  Our men were eager for another battle.

    [Footnote 3:  Remember that *quis\, \_who\_, is singular in number.]*

    [Footnote 4:  Express by *ego\, because it is emphatic.]*

**LESSON XXVI**

**VERBS IN \_-IO:\_ OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION :  THE IMPERATIVE MOOD**

*159.* There are a few common verbs ending in -io:  which do not belong to the fourth conjugation, as you might infer, but to the third.  The fact that they belong to the third conjugation is shown by the ending of the infinitive. (Cf.  Sec. 126.) Compare

  audio:, audi:’re (*hear*), fourth conjugation  
  capio:, ca’pere (*take*), third conjugation

*160.* The present, imperfect, and future active indicative of *capio:\ are inflected as follows:*

  capio:, capere, *take*  
  PRES.  STEM cape-

**Page 50**

     PRESENT IMPERFECT FUTURE  
     SINGULAR  
  1. ca’pio:  capie:’bam ca’piam  
  2. ca’pis capie:’ba:s ca’pie:s  
  3. ca’pit capie:’bat ca’piet

PLURAL
1. ca’pimus capie:ba:’mus capie:’mus
2. ca’pitis capie:ba:’tis capie:’tis
3. ca’piunt capie:’bant ca’pient
1.  Observe that *capio:\ and the other -io:  verbs follow the fourth conjugation wherever in the fourth conjugation \_two vowels occur in succession.\_ (Cf. capio:, audio:; capiunt, audiunt; and all the imperfect and future.) All other forms are like the third conjugation.  (Cf. capis, regis; capit, regit; etc.)*

  2.  Like capio\, inflect

facio, facere, *make, do* fugio, fugere, *flee* iacio, iacere, *hurl* rapio, rapere, *seize*

*161.* The Imperative Mood.  The imperative mood expresses a command; as, *come!* *send!* The present tense of the imperative is used only in the second person, singular and plural. *The singular in the active voice is regularly the same in form as the present stem.  The plural is formed by adding -te to the singular.*

CONJUGATION SINGULAR PLURAL
I. ama:, *love thou* ama:’te, *love ye*
II. mone:, *advise thou* mone:’te, *advise ye*
III. (*a*) rege, *rule thou* re’gite, *rule ye*
(*b*) cape, *take thou* ca’pite, *take ye*
IV. audi:, *hear thou* audi:’te, *hear ye*
sum (irregular) es, *be thou* este, *be ye*

  1.  In the third conjugation the final -e- of the stem becomes -i- in  
  the plural.

  2.  The verbs *di:co:\, \_say\_;* du:co:\, *lead*; and *facio:\, \_make\_,  
  have the irregular forms* di:c\, *du:c\, and* fac\ in the singular.

  3.  Give the present active imperative, singular and plural, of  
  *venio\,* duco\, *voco\,* doceo\, *laudo\,* dico\, *sedeo\,* ago\,  
  *facio\,* munio\, *mitto\,* rapio\.

*162.* EXERCISES

I. 1.  Fugient, faciunt, iaciebat. 2.  Dele, nuntiate, fugiunt. 3.  Venite, dic, facietis. 4.  Ducite, iaciam, fugiebant. 5.  Fac, iaciebamus, fugimus, rapite. 6.  Sedete, reperi, docete. 7.  Fugiemus, iacient, rapies. 8.  Reperient, rapiebatis, nocent. 9.  Favete, resiste, parebitis.

10.  Vola ad multas terras et da auxilium. 11.  Ego tela mea capiam et multas feras delebo. 12.  Quis fabulae tuae credet? 13.  Este boni, pueri, et audite verba grata magistri.

II. 1.  The goddess will seize her arms and will hurl her weapons. 2.  With her weapons she will destroy many beasts. 3.  She will give aid to the weak.[1] 4.  She will fly to many lands and the beasts will flee. 5.  Romans, tell[2] the famous story to your children.

**Page 51**

    [Footnote 1:  Plural.  An adjective used as a noun. (Cf.   
    Sec. 99.II.3.)]

    [Footnote 2:  Imperative.  The imperative generally stands first, as  
    in English.]

\* \* \* \* \*

  Third Review, Lessons XVIII-XXVI, Secs. 510-512

\* \* \* \* \*

**LESSON XXVII**

THE PASSIVE VOICE  
PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF *AMO:* AND *MONEO:*

  [Special Vocabulary]

  NOUNS  
  *a:la, -ae\, f., \_wing\_*deus, -i:\, m., *god* (deity)[A]  
  *monstrum, -i:\, n., \_omen, prodigy; monster\_  
   o:ra:culum, -i:, n., \_oracle\_*

  VERB  
  *va:sto:, -a:re\, \_lay waste, devastate\_*

ADJECTIVES *commo:tus, -a, -um\, \_moved, excited\_* maximus, -a, -um\, *greatest* (maximum) *saevus, -a, -um\, \_fierce, savage\_*

  ADVERBS  
  ita\, *thus, in this way, as follows*  
  *tum\, \_then, at that time\_*

    [Footnote A:  For the declension of *deus\, see Sec. 468]*

*163.* The Voices.  Thus far the verb forms have been in the *active voice*; that is, they have represented the subject as *performing* an action; as,

  The lion —–­> *killed* —–­> the hunter

A verb is said to be in the *passive voice* when it represents its subject as *receiving* an action; as,

  The lion <—–­ *was killed* <—–­ by the hunter

Note the direction of the arrows.

*164.* Passive Personal Endings.  In the passive voice we use a different set of personal endings.  They are as follows:

      SINGULAR PLURAL  
   1. -r, *I* 1. -mur, *we*  
   2. -ris, -re, *you* 2. -mini:, *you*  
   3. -tur, *he, she, it* 3. -ntur, *they*

*a.* Observe that the letter -r appears somewhere in all but one  
    of the endings.  This is sometimes called the *passive sign*.

*165.* PARADIGMS

amo, ama:re mone:o, mone:re
PRES. STEM ama:- PRES. STEM mone:-

  PRESENT INDICATIVE PERSONAL  
            
                                                     ENDINGS  
  SINGULAR  
  a’mor, *I am loved* mo’neor, *I am advised* -or[1]  
  ama:’ris or ama:’re, mone:’ris or mone:’re. -ris  
    *you are loved* *you are advised* or -re  
  ama:’tur, *he is loved* mone:’tur, *he is advised* -tur

PLURAL ama:’mur, *we are loved* mone:’mur, *we are advised* -mur ama:’mini:, *you are loved* mone:’mini:, *you are advised* -mini aman’tur, *they are loved* monen’tur, *they are advised* -ntur

    [Footnote 1:  In the present the personal ending of the first person  
    singular is -or.]

**Page 52**

  IMPERFECT INDICATIVE (TENSE SIGN -ba:-)

SINGULAR
ama:’bar, mone:’bar, -r
*I was being loved* *I was being advised*
ama:ba:’ris or ama:ba:’re, mone:ba:’ris or mone:ba:’re -ris
*you were being loved* *you were being advised* or -re
ama:ba:’tur, mone:ba:’tur, -tur
*he was being loved* *he was being advised*
PLURAL
ama:ba:’mur, mone:ba:’mur, -mur
*we were being loved* *we were being advised*
ama:ba:’mini:, mone:ba:’mini:, -mini:
*you were being loved* *you were being advised*
ama:ban’tur, mone:ban’tur, -ntur
*they were being loved* *they were being advised*

  FUTURE (TENSE SIGN -bi-)

SINGULAR
ama:’bor, mone:’bor, -r
*I shall be loved* *I shall be advised*
ama:’beris, *or* ama:’bere mone:’beris *or* mone:’bere, -ris
*you will be loved* *you will be advised* or -re
ama:’bitur, mone:’bitur, -tur
*he will be loved* *he will be advised*
PLURAL
ama:’bimur, mone:’bimur, -mur
*we shall be loved* *we shall be advised*
ama:bi’mini:, mone:bi’mini:, -mini:
*you will be loved* *you will be advised*
ama:bun’tur, mone:bun’tur, -ntur
*they will be loved* *they will be advised*

  1.  The tense sign and the personal endings are added as in the active.

  2.  In the future the tense sign -bi- appears as -bo- in the first  
  person, -be- in the second, singular number, and as -bu- in the  
  third person plural.

  3.  Inflect *laudo\,* neco\, *porto\,* moveo\, *deleo\,* iubeo\, in the  
  present, imperfect, and future indicative, active and passive.

*166.* Intransitive verbs, such as *maturo\, \_I hasten\_;* habito\, *I dwell*, do not have a passive voice with a personal subject.

*167.* EXERCISES

I. 1.  Laudaris *or* laudare, laudas, datur, dat. 2.  Dabitur, dabit, videmini, videtis. 3.  Vocabat, vocabatur, delebitis, delebimini. 4.  Parabatur, parabat, curas, curaris *or* curare. 5.  Portabantur, portabant, videbimur, videbimus. 6.  Iuberis *or* iubere, iubes, laudabaris *or* laudabare, laudabas. 7.  Moveberis or movebere, movebis, dabantur, dabant. 8.  Delentur, delent, parabamur, parabamus.

II. 1.  We prepare, we are prepared, I shall be called, I shall call, you were carrying, you were being carried. 2.  I see, I am seen, it was being announced, he was announcing, they will order, they will be ordered. 3.  You will be killed, you will kill, you move, you are moved, we are praising, we are being praised. 4.  I am called, I call, you will have, you are cared for. 5.  They are seen, they see, we were teaching, we were being taught, they will move, they will be moved.

**Page 53**

  [Illustration:  PERSEUS ANDROMEDAM SERVAT]

*168.* PER’SEUS AND ANDROM’EDA

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 288.

Perseus filius erat Iovis,[2] maximi[3] deorum.  De eo multas fabulas narrant poetae.  Ei favent dei, ei magica arma et alas dant.  Eis telis armatus et alis fretus ad multas terras volabat et monstra saeva delebat et miseris infirmisque auxilium dabat.

Aethiopia est terra Africae.  Eam terram Cepheus[4] regebat.  Ei[5] Neptunus, maximus aquarum deus, erat iratus et mittit[6] monstrum saevum ad Aethiopiam.  Ibi monstrum non solum latis pulchrisque Aethiopiae agris nocebat sed etiam domicilia agricolarum delebat, et multos viros, feminas, liberosque necabat.  Populus ex agris fugiebat et oppida muris validis muniebat.  Tum Cepheus magna tristitia commotus ad Iovis oraculum properat et ita dicit:  “Amici mei necantur; agri mei vastantur.  Audi verba mea, Iuppiter.  Da miseris auxilium.  Age monstrum saevum ex patria.”

    [Footnote 2:  *Iovis\, the genitive of* Iuppiter\.]

    [Footnote 3:  Used substantively, *the greatest*.  So below, l. 4,  
    *miseris\ and* infirmis\ are used substantively.]

    [Footnote 4:  Pronounce in two syllables, *Ce’pheus*.]

    [Footnote 5:  *Ei\, \_at him\_, dative with* iratus\.]

    [Footnote 6:  The present is often used, as in English, in speaking  
    of a past action, in order to make the story more vivid and  
    exciting.]

**LESSON XXVIII**

PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE  
  OF *REGO:* AND *AUDIO:*

  [Special Vocabulary]

  VERBS  
  *respondeo:, -e:re\, \_respond, reply\_*servo:, -a:re\, *save, preserve*

  ADJECTIVE  
  *ca:rus, -a, -um\, \_dear\_ (cherish)*

  CONJUNCTION  
  *autem\, \_but, moreover, now\_.  Usually stands second, never first*

  NOUN  
  *vi:ta, -ae\, f., \_life\_ (vital)*

*169.* Review the present, imperfect, and future indicative active of *rego\ and* audio\, and learn the passive of the same tenses (Secs. 490, 491).

*a.* Observe that the tense signs of the imperfect and future are  
    the same as in the active voice, and that the passive personal  
    endings (Sec. 164) are added instead of the active ones.

*b.* Note the slight irregularity in the second person singular present of the third conjugation.  There the final -e- of the stem is not changed to -i-, as it is in the active.  We therefore have *re’geris\ or* re’gere\, *not* *re’giris\,* re’gire\.

*c.* Inflect *ago\,* dico\, *duco\,* munio\, *reperio\, in the  
    present, imperfect, and future indicative, active and passive.*

*170.* EXERCISES

**Page 54**

I. 1.  Agebat, agebatur, mittebat, mittebatur, ducebat. 2.  Agunt, aguntur, mittuntur, mittunt, muniunt. 3.  Mittor, mittar, mittam, ducere, ducere. 4.  Dicemur, dicimus, dicemus, dicimur, muniebamini. 5.  Ducitur, ducimini, reperimur, reperiar, agitur. 6.  Agebamus, agebamur, reperiris, reperiemini. 7.  Munimini, veniebam, ducebar, dicetur. 8.  Mittimini, mittitis, mitteris, mitteris, agebamini. 9.  Dicitur, dicit, muniuntur, reperient, audientur.

II. 1.  I was being driven, I was driving, we were leading, we were being led, he says, it is said. 2.  I shall send, I shall be sent, you will find, you will be found, they lead, they are led. 3.  I am found, we are led, they are driven, you were being led (*sing. and plur.*). 4.  We shall drive, we shall be driven, he leads, he is being led, they will come, they will be fortified. 5.  They were ruling, they were being ruled, you will send, you will be sent, you are sent, (*sing. and plur.*). 6.  He was being led, he will come, you are said (*sing. and plur.*).

*171.* PERSEUS AND ANDROMEDA (*Continued*)

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 288.

Tum oraculum ita respondet:  “Mala est fortuna tua.  Neptunus, magnus aquarum deus, terrae Aethiopiae inimicus, eas poenas mittit.  Sed para irato deo sacrum idoneum et monstrum saevum ex patria tua agetur.  Andromeda filia tua est monstro grata.  Da eam monstro.  Serva caram patriam et vitam populi tui.”  Andromeda autem erat puella pulchra.  Eam amabat Cepheus maxime.

**LESSON XXIX**

PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF \_-IO:\_ VERBS PRESENT PASSIVE INFINITIVE AND IMPERATIVE

  [Special Vocabulary]

  VERB  
  *supero:, -a:re\, \_conquer, overcome\_ (insuperable)*

  NOUNS  
  *cu:ra, -ae\, f., \_care, trouble\_*locus, -i:\, m., *place, spot* (location). *Locus\ is neuter in the  
    plural and is declined* loca, -o:rum\, *etc*.  
  *peri:culum, -i:\, n., \_danger, peril\_*

  ADVERBS  
  *semper\, \_always\_*tamen\, *yet, nevertheless*

  PREPOSITIONS  
  *de:\, with abl., \_down from; concerning\_*per\, with acc., *through*

  CONJUNCTION  
  *si\, \_if\_*

*172.* Review the active voice of *capio\, present, imperfect, and future, and learn the passive of the same tenses (Sec. 492).*

*a.* The present forms *capior\ and* capiuntur\ are like *audior,  
    audiuntur\, and the rest of the tense is like* regor\.

*b.* In like manner inflect the passive of *iacio\ and* rapio\.

*173.* The Infinitive.  The infinitive mood gives the general meaning of the verb without person or number; as, *ama:re\, \_to love\_.  Infinitive means \_unlimited\_.  The forms of the other moods, being limited by person and number, are called the \_finite\_, or limited, verb forms.*

**Page 55**

*174.* The forms of the Present Infinitive, active and passive, are as follows:

CONJ. PRES. PRES. INFINITIVE PRES. INFINITIVE
STEM ACTIVE PASSIVE
I. ama:- ama:’re, ama:’ri:,
*to love* *to be loved*
II. mone:- mone:’re, mone:’ri:,
*to advise* *to be advised*
III. rege- re’gere, re’gi:,
*to rule* *to be ruled*
cape- ca’pere ca’pi:,
*to take* *to be taken*
IV. audi:- audi:’re, audi:ri:,
*to hear* *to be heard*

1.  Observe that to form the present active infinitive we add -re to  
the present stem.

*a.* The present infinitive of *sum\ is* esse\.  There is no passive.

2.  Observe that the present passive infinitive is formed from the  
active by changing final -e to -i:, except in the third  
conjugation, which changes final -ere to -i:.

3.  Give the active and passive present infinitives of *doceo\,*  
sedeo\, *volo\,* curo\, *mitto\,* duco\, *munio\,* reperio\, *iacio\,*  
rapio\.

*175.* The forms of the Present Imperative, active and passive, are as follows:

ACTIVE[1] PASSIVE  
CONJ.  SINGULAR PLURAL SINGULAR PLURAL  
I. a’ma:  ama:’te ama:’re, ama:’mini:, *be thou loved* *be ye loved*  
II. mo’ne:  mone:’te mone:’re, mone:’mini:, *be thou advised* *be ye advised*  
III. re’ge re’gite re’gere, regi’mini:, *be thou ruled* *be ye ruled*  
ca’pe ca’pite ca’pere, capi’mini:, *be thou taken* *be ye taken*  
IV. au’di:  audi:’te audi:’re, audi:’mini:, *be thou heard* *be ye heard*

1.  Observe that the second person singular of the present passive imperative is like the present active infinitive, and that both singular and plural are like the second person singular[2] and plural, respectively, of the present passive indicative.

2.  Give the present imperative, both active and passive, of the verbs  
in Sec. 174.3.

    [Footnote 1:  For the sake of comparison the active is repeated from  
    Sec. 161.]

    [Footnote 2:  That is, using the personal ending -re.  A form like  
    *ama:re\ may be either \_indicative\_, \_infinitive\_, or \_imperative\_.]*

*176.* EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 289.

I. 1.  Tum Perseus alis ad terras multas volabit. 2.  Monstrum saevum per aquas properat et mox agros nostros vastabit. 3.  Si autem Cepheus ad oraculum properabit, oraculum ita respondebit. 4.  Quis telis Persei superabitur?  Multa monstra telis eius superabuntur. 5.  Cum curis magnis et lacrimis multis agricolae ex domiciliis caris aguntur. 6.  Multa loca vastabantur et multa oppida delebantur. 7.  Monstrum est validum, tamen superabitur. 8.  Credesne semper verbis oraculi?  Ego iis non semper credam. 9.  Parebitne Cepheus oraculo?  Verba oraculi ei persuadebunt. 10.  Si non fugiemus, oppidum capietur et oppidani necabuntur. 11.  Vocate pueros et narrate fabulam claram de monstro saevo.

**Page 56**

II. 1.  Fly thou, to be cared for, be ye sent, lead thou. 2.  To lead, to be led, be ye seized, fortify thou. 3.  To be hurled, to fly, send thou, to be found. 4.  To be sent, be ye led, to hurl, to be taken. 5.  Find thou, hear ye, be ye ruled, to be fortified.

**LESSON XXX**

SYNOPSES IN THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS :  THE ABLATIVE DENOTING *FROM*

  [Special Vocabulary]

  VERBS  
  *absum, abesse\, irreg., \_be away, be absent, be distant\_, with  
    separative abl.*adpropinquo:, -a:re\, *draw near, approach* (propinquity), with  
    dative[A]  
  *contineo:, -e:re\, \_hold together, hem in, keep\_ (contain)*disce:do:, -ere\, *depart, go away, leave*, with separative abl.  
  *egeo:, -e:re\, \_lack, need, be without\_, with separative abl.*interficio:, -ere\, *kill*  
  *prohibeo:, -e:re\, \_restrain, keep from\_ (prohibit)*vulnero:, -a:re\, *wound* (vulnerable)

  NOUNS  
  *pro:vincia, -ae\, f., \_province\_*vi:num, -i:\, n., *wine*

  ADJECTIVE  
  *de:fessus, -a, -um\, \_weary, worn out\_*

  ADVERB  
  *longe:\, \_far, by far, far away\_*

[Footnote A:  This verb governs the dative because the idea of *nearness to* is stronger than that of *motion to*.  If the latter idea were the stronger, the word would be used with *ad\ and the accusative.]*

\_177.\_ You should learn to give rapidly synopses of the verbs you have had, as follows:[1]

CONJUGATION I CONJUGATION II  
INDICATIVE  
ACTIVE PASSIVE ACTIVE PASSIVE *Pres.* a’mo:  a’mor mo’neo:  mo’neor *Imperf.* ama:’bam ama:’bar mone:’bam mone:’bar *Fut.* ama:’bo ama:’bor mone:’bo mone:’bor

[Footnote 1:  Synopses should be given not only in the first person,  
but in other persons as well, particularly in the third singular and  
plural.]

CONJUGATION I CONJUGATION II  
IMPERATIVE  
ACTIVE PASSIVE ACTIVE PASSIVE *Pres.* a’ma:  ama:’re mo’ne:  mone:’re

INFINITIVE *Pres.* ama:’re ama:’ri:  mone:’re mone:’ri:

CONJUGATION III CONJUGATION III (-io:  verbs)  
INDICATIVE  
ACTIVE PASSIVE ACTIVE PASSIVE *Pres.* re’go:  re’gor ca’pio:  ca’pior *Imperf.* rege:’bam rege:’bar capie:’bam capie:’bar *Fut.* re’gam re’gar ca’piam ca’piar

IMPERATIVE *Pres.* re’ge re’gere ca’pe ca’pere

INFINITIVE *Pres.* re’gere re’gi:  ca’pere ca’pi:

CONJUGATION IV  
INDICATIVE  
ACTIVE PASSIVE *Pres.* au’dio:  au’dior *Imperf.* audie:’bam audie:’bar *Fut.* au’diam au’diar

**Page 57**

IMPERATIVE *Pres.* au’di:  audi:’re

INFINITIVE *Pres.* audi:’re audi:’ri:

1.  Give the synopsis of *rapio\,* munio\, *reperio\,* doceo\, *video\,*  
dico\, *ago\,* laudo\, *porto\, and vary the person and number.*

*178.* We learned in Sec. 50 that one of the three relations covered by the ablative case is expressed in English by the preposition *from.* This is sometimes called the *separative ablative*, and it has a number of special uses.  You have already grown familiar with the first mentioned below.

*179.* RULE.  Ablative of the Place From. *The place from which is expressed by the ablative with the prepositions /a:\ or /ab\, /de:\, /e:\ or /ex\.*

Agricolae ex agris veniunt, *the farmers come from the fields*

*a.* *a:\ or* ab\ denotes *from near* a place; *e:\ or* ex\, *out  
from* it; and *de\, \_down from\_ it.  This may be represented  
graphically as follows:*

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_
| |
*a:\ or* ab\ | | *e:\ or* ex\
/\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_| \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\
\ | Place | /
|\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_|
|
| *de\
|
V*

\_180.\_ RULE.  Ablative of Separation. \_Words expressing separation or deprivation require an ablative to complete their meaning.\_

*a.* If the separation is *actual* and *literal* of one material thing from another, the preposition *a:\ or* ab\, *e:\ or* ex\, or *de\ is generally used.  If no actual motion takes place of one thing from another, no preposition is necessary.*

      (a) Perseus terram a monstris liberat  
        \_Perseus frees the land from monsters\_  
          (literal separation—­actual motion is expressed)  
      (b) Perseus terram tristitia liberat  
        \_Perseus frees the land from sorrow\_  
          (figurative separation—­no actual motion is expressed)

*181.* RULE.  Ablative of the Personal Agent. *The word expressing the person from whom an action starts, when not the subject, is put in the ablative with the preposition /a:\ or /ab\.*

*a.* In this construction the English translation of *a:\,* ab\ is *by* rather than *from*.  This ablative is regularly used with passive verbs to indicate the *person by whom* the act was performed.

      Monstrum a Perseo necatur, *the monster is being slain by*  
        (lit. *from*) *Perseus*

*b.* Note that the active form of the above sentence would be *Perseus monstrum necat\, \_Perseus is slaying the monster\_.  In the passive the \_object\_ of the active verb becomes the \_subject\_, and the \_subject\_ of the active verb becomes the \_ablative of the personal agent\_, with* a:\ or *ab\.*\_c.\_ Distinguish carefully between the

**Page 58**

ablative of means and the ablative of the personal agent.  Both are often translated into English by the preposition \_by\_. (Cf.  Sec. 100. \_b.\_) \_Means is a thing\; the agent or actor is a *person\\_.  The ablative of means has no preposition.  The ablative of the personal agent has* a:\ or *ab\.  Compare*

      Fera sagitta necatur, \_the wild beast is killed by an arrow\_  
      Fera a Diana necatur, \_the wild beast is killed by Diana\_

*Sagitta\, in the first sentence, is the ablative of means;*a Diana\, in the second, is the ablative of the personal agent.

*182.* EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 289.

I. 1.  Viri inopia cibi defessi ab eo loco discedent. 2.  Gerinani castris Romanis adpropinquabant, tamen legatus copias a proelio continebat. 3.  Multa Gallorum oppida ab Romanis capientur. 4.  Tum Romani totum populum eorum oppidorum gladiis pilisque interficient. 5.  Oppidani Romanis resistent, sed defessi longo proelio fugient. 6.  Multi ex Gallia fugiebant et in Germanorum vicis habitabant. 7.  Miseri nautae vulnerantur ab inimicis[2] saevis et cibo egent. 8.  Discedite et date viris frumentum et copiam vini. 9.  Copiae nostrae a proelio continebantur ab Sexto legato. 10.  Id oppidum ab provincia Romana longe aberat.

II. 1.  The weary sailors were approaching a place dear to the goddess Diana. 2.  They were without food and without wine. 3.  Then Galba and seven other men are sent to the ancient island by Sextus. 4.  Already they are not far away from the land, and they see armed men on a high place. 5.  They are kept from the land by the men with spears and arrows. 6.  The men kept hurling their weapons down from the high place with great eagerness.

    [Footnote 2:  *inimicis\, here used as a noun.  See vocabulary.]*

**LESSON XXXI**

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT OF *SUM*

  [Special Vocabulary]

  NOUNS  
   aurum, -i:, n., *gold* (oriole)  
  *mora, -ae\, f., \_delay\_*na:vigium, na:vi’gi:\, n., *boat, ship*  
  *ventus, -i:\, m., \_wind\_ (ventilate)*

  VERB  
  *na:vigo:, -a:re\, \_sail\_ (navigate)*

  ADJECTIVES  
   attentus, -a, -um, *attentive, careful*  
  *dubius, -a, -um\, \_doubtful\_ (dubious)  
   perfidus, -a, -um, \_faithless, treacherous\_ (perfidy)*

  ADVERB  
  *antea:\, \_before, previously\_*

  PREPOSITION  
  *sine\, with abl., \_without\_*

*183.* Principal Parts.  There are certain parts of the verb that are of so much consequence in tense formation that we call them the *principal parts.*

The principal parts of the Latin verb are the present, the past, and the past participle; as *go, went, gone*; *see, saw, seen*, *etc*.

**Page 59**

The principal parts of the Latin verb are the *first person singular of the present indicative*, the *present infinitive*, the *first person singular of the perfect indicative*, and *the perfect passive participle.*

*184.* Conjugation Stems.  From the principal parts we get three conjugation stems, from which are formed the entire conjugation.  We have already learned about the *present stem\, which is found from the present infinitive (cf.  Sec. 126.a).  The other two stems are the* perfect stem\ and the *participial stem\.*

*185.* The Perfect Stem.  The perfect stem of the verb is formed in various ways, but may always be *found by dropping -i:  from the first person singular of the perfect*, the third of the principal parts.  From the perfect stem are formed the following tenses:

  THE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE  
  THE PLUPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE (ENGLISH PAST PERFECT)  
  THE FUTURE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

All these tenses express completed action in present, past, or future time respectively.

*186.* The Endings of the Perfect.  The perfect active indicative is inflected by adding the endings of the perfect to the perfect stem.  These endings are different from those found in any other tense, and are as follows:

     SINGULAR PLURAL  
  1. -i:, *I* 1. -imus, *we*  
  2. -isti:, *you* 2. -istis, *you*  
  3. -it, *he, she, it* 3. -e:runt or -e:re, *they*

*187.* Inflection of *sum\ in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative:*

               PRES.  INDIC.  PRES.  INFIN.  PERF.  INDIC.   
  PRIN.  PARTS sum esse fui:

PERFECT STEM fu-

    PERFECT  
  SINGULAR PLURAL  
  fu’i:, *I have been, I was* fu’imus, *we have been, we were*  
  fuis’ti:, fuis’tis, *you have been, you were*  
    *you have been, you were*  
  fu’it, *he has been, he was* fue:’runt *or* fue:’re,  
                                   *they have been, they were*

PLUPERFECT (TENSE SIGN -era:-)
fu’eram, *I had been* fuera:’mus, *we had been*
fu’era:s, *you had been* fuera:’tis, *you had been*
fu’erat, *he had been* fu’erant, *they had been*

    FUTURE PERFECT (TENSE SIGN -eri-)  
  fu’ero:, *I shall have been* fue’rimus, *we shall have been*  
  fu’eris, *you will have been* fue’ritis, *you will have been*  
  fu’erit, *he will have been* fu’erint, *they will have been*

  1.  Note carefully the changing accent in the perfect.

  2.  Observe that the pluperfect may be formed by adding *eram\, the  
  imperfect of* sum\, to the perfect stem.  The tense sign is -era:-.

**Page 60**

  3.  Observe that the future perfect may be formed by adding *ero\, the  
  future of* sum\, to the perfect stem.  But the third person plural ends  
  in -erint, not in -erunt.  The tense sign is -eri-.

  4.  All active perfects, pluperfects, and future perfects are formed on  
  the perfect stem and inflected in the same way.

*188.* DIALOGUE

**THE BOYS TITUS, MARCUS, AND QUINTUS**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 289.

  M. Ubi fuistis, Tite et Quinte?   
  T. Ego in meo ludo fui et Quintus in suo ludo fuit.  Boni pueri fuimus.   
    Fuitne Sextus in vico hodie?   
  M. Fuit.  Nuper per agros proximos fluvio properabat.  Ibi is et  
    Cornelius habent navigium.   
  T. *Navigium* dicis?  Alii[1] narra eam fabulam!   
  M. Vero (*Yes, truly*), pulchrum et novum navigium!   
  Q. Cuius pecunia[2] Sextus et Cornelius id navigium parant?  Quis iis  
    pecuniam dat?   
  M. Amici Corneli multum habent aurum et puer pecunia non eget.   
  T. Quo pueri navigabunt?  Navigabuntne longe a terra?   
  M. Dubia sunt consilia eorum.  Sed hodie, credo, si ventus erit  
    idoneus, ad maximam insulam navigabunt.  Iam antea ibi fuerunt.   
    Tum autem ventus erat perfidus et pueri magno in periculo erant.   
  Q. Aqua vento commota est inimica nautis semper, et saepe perfidus  
    ventus navigia rapit, agit, deletque.  Ii pueri, si non fuerint  
    maxime attenti, irata aqua et valido vento superabuntur et ita  
    interficientur.

    [Footnote 1:  Dative case. (Cf.  Sec. 109.)]

    [Footnote 2:  Ablative of means.]

*189.* EXERCISE

1.  Where had the boys been before?  They had been in school. 2.  Where had Sextus been?  He had been in a field next to the river. 3.  Who has been with Sextus to-day?  Cornelius has been with him. 4.  Who says so?  Marcus. 5.  If the wind has been suitable, the boys have been in the boat. 6.  Soon we shall sail with the boys. 7.  There[3] will be no danger, if we are (shall have been) careful.[4]

    [Footnote 3:  The expletive *there* is not expressed, but the verb  
    will precede the subject, as in English.]

    [Footnote 4:  This predicate adjective must be nominative plural to  
    agree with *we*.]

**LESSON XXXII**

**THE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS**

  [Special Vocabulary]

NOUNS *animus, -i:\, m., \_mind, heart; spirit, feeling\_ (animate)* bracchium, bracchi:\, n., *forearm, arm* *porta, -ae\, f., \_gate\_ (portal)*

  ADJECTIVES  
  adversus, -a, -um\, *opposite; adverse, contrary*  
  *ple:nus, -a, -um\, \_full\_ (plenty)*

  PREPOSITION  
  *pro:\, with abl., \_before; in behalf of; instead of\_*

**Page 61**

  ADVERB  
  *diu:\, \_for a long time, long\_*

*190.* Meanings of the Perfect.  The perfect tense has two distinct meanings.  The first of these is equivalent to the English present perfect, or perfect with *have*, and denotes that the action of the verb is complete at the time of speaking; as, *I have finished my work*.  As this denotes completed action at a definite time, it is called the *perfect definite\.*

The perfect is also used to denote an action that happened *sometime in the past*; as, *I finished my work.* As no definite time is specified, this is called the *perfect indefinite\.  It corresponds to the ordinary use of the English past tense.*

*a.* Note carefully the difference between the following tenses:

*I {was finishing } my work* (imperfect, Sec. 134)
{used to finish}
*I finished my work* (perfect indefinite)
*I have finished my work* (perfect definite)

When telling a story the Latin uses the *perfect indefinite* to mark the different *forward steps* of the narrative, and the *imperfect* to *describe situations and circumstances* that attend these steps.  If the following sentences were Latin, what tenses would be used?

“Last week I went to Boston.  I was trying to find an old friend of  
mine, but he was out of the city.  Yesterday I returned home.”

*191.* Inflection of the Perfect.  We learned in Sec. 186 that any perfect is inflected by adding the endings of the perfect to the perfect stem.  The inflection in the four regular conjugations is then as follows:

CONJ. I ama:vi: *I have loved*, *I loved* or *did love*
CONJ. II monui: *I have advised*, *I advised* or *did advise*
CONJ. III re:xi: *I have ruled*, *I ruled* or *did rule*
ce:pi: *I have taken*, *I took* or *did take*
CONJ. IV audi:vi: *I have heard*, *I heard* or *did hear*

PERFECT STEMS  
ama:v- monu- re:x- ce:p- audi:v-

   SINGULAR  
  
1. ama:’vi:  mo’nui:  re:’xi:  ce:’pi:  audi:’vi:   
2. ama:vis’ti:  monuis’ti:  re:xis’ti:  ce:pis’ti:  audi:vis’ti:   
3. ama:’vit mo’nuit re:’xit ce:’pit audi:’vit

     PLURAL  
  1. ama:’vimus monu’imus re:’ximus ce:’pimus audi:’vimus  
  2. ama:vis’tis monuis’tis re:xis’tis ce:pis’tis audi:vis’tis  
  3. ama:ve:’runt monue:’runt re:xe:’runt ce:pe:’runt audi:ve:’runt  
       *or* *or* *or* *or* *or*  
     ama:ve:’re monue:’re re:xe:’re ce:pe:’re audi:ve:’re

  1.  The first person of the perfect is always given as the third of the  
  principal parts.  From this we get the perfect stem. *This shows the  
  absolute necessity of learning the principal parts thoroughly.*

**Page 62**

  2.  Nearly all perfects of the first conjugation are formed by adding  
  -vi:  to the present stem.  Like *amavi\ inflect* paravi\, *vocavi\,*curavi\, *laudavi\.*

  3.  Note carefully the changing accent in the perfect.  Drill on it.

*192.* Learn the principal parts and inflect the perfects:

PRES.  INDIC.  PRES.  INFIN.  PERF.  INDIC. do:  dare dedi:  *give* de:leo:  de:le:re de:le:vi:  *destroy* habeo:  habe:re habui:  *have* moveo:  move:re mo:vi:  *move* pa:reo:  pa:re:re pa:rui:  *obey* prohibeo:  prohibe:re prohi:bui:  *restrain, keep from* video:  vide:re vi:di:  *see* di:co:  di:cere di:xi:  *say* disce:do:  disce:dere discessi:  *depart* du:co:  du:cere du:xi:  *lead* facio:  facere fe:ci:  *make, do* mitto:  mittere mi:si:  *send* mu:nio:  mu:ni:re mu:ni:vi:  *fortify* venio:  veni:re ve:ni:  *come*

*193.* PERSEUS AND ANDROMEDA (*Continued*)

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 290.

Cepheus, adversa fortuna maxime commotus, discessit et multis cum lacrimis populo Aethiopiae verba oraculi narravit.  Fata Andromedae, puellae pulchrae, a toto populo deplorabantur, tamen nullum erat auxilium.  Deinde Cepheus cum pleno tristitiae animo caram suam filiam ex oppidi porta ad aquam duxit et bracchia eius ad saxa dura revinxit.  Tum amici puellae miserae longe discesserunt et diu monstrum saevum exspectaverunt.

Tum forte Perseus, alis fretus, super Aethiopiam volabat.  Vidit populum, Andromedam, lacrimas, et, magnopere attonitus, ad terram descendit.  Tum Cepheus ei totas curas narravit et ita dixit:  “Parebo verbis oraculi, et pro patria filiam meam dabo; sed si id monstrum interficies et Andromedam servabis, tibi (*to you*) eam dabo.”

**LESSON XXXIII**

PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE  
PERFECT ACTIVE INFINITIVE

*194.* CONJ.  I CONJ.  II CONJ.  III CONJ.  IV  
                  amo:  moneo:  rego:  capio:  audio:   
  PERFECT STEMS ama:v- monu- re:x- ce:p- audi:v-

PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE  
TENSE SIGN -era:-

SINGULAR  
I had loved I had advised I had ruled I had taken I had heard

1. ama:’veram monu’eram re:’xeram ce:’peram audi:’veram
2. ama:’vera:s monu’era:s re:’xera:s ce:’pera:s audi:’vera:s
3. ama:’verat monu’erat re:’xerat ce:’perat audi:’verat

PLURAL 1. ama:vera:’mus monuera:’mus re:xera:’mus ce:pera:’mus —­era:’mus 2. ama:vera:’tis monuera:’tis re:xera:’tis ce:pera:’tis —­era:’tis 3. ama’verant monu’erant re:’xerant ce:’perant audi:’verant

**Page 63**

  FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE  
  TENSE SIGN -eri-

     SINGULAR  
   I shall have I shall have I shall have I shall have I shall have  
      loved advised ruled taken heard

1. ama:’vero: monu’ero: re:’xero: ce:’pero: audi:’vero:
2. ama:’veris monu’eris re:’xeris ce:’peris audi:’veris
3. ama:’verit monu’erit re:’xerit ce:’perit audi:’verit

     PLURAL  
  1. ama:ve’rimus monue’rimus re:xe’rimus ce:pe’rimus audi:ve’rimus  
  2. ama:ve’ritis monue’ritis re:xe’ritis ce:pe’ritis audi:ve’ritis  
  3. ama:’verint monu’erint re:’xerint ce:’perint audi:’verint

  1.  Observe that these are all inflected alike and the rules for  
  formation given in Sec. 187.2-4 hold good here.

  2.  In like manner inflect the pluperfect and future perfect indicative  
  active of *do\,* porto\, *deleo\,* moveo\, *habeo\,* dico\, *discedo\,*facio\, *venio\,* munio\.

*195.* The Perfect Active Infinitive.  The perfect active infinitive is formed by adding -isse to the perfect stem.

CONJ PERFECT STEM PERFECT INFINITIVE
I. ama:v- ama:vis’se, *to have loved*
II. monu- monuis’se, *to have advised*
III. (*a*) re:x- re:xis’se, *to have ruled*
(*b*) ce:p- ce:pis’se, *to have taken*
IV. audi:v\ audi:vis’se, *to have heard*
sum fu- fuis’se, *to have been*

  1.  In like manner give the perfect infinitive active of *do\,* porto\,  
  *deleo\,* moveo\, *habeo\,* dico\, *discedo\,* facio\, *venio\,*munio\.

*196.* EXERCISES

I. 1.  Habuisti, moverunt, miserant. 2.  Vidit, dixeris, duxisse. 3.  Misistis, paruerunt, discesseramus. 4.  Munivit, dederam, misero. 5.  Habuerimus, delevi, paruit, fuisse. 6.  Dederas, muniveritis, veneratis, misisse. 7.  Veneras, fecisse, dederatis, portaveris.

8.  Quem verba oraculi moverant?  Populum verba oraculi moverant. 9.  Cui Cepheus verba oraculi narraverit?  Perseo Cepheus verba oraculi narraverit. 10.  Amici ab Andromeda discesserint. 11.  Monstrum saevum domicilia multa deleverat. 12.  Ubi monstrum vidistis?  Id in aqua vidimus. 13.  Quid monstrum faciet?  Monstrum Andromedam interficiet.

II. 1.  They have obeyed, we have destroyed, I shall have had. 2.  We shall have sent, I had come, they have fortified. 3.  I had departed, he has obeyed, you have sent (*sing. and plur.*). 4.  To have destroyed, to have seen, he will have given, they have carried. 5.  He had destroyed, he has moved, you have had (*sing. and plur.*). 6.  I have given, you had moved (*sing. and plur.*), we had said. 7.  You will have made (*sing. and plur.*), they will have led, to have given.

8.  Who had seen the monster?  Andromeda had seen it. 9.  Why had the men departed from[1] the towns?  They had departed because the monster had come. 10.  Did Cepheus obey[2] the oracle[3]?  He did.

**Page 64**

    [Footnote 1:  *ex\.  What would* ab\ mean?]

    [Footnote 2:  *Did ... obey*, perfect tense.]

    [Footnote 3:  What case?]

**LESSON XXXIV**

**REVIEW OF THE ACTIVE VOICE**

  [Special Vocabulary]

ADVERBS *celeriter\, \_quickly\_ (celerity)* de:nique\, *finally* *graviter\, \_heavily, severely\_ (gravity)* subito:\, *suddenly*

VERB *reporto:, -a:re, -a:vi:\, \_bring back, restore; win, gain\_ (report)*

*197.* A review of the tenses of the indicative active shows the following formation:

{ PRESENT = First of the principal parts  
TENSES { IMPERFECT = Present stem + -ba-m  
OF THE { FUTURE = Present stem + -bo, Conj.  I and II  
INDICATIVE { -a-m, Conj.  III and IV  
{ PERFECT = Third of the principal parts  
{ PLUPERFECT = Perfect stem + -era-m  
{ FUTURE PERFECT = Perfect stem + -ero

*198.* The synopsis of the active voice of *amo\, as far as we have learned the conjugation, is as follows:*

PRINCIPAL PARTS amo:, ama:re, ama:vi:

PRES.  STEM ama:-

{ *Pres.* amo:
INDIC. { *Imperf.* ama:bam
{ *Fut.* ama:bo:
PRES. IMV. ama:
PRES. INFIN. ama:re

PERF.  STEM ama:v-

{ *Perf.* ama:vi:   
INDIC. { *Pluperf.* ama:veram  
{ *Fut. perf.* ama:vero:   
PERF.  INFIN. ama:visse

1.  Learn to write in the same form and to give rapidly the principal parts and synopsis of *paro\,* do\, *laudo\,* deleo\, *habeo\,* moveo\, *pareo\,* video\, *dico\,* discedo\, *duco\,* mitto\, *capio\,* munio\, *venio\.[1]*

[Footnote 1:  Learn to give synopses rapidly, and not only in the  
first person singular but in any person of either number.]

*199.* Learn the following principal parts:[2]

    PRES.  INDIC.  PRES.  INFIN.  PERF.  INDIC.

IRREGULAR VERBS
sum esse fui: *be*
ab’sum abes’se a:’fui: *be away*
do: dare dedi: *give*
CONJUGATION II
contineo: contine:re continui: *hold in, keep*
doceo: doce:re docui: *teach*
egeo: ege:re egui: *need*
faveo: fave:re fa:vi: *favor*
iubeo: iube:re iussi: *order*
noceo: noce:re nocui: *injure*
persua:deo: persua:de:re persua:si: *persuade*
respondeo: responde:re respondi: *reply*
sedeo: sede:re se:di: *sit*

**Page 65**

studeo: stude:re studui: *be eager*
CONJUGATION III
ago: agere e:gi: *drive*
cre:do: cre:dere cre:didi: *believe*
fugio: fugere fu:gi: *flee*
iacio: iacere ie:ci: *hurl*
interficio: interficere interfe:ci: *kill*
rapio: rapere rapui: *seize*
resis’to: resis’tere re’stiti: *resist*

  CONJUGATION IV  
    repe’rio:  reperi:’re rep’peri:  *find*

    [Footnote 2:  These are all verbs that you have had before, and the  
    perfect is the only new form to be learned.]

*200.* PERSEUS AND ANDROMEDA (*Concluded*)

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 290.  Read the whole story.

Perseus semper proelio studebat[3] et respondit,[3] “Verba tua sunt maxime grata,” et laetus arma sua magica paravit.[3] Subito monstrum videtur; celeriter per aquam properat et Andromedae adpropinquat.  Eius amici longe absunt et misera puella est sola.  Perseus autem sine mora super aquam volavit.[3] Subito descendit[3] et duro gladio saevum monstrum graviter vulneravit.[3] Diu pugnatur,[4] diu proelium est dubium.  Denique autem Perseus monstrum interfecit[3] et victoriam reportavit.[3] Tum ad saxum venit[3] et Andromedam liberavit[3] et eam ad Cepheum duxit.[3] Is, nuper miser, nunc laetus, ita dixit[3]:  “Tuo auxilio, mi amice, cara filia mea est libera; tua est Andromeda.”  Diu Perseus cum Andromeda ibi habitabat[3] et magnopere a toto populo amabatur.[3]

    [Footnote 3:  See if you can explain the use of the perfects and  
    imperfects in this passage.]

[Footnote 4:  The verb pugnatur means, literally, *it is fought*; translate freely, *the battle is fought*, or *the contest rages*.  The verb pugno in Latin is intransitive, and so does not have a personal subject in the passive.  A verb with an indeterminate subject, designated in English by *it*, is called impersonal.]

**LESSON XXXV**

THE PASSIVE PERFECTS OF THE INDICATIVE  
THE PERFECT PASSIVE AND FUTURE ACTIVE INFINITIVE

*201.* The fourth and last of the principal parts (Sec. 183) is the *perfect passive participle\. \_From it we get the participial stem on which are formed the future active infinitive and all the passive perfects.\_*

1.  Learn the following principal parts, which are for the first time  
given in full:

CONJ.  PRES.  INDIC.  PRES.  INFIN.  PERF.  INDIC.  PERF.  PASS.  PART.   
I. amo:  ama:’-re ama:’v-i:  ama:’t-us  
This is the model for all regular verbs of the first conjugation.   
II. mo’neo:  mone:’-re mo’nu-i:  mo’nit-us  
III. rego:  re’ge-re re:x-i:  re:ct-us  
ca’pio:  ca’pe-re ce:p-i:  capt-us  
IV. au’dio:  audi:’-re audi:’v-i:  audi:’t-us

**Page 66**

2.  The base of the participial stem is found by dropping -us from  
the perfect passive participle.

*202.* In English the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect tenses of the indicative passive are made up of forms of the auxiliary verb *to be* and the past participle; as, *I have been loved*, *I had been loved*, *I shall have been loved.*

Very similarly, in Latin, the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive tenses use respectively the present, imperfect, and future of *sum\ as an auxiliary verb with the perfect passive participle, as*

  Perfect passive, *ama’tus sum\, \_I have been\_ or \_was loved\_  
  Pluperfect passive,* ama’tus eram\, *I had been loved*  
  Future perfect passive, *ama’tus ero\, \_I shall have been loved\_*

  1.  In the same way give the synopsis of the corresponding tenses of  
  *moneo\,* rego\, *capio\, and* audio\, and give the English meanings.

*203.* Nature of the Participle.  A participle is partly verb and partly adjective.  As a verb it possesses tense and voice.  As an adjective it is declined and agrees with the word it modifies in gender, number, and case.

*204.* The perfect passive participle is declined like *bonus, bona, bonum\, and in the compound tenses (Sec. 202) it agrees as a predicate adjective with the subject of the verb.*

EXAMPLES IN SINGULAR  
Vir laudatus est, *the man was praised*, or *has been praised*  
Puella laudata est, *the girl was praised*, or *has been praised*  
Consilium laudatum est, *the plan was praised*, or *has been praised*

EXAMPLES IN PLURAL  
Viri laudati sunt, *the men were praised*, or *have been praised*  
Puellae laudatae sunt, *the girls were praised*, or *have been praised*  
Consilia laudata sunt, *the plans were praised*, or *have been praised*

1.  Inflect the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative  
passive of *amo\,* moneo\, *rego\,* capio\, and *audio\ (Secs.  
488-492).*

*205.* The perfect passive infinitive is formed by adding *esse\, the present infinitive of* sum\, to the perfect passive participle; as, ama’t-us (-a, -um) *esse\, \_to have been loved\_; mo’nit-us (-a, -um)* esse\, *to have been advised*.

  1.  Form the perfect passive infinitive of *rego\,* capio\, *audio\,  
  and give the English meanings.*

*206.* The future active infinitive is formed by adding *esse\, the present infinitive of* sum\, to the future active participle.  This participle is made by adding /-urus, -a, -um\ to the base of the participial stem.  Thus the future active infinitive of *amo\ is amat-u’rus (-a, -um)* esse\, *to be about to love*.

*a.* Note that in forming the three tenses of the active infinitive  
    we use all three conjugation stems:

**Page 67**

      Present, amare (present stem), *to love*  
      Perfect, amavisse (perfect stem), *to have loved*  
      Future, amaturus esse (participial stem), *to be about to love*

  1.  Give the three tenses of the active infinitive of *laudo\,* moneo\,  
  *rego\,* capio\, *audio\, with the English meanings.*

*207.* EXERCISES

I. 1.  Fabula Andromedae narrata est. 2.  Multae fabulae a magistro narratae sunt. 3.  Ager ab agricola valido aratus erat. 4.  Agri ab agricolis validis arati erant. 5.  Aurum a servo perfido ad domicilium suum portatum erit. 6.  Nostra arma a legato laudata sunt.  Quis vestra arma laudavit? 7.  Ab ancilla tua ad cenam vocatae sumus. 8.  Andromeda monstro non data est, quia monstrum a Perseo necatum erat.

II. 1.  The provinces were laid waste, the field had been laid waste, the towns will have been laid waste. 2.  The oracles were heard, the oracle was heard, the oracles had been heard. 3.  The oracle will have been heard, the province had been captured, the boats have been captured. 4.  The fields were laid waste, the man was advised, the girls will have been advised. 5.  The towns had been ruled, we shall have been captured, you will have been heard.

**LESSON XXXVI**

**REVIEW OF PRINCIPAL PARTS :  PREPOSITIONS *YES*-OR-*NO* QUESTIONS**

  [Special Vocabulary]

*dexter, dextra, dextrum\, \_right\_ (dextrous)*sinister, sinistra, sinistrum\, *left*  
  *fru:stra:\, adv., \_in vain\_ (frustrate)*

*gero:, gerere, gessi:, gestus\, \_bear, carry on; wear\_;*bellum gerere\, *to wage war*  
  *occupo:, occupa:re, occupa:vi:, occupa:tus\, \_seize, take possession  
    of\_ (occupy)*postulo:, postula:re, postula:vi:, postula:tus\, *demand*  
    (ex-postulate)  
  *recu:so:, recu:sa:re, recu:sa:vi:, recu:sa:tus\, \_refuse\_*sto:, sta:re, steti:, status\, *stand*  
  *tempto:, tempta:re, tempta:vi:, tempta:tus\, \_try, tempt, test;  
    attempt\_*teneo:, tene:re, tenui:, ——­\, *keep, hold* (tenacious)

  The word *ubi\, which we have used so much in the sense of \_where\_ in  
  asking a question, has two other uses equally important:*

  1. *ubi\ = \_when\_, as a relative conjunction denoting time; as,*Ubi monstrum audiverunt, fugerunt\, *when they heard the monster,  
    they fled*

  2. *ubi\ = \_where\_, as a relative conjunction denoting place; as,*Video oppidum ubi Galba habitat\, *I see the town where Galba  
    lives*

**Page 68**

*ubi\ is called a \_relative conjunction\_ because it is equivalent to a relative pronoun. \_When\_ in the first sentence is equivalent to \_at the time* at which\;\_ and in the second, *where* is equivalent to *the place /in which\.*

*208.* The following list shows the principal parts of all the verbs you have had excepting those used in the paradigms.  The parts you have had before are given for review, and the perfect participle is the only new form for you to learn.  Sometimes one or more of the principal parts are lacking, which means that the verb has no forms based on that stem.  A few verbs lack the perfect passive participle but have the future active participle in -u:rus, which appears in the principal parts instead.

  IRREGULAR VERBS

sum esse fui: futu:rus *be*
absum abesse a:fui: a:futu:rus *be away*
do:[1] dare dedi: datus *give*

    [Footnote 1:  *do:\ is best classed with the irregular verbs because  
    of the short* a\ in the present and participial stems.]

  CONJUGATION I

  porto:  porta:re porta:vi:  porta:tus *carry*

  So for all verbs of this conjugation thus far used.

  CONJUGATION II

contineo:  contine:re continui:  contentus *hold in, keep* de:leo:  de:le:re de:le:vi:  de:le:tus *destroy* doceo:  doce:re docui:  doctus *teach* egeo:  ege:re egui:  ——­ *lack* faveo:  fave:re fa:vi:  fautu:rus *favor* iubeo:  iube:re iussi:  iussus *order* moveo:  move:re mo:vi:  mo:tus *move* noceo:  noce:re nocui:  nocitu:rus *injure* pa:reo:  pa:re:re pa:rui:  ——­ *obey* persua:deo:  persua:de:re persua:si:  persua:sus *persuade (from)* prohibeo:  prohibe:re prohibui:  prohibitus *restrain, keep* respondeo:  responde:re respondi:  respo:nsus *reply* sedeo:  sede:re se:di:  -sessus *sit* studeo:  stude:re studui:  ——­ *be eager* video:  vide:re vi:di:  vi:sus *see*

  CONJUGATION III

ago:  agere e:gi:  a:ctus *drive* cre:do:  cre:dere cre:didi:  cre:ditus *believe* di:co:  di:cere di:xi:  dictus *say* disce:do:  disce:dere discessi:  discessus *depart* du:co:  du:cere du:xi:  ductus *lead* facio:[2] facere fe:ci:  factus *make* fugio:  fugere fu:gi:  fugitu:rus *flee* iacio:  iacere ie:ci:  iactus *hurl* interficio:  interficere interfe:ci:  interfectus *kill* mitto:  mittere mi:si:  missus *send* rapio:  rapere rapui:  raptus *seize* resisto:  resistere restiti:  ——­ *resist*

  CONJUGATION IV

**Page 69**

mu:nio: mu:ni:re mu:ni:vi: mu:ni:tus *fortify*
reperio: reperi:re rep’peri: repertus *find*
venio: veni:re ve:ni: ventus *come*

    [Footnote 2:  *facio\ has an irregular passive which will be  
    presented later.]*

*209.* Prepositions.  
  1.  We learned in Secs. 52, 53 that only the *accusative* and the  
  *ablative* are used with prepositions, and that prepositions  
  expressing ablative relations govern the ablative case.  Those we have  
  had are here summarized.  The table following should be learned.

a:  or ab, *from, by* cum, *with* de:, *down from, concerning* e:  or ex, *out from, out of* pro:, *before, in front of; for, in behalf of* sine, *without*

  2.  Prepositions not expressing ablative relations must govern the  
  *accusative* (Sec. 52).  Of these we have had the following:

    ad, *to*;  
    apud, *among*;  
    per, *through*

  There are many others which you will meet as we proceed.

  3.  The preposition *in\ when meaning \_in\_ or \_on\_ governs the  
  \_ablative\_; when meaning \_to, into, against\_ (relations foreign to the  
  ablative)* in\ governs the *accusative*.

*210.* *Yes*-or-*No* Questions.  Questions not introduced by some interrogative word like *who, why, when*, *etc*., but expecting the answer *yes* or *no*, may take one of three forms:

  1. *Is he coming?* (Asking for information.  Implying nothing as to  
       the answer expected.)  
  2. *Is he not coming?* (Expecting the answer *yes*.)  
  3. *He isn’t coming, is he?* (Expecting the answer *no*.)

These three forms are rendered in Latin as follows:

  1.  Venitne? *is he coming?*  
  2.  Nonne venit? *is he not coming?*  
  3.  Num venit? *he isn’t coming, is he?*

*a.* -ne, the question sign, is usually added to the verb, which  
    then stands first.

*b.* We learned in Sec. 56.b that *yes*-or-*no* questions are usually answered by repeating the verb, with or without a negative.  Instead of this, *ita\,* vero\, *certe\, etc. (\_so, truly, certainly\_, etc.) may be used for \_yes\_, and* non\, *minime\, etc. for \_no\_ if the denial is emphatic, as, \_by no means\_, \_not at all\_.*

\_211.\_ EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 290.

I. 1.  Nonne habebat Cornelia ornamenta auri?  Habebat. 2.  Num Sextus legatus scutum in dextro bracchio gerebat?  Non in dextro, sed sinistro in bracchio Sextus scutum gerebat. 3.  Frustra bella multa ab Gallis gesta erant. 4.  Ubi oppidum a perfido Sexto occupatum est, oppidani miseri gladio interfecti sunt. 5.  Id oppidum erat plenum frumenti. 6.  Nonne Sextus ab oppidanis frumentum postulavit?  Vero, sed ii recusaverunt frumentum dare. 7.  Cur oppidum ab Sexto deletum est?  Quia frumentum recusatum est. 8.  Ea victoria non dubia erat. 9.  Oppidani erant defessi et armis egebant. 10.  Num fugam temptaverunt?  Minime.

**Page 70**

II. 1.  Where was Julia standing?  She was standing where you had ordered. 2.  Was Julia wearing any ornaments?  She had many ornaments of gold. 3.  Did she not attempt flight when she saw the danger?  She did. 4.  Who captured her?  Galba captured her without delay and held her by the left arm. 5.  She didn’t have the lady’s gold, did she?  No, the gold had been taken by a faithless maid and has been brought back.

\* \* \* \* \*

  Fourth Review, Lessons XXVII-XXXVI, Secs. 513-516

\* \* \* \* \*

**LESSON XXXVII**

**CONJUGATION OF *POSSUM* :  THE INFINITIVE USED AS IN ENGLISH**

  [Special Vocabulary]

*neque\ or* nec\, conj., *neither*, *nor*, *and ... not*;  
    *neque ... neque\, \_neither ... nor\_*castellum, -i:\, n., *redoubt, fort* (castle)  
  *coti:die:\, adv., \_daily\_  
   cesso:, cessa:re, cessa:vi:, cessa:tus, \_cease\_, with the infin.*

*incipio:, incipere, ince:pi:, inceptus\, \_begin\_ (incipient),  
    with the infin.*oppugno:, oppugna:re, oppugna:vi:, oppugna:tus\, *storm, assail*  
  *peto:, petere, petivi\ or* petii:, peti:tus\, *aim at, assail, storm,  
    attack; seek, ask* (petition)  
  *po:no:, po:nere, posui:, positus\, \_place, put\_ (position);*castra po:nere\, *to pitch camp*  
  *possum, posse, potui:, ——­\, \_be able, can\_ (potent), with the  
    infin.*veto:, veta:re, vetui:, vetitus\, *forbid* (veto), vith the infin.;  
    opposite of *iubeo:\, \_command\_*vinco:, vincere, vi:ci:, victus\, *conquer* (in-vincible)  
  *vi:vo:, vi:vere, vi:xi:, ——­\, \_live, be alive\_ (re-vive)*

*212.* Learn the principal parts of *possum\, \_I am able\_, \_I can\_, and its inflection in the indicative and infinitive. (Cf.  Sec. 495.)*

*a.* *Possum\, \_I can\_, is a compound of* potis\, *able*, and *sum\,  
    \_I am\_.*

*213.* The Infinitive with Subject Accusative.  The *infinitive* (cf.  Sec. 173) is a *verbal noun*.  Used as a noun, it has the constructions of a noun.  As a verb it can govern a case and be modified by an adverb.  The uses of the infinitive are much the same in Latin as in English.

1.  In English certain verbs of *wishing, commanding, forbidding*, and the like are used with an object clause consisting of a substantive in the objective case and an infinitive, as, *he commanded the men to flee*.  Such object clauses are called infinitive clauses, and the substantive is said to be the subject of the infinitive.Similarly in Latin, some verbs of *wishing, commanding, forbidding*, and the like are used with an object clause consisting of an infinitive with a subject in the accusative case, as, *Is viros fugere iussit\, \_he commanded the men to flee\_.*

\_214.\_ RULE.  Subject of the Infinitive. \_The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.\_

**Page 71**

*215.* The Complementary Infinitive.  In English a verb is often followed by an infinitive to complete its meaning, as, *the Romans are able to conquer the Gauls*.  This is called the *complementary* infinitive, as the predicate is not *complete* without the added infinitive.

Similarly in Latin, *verbs of incomplete predication* are completed by the infinitive.  Among such verbs are *possum\, \_I am able, I can\_;* propero\, *maturo\, \_I hasten\_;* tempto\, *I attempt*; as

  Romani Gallos superare possunt,  
    *the Romans are able to* (or *can*) *conquer the Gauls*  
  Bellum gerere maturant,  
    *they hasten to wage war*

*a.* A predicate adjective completing a complementary infinitive  
    agrees in gender, number, and case with the subject of the main  
    verb.

      Mali pueri esse boni non possunt, *bad boys are not able to*  
        (or *cannot*) *be good.*

    Observe that *boni\ agrees with* pueri\.

*216.* The Infinitive used as a Noun.  In English the infinitive is often used as a pure noun, as the subject of a sentence, or as a predicate nominative.  For example, *To conquer* (= conquering) *is pleasing; To see* (= seeing) *is to believe* (= believing).  The same use of the infinitive is found in Latin, especially with *est\, as*

  Superare est gratum, *to conquer is pleasing*  
  Videre est credere, *to see is to believe*

*a.* In the construction above, the infinitive often has a subject,  
    which must then be in the accusative case, as

      Galbam superare inimicos est gratum multis,  
        *for Galba to conquer his enemies is pleasing to many*

*b.* An infinitive used as a noun is neuter singular.  Thus, in the sentence *superare est gratum\, the predicate adjective* gratum\ is in the neuter nominative singular to agree with *superare\ the subject.*

\_217.\_ EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 291.

I. 1.  Magister ludi liberos cum diligentia laborare iussit. 2.  Egere cibo et vino est viris molestum. 3.  Viri armati vetuerunt Gallos castra ibi ponere. 4.  Estne legatus in castello an in muro?  Is est pro porta. 5.  Ubi nostri[1] fugere inceperunt, legatus ab vestris[1] captus est. 6.  Galli castellum ibi oppugnaverant ubi praesidium erat infirmum. 7.  Alii pugnare temptabant, alii portas petebant. 8.  Feminae pro domiciliis sedebant neque resistere validis Gallis poterant. 9.  Bellum est saevum, nec infirmis nec miseris favet. 10.  Sed viri arma postulabant et studebant Gallos de muris agere. 11.  Id castellum ab Gallis occupari Romanis non gratum erit. 12.  Galli ubi a Romanis victi sunt, esse liberi[2] cessaverunt. 13.  Diu sine aqua vivere non potestis.

II. 1.  The girl began daily to carry water from the river to the gates. 2.  The Gauls had pitched their camp in a place suitable for a battle. 3.  For a long time they tried in vain to seize the redoubt. 4.  Neither did they cease to hurl weapons against[3] the walls. 5.  But they were not able to (could not) take the town.

**Page 72**

    [Footnote 1:  Supply *men*. *nostri\,* vestri\, and *sui\ are often  
    used as nouns in this way.]*

[Footnote 2:  Not *children*.  The Romans used *liberi\ either as an adjective, meaning \_free\_, or as a noun, meaning \_the free\_, thereby signifying their \_free-born children\_.  The word was never applied to children of slaves.]*

    [Footnote 3:  in\ with the accusative.]

*218.* THE FAITHLESS TARPE’IA

Sabini olim cum Romanis bellum gerebant et multas victorias reportaverant.  Iam agros proximos muris vastabant, iam oppido adpropinquabant.  Romani autem in Capitolium fugerant et longe periculo aberant.  Muris validis et saxis altis credebant.  Frustra Sabini tela iaciebant, frustra portas duras petebant; castellum occupare non poterant.  Deinde novum consilium ceperunt.[4]

Tarpeia erat puella Romana pulchra et superba.  Cotidie aquam copiis Romanis in Capitolium portabat.  Ei[5] non nocebant Sabini, quod ea sine armis erat neque Sabini bellum cum feminis liberisque gerebant.  Tarpeia autem maxime amabat ornamenta auri.  Cotidie Sabinorum ornamenta videbat et mox ea desiderare incipiebat.  Ei unus ex[6] Sabinis dixit, “Duc copias Sabinas intra portas, Tarpeia, et maxima erunt praemia tua.”

    [Footnote 4:  *consilium capere\, \_to make a plan\_.  Why is the  
    \_perfect\_ tense used here and the imperfect in the preceding  
    sentences?  Explain the use of tenses in the next paragraph.]*

    [Footnote 5:  Dative with *nocebant\. (Cf.  Sec. 154.)]*

    [Footnote 6:  *ex\, \_out of\_, i.e. \_from the nuumber of\_; best  
    translated \_of\_.]*

  [Illustration:  TARPEIA PUELLA PERFIDA]

**LESSON XXXVIII**

**THE RELATIVE PRONOUN AND THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN**

*219.* Sentences are *simple, compound*, or *complex*.

*a.* A *simple sentence* is a sentence containing but one statement,  
    that is, one subject and one predicate:  *The Romans approached the  
    town.*

*b.* A *compound sentence* is a sentence containing two or more  
    independent statements:   
      *The Romans approached the town* | and | *the enemy fled.*

NOTE.  An independent statement is one that can stand alone; it does not depend upon another statement.

*c.* A *complex sentence* is a sentence containing one independent  
    statement and one or more dependent statements:   
      *When the Romans approached the town | the enemy fled.*

NOTE.  A dependent or subordinate statement is one that depends on or qualifies another statement; thus *the enemy fled* is independent, and *when the Romans approached the town* is dependent or subordinate.

*d.* The separate statements in a compound or complex sentence are called *clauses*.  In a complex sentence the independent statement is called the *main clause* and the dependent statement the *subordinate clause.*

*220.* Examine the complex sentence

**Page 73**

*The Romans killed the men who were taken*

Here are two clauses:

*a.* The main clause, *The Romans killed the men*

*b.* The subordinate clause, *who were taken*

The word *who* is a pronoun, for it takes the place of the noun *men*.  It also connects the subordinate clause *who were taken* with the noun *men*.  Hence the clause is an *adjective clause*.  A pronoun that connects an *adjective clause* with a substantive is called a *relative pronoun*, and the substantive for which the relative pronoun stands is called its *antecedent*.  The relative pronouns in English are *who, whose, whom, which, what, that*.

*221.* The relative pronoun in Latin is *qui:\,* quae\, *quod\, and it is declined as follows:*

SINGULAR PLURAL
MASC. FEM. NEUT. MASC. FEM. NEUT.
Nom. qui: quae quod qui: quae quae
Gen. cuius cuius cuius quo:rum qua:rum quo:rum
Dat. cui cui cui quibus quibus quibus
Acc. quem quam quod quo:s qua:s quae
Abl. quo: qua: quo: quibus quibus quibus

1.  Review the declension of *is\, Sec. 114, and note the similarity in  
the endings.  The forms* qui:\, *quae\, and* quibus\ are the only forms  
showing new endings.

NOTE.  The genitive *cuius\ and the dative* cui\ are pronounced *c[oo]i’y[oo]s* (two syllables) and *c[oo]i* (one syllable).

*222.* The Relative Pronoun is translated as follows:[1]

         MASC.  AND FEM.  NEUT.   
  Nom. *who, that* *which, what, that*  
  Gen. *of whom, whose* *of which, of what, whose*  
  Dat. *to* or *for whom* *to* or *for which*, *to* or *for what*  
  Acc. *whom, that* *which, what, that*  
  Abl. *from*, *etc*., *whom* *from*, *etc*., *which* or *what*

[Footnote 1:  This table of meanings need not be memorized.  It is  
inserted for reference when translating.]

*a.* We see from the table above that *qui:\, when it refers to a person, is translated by some form of \_who\_ or by \_that\_; and that when it refers to anything else it is translated by \_which, what\_, or \_that\_.*

\_223.\_ Note the following sentences:

*The Romans killed the men who were taken* *The Romans killed the woman who was taken* *Romani interfecerunt viros qui capti sunt\* Romani interfecerunt feminam quae capta est\

In the first sentence *who* (qui) refers to the antecedent *men* (viros), and is *masculine plural*.  In the second, *who* (quae) refers to *woman* (feminam), and *feminine singular*.  From this we learn that the relative must agree with its antecedent in *gender* and *number*.  In neither of the sentences are the antecedents and relatives in the same case. *Viros\ and* feminam\ are accusatives, and *qui\ and* quae\ are nominatives, being the subjects of the subordinate clauses.  Hence

**Page 74**

*224.* RULE.  Agreement of the Relative. *A relative pronoun must agree with its antecedent in gender and number; but its case is determined by the way it is used in its own clause.*

*225.* Interrogative Pronouns.  An interrogative pronoun is a pronoun that asks a question.  In English the interrogatives are *who?* *which?* *what?* In Latin they are *quis?\* quid?\ (pronoun) and *qui:?\* quae?\ *quod?\ (adjective).*

*226.* Examine the sentences

*a.* *Who is the man?* Quis est vir?  
  *b.* *What man is leading them?* Qui vir eos ducit?

In *a*, *who* is an interrogative *pronoun*.  In *b*, *what* is an interrogative *adjective*.  Observe that in Latin *quis\,* quid\ is the *pronoun* and *qui:\,* quae\, *quod\ is the \_adjective\_.*

*227.* 1.  The interrogative adjective *qui:\,* quae\, *quod\ is declined just like the relative pronoun. (See Sec. 221.)*

2.  The interrogative pronoun *quis\,* quid\ is declined like *qui:\,*  
quae\, *quod\ in the plural.  In the singular it is declined as  
follows:*

MASC.  AND FEM.  NEUT.   
Nom. quis, *who?* quid, *what? which?*  
Gen. cuius, *whose?* cuius, *whose?*  
Dat. cui, *to* or *for whom?* cui, *to* or *for  
what* or *which?*  
Acc. quem, *whom?* quid, *what? which?*  
Abl. quo:, *from*, *etc*., *whom?* quo:, *from*, *etc*., *which* or *what?*

NOTE.  Observe that the masculine and feminine are alike and that all the forms are like the corresponding forms of the relative, excepting quis and quid.

*228.* EXERCISES

I. 1.  Quis est aeger?  Servus quem amo est aeger. 2.  Cuius scutum habes?  Scutum habeo quod legatus ad castellum misit. 3.  Cui legatus suum scutum dabit?  Filio meo scutum dabit. 4.  Ubi Germani antiqui vivebant?  In terra quae est proxima Rheno Germani vivebant. 5.  Quibuscum[1] Germani bellum gerebant?  Cum Romanis, qui eos superare studebant, Germani bellum gerebant. 6.  Qui viri castra ponunt?  Ii sunt viri quorum armis Germani victi sunt. 7.  Quibus telis copiae nostrae eguerunt?  Gladiis et telis nostrae copiae eguerunt. 8.  A quibus porta sinistra tenebatur?  A sociis porta sinistra tenebatur. 9.  Quae provinciae a Romanis occupatae sunt?  Multae provinciae a Romanis occupatae sunt. 10.  Quibus viris dei favebunt?  Bonis viris dei favebunt.

    [Footnote 1:  *cum\ is added to the ablative of relative,  
    interrogative, and personal pronouns instead of being placed  
    before them.]*

  [Illustration:  GERMANI ANTIQUI]

II. 1.  What victory will you announce? 2.  I will announce to the people the victory which the sailors have won. 3.  The men who were pitching camp were eager for battle. 4.  Nevertheless they were soon conquered by the troops which Sextus had sent. 5.  They could not resist our forces, but fled from that place without delay.

**Page 75**

*229.* THE FAITHLESS TARPEIA (*Concluded*)[2]

Tarpeia, commota ornamentis Sabinorum pulchris, diu resistere non potuit et respondit:  “Date mihi[3] ornamenta quae in sinistris bracchis geritis, et celeriter copias vestras in Capitolium ducam.”  Nec Sabini recusaverunt, sed per duras magnasque castelli portas properaverunt quo[1] Tarpeia duxit et mox intra validos et altos muros stabant.  Tum sine mora in[2] Tarpeiam scuta graviter iecerunt; nam scuta quoque in sinistris bracchiis gerebant.  Ita perfida puella Tarpeia interfecta est; ita Sabini Capitolium occupaverunt.

    [Footnote 2:  Explain the use of the tenses in this selection.]

    [Footnote 3:  *to me.*]

    [Footnote 1:  quo = *whither*, *to the place where*.  Here *quo\ is  
    the relative adverb.  We have had it used before as the interrogative  
    adverb, \_whither?\_ \_to what place?\_]*

    [Footnote 2:  *upon*.]

**LESSON XXXIX**

**THE THIRD DECLENSION :  CONSONANT STEMS**

  [Special Vocabulary]

*barbarus, -a, -um\, \_strange, foreign, barbarous\_.  As a noun,*barbari:, -o:rum\, m., plur., *savages, barbarians*  
  *dux, ducis\, m., \_leader\_ (duke).  Cf. the verb* du:co:\  
  *eques, equitis\, m., \_horseman, cavalryman\_ (equestrian)  
   iu:dex, iu:dicis, \_m., judge\_*lapis, lapidis\, m., *stone* (lapidary)  
  *mi:les, mi:litis\, m., \_soldier\_ (militia)*pedes, peditis\, m., *foot soldier* (pedestrian)  
  *pe:s, pedis\,[A] m., \_foot\_ (pedal)*pri:nceps, pri:ncipis\, m., *chief* (principal)  
  *re:x, re:gis\, m., \_king\_ (regal)*summus, -a, -um\, *highest, greatest* (summit)  
  *virtu:s, virtu:tis\, f., \_manliness, courage\_ (virtue)*

    [Footnote A:  Observe that *e\ is \_long\_ in the nom. sing, and  
    \_short\_ in the other cases.]*

*230.* Bases and Stems.  In learning the first and second declensions we saw that the different cases were formed by adding the case terminations to the part of the word that did not change, which we called the *base\.  If to the base we add -a:  in the first declension, and -o in the second, we get what is called the* stem\.  Thus *porta\ has the base port- and the stem porta:-;* servus\ has the base serv- and the stem servo-.

These stem vowels, -a:- and -o-, play so important a part in the formation of the case terminations that these declensions are named from them respectively the *A*- and *O*-Declensions.

*231.* Nouns of the Third Declension.  The third declension is called the Consonant or *I*-Declension, and its nouns are classified according to the way the *stem* ends.  If the last letter of the stem is a consonant, the word is said to have a *consonant stem*; if the stem ends in -i-, the word is said to have an i-*stem*. *In consonant stems the stem is the same as the base.  In* i-*stems the stem is formed by adding* -i- *to the base.* The presence of the *i\ makes a difference in certain of the cases, so the distinction is a very important one.*

**Page 76**

*232.* Consonant stems are divided into two classes:

I. Stems that add -s to the base to form the nominative singular.   
II.  Stems that add no termination in the nominative singular.

**CLASS I**

*233.* Stems that add -s to the base in the nominative singular are either masculine or feminine and are declined as follows:

pri:nceps, mi:les, m., lapis,  
m., *chief* *soldier* m., *stone*  
BASES OR  
STEMS pri:ncip- mi:lit- lapid-

SINGULAR TERMINATIONS  
M. AND F.  
Nom. pri:nceps mi:les lapis -s  
Gen. pri:n’cipis mi:litis lapidis -is  
Dat. pri:n’cipi:  mi:liti:  lapidi:  -i:   
Acc. pri:n’cipem mi:litem lapidem -em  
Abl. pri:n’cipe mi:lite lapide -e

PLURAL
Nom. pri:n’cipe:s mi:lite:s lapide:s -e:s
Gen. pri:n’cipum mi:litum lapidum -um
Dat. pri:nci’pibus mi:litibus lapidibus -ibus
Acc. pri:n’cipe:s mi:lite:s lapide:s -e:s
Abl. pri:nci’pibus mi:litibus lapidibus -ibus

re:x, iu:dex, virtu:s, f.,  
m., *king* m.,\_judge\_ *manliness*  
BASES OR  
STEMS re:g- iu:dic- virtu:t-

SINGULAR TERMINATIONS  
M. AND F.  
Nom. re:x iu:dex virtu:s -s  
Gen. re:gis iu:dicis virtu:’tis -is  
Dat. re:gi:  iu:dici:  virtu:’ti:  -i:   
Acc. re:gem iu:dicem virtu:’tem -em  
Abl. re:ge iu:dice virtu:’te -e

PLURAL
Nom. re:ge:s iu:dice:s virtu:’te:s -e:s
Gen. re:gum iu:dicum virtu:’tum -um
Dat. re:gibus iu:dicibus virtu:’tibus -ibus
Acc. re:ge:s iu:dice:s virtu:’te:s -e:s
Abl. re:gibus iu:dicibus virtu:’tibus -ibus

1.  The base or stem is found by dropping -is in the genitive singular.

2.  Most nouns of two syllables, like *pri:nceps\ (pri:ncip-),* mi:les\  
(mi:lit-), *iu:dex\ (iu:dic-), have* i\ in the base, but *e\ in the  
nominative.*

*a.* *lapis\ is an exception to this rule.*

  3.  Observe the consonant changes of the base or stem in the  
  nominative:

*a.* A final -t or -d is dropped before -s; thus *miles\ for*milets\, *lapis\ for* lapids\, *virtus\ for* virtuts\.

*b.* A final -c or -g unites with -s and forms -x; thus  
    *iudec\ +* s\ = *iudex\,* reg\ + *s\ =* rex\.

  4.  Review Sec. 74 and apply the rules to this declension.

  In like manner decline *dux, ducis\, m., \_leader\_;* eques, equitis\,  
  m., *horseman*; *pedes, peditis\, m., \_foot soldier\_;* pes, pedis\,  
  m.,\_foot\_.

**Page 77**

*234.* EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 291.

I. 1.  Neque pedites neque equites occupare castellum Romanum poterant. 2.  Summa virtute muros altos cotidie oppugnabant. 3.  Pedes militum lapidibus qui de muro iaciebantur saepe vulnerabantur. 4.  Quod novum consilium dux cepit? 5.  Is perfidam puellam pulchris ornamentis temptavit. 6.  Quid puella fecit? 7.  Puella commota auro milites per portas duxit. 8.  Tamen praemia quae summo studio petiverat non reportavit. 9.  Apud Romanos antiquos Tarpeia non est laudata.

II. 1.  What ship is that which I see?  That (illud) ship is the *Victory*.  It is sailing now with a favorable wind and will soon approach Italy. 2.  The judges commanded the savages to be seized and to be killed. 3.  The chiefs of the savages suddenly began to flee, but were quickly captured by the horsemen. 4.  The king led the foot soldiers to the wall from which the townsmen were hurling stones with the greatest zeal.

  [Illustration:  NAVIGIUM]

**LESSON XL**

THE THIRD DECLENSION :  CONSONANT STEMS (*Continued*)

  [Special Vocabulary]

*Caesar, -aris\, m., \_Caesar\_*capti:vus, -i:\, m., *captive, prisoner*  
  *co:nsul, -is\, m., \_consul\_*fra:ter, fra:tris\, m., *brother* (fraternity)  
  *homo:, hominis\, m., \_man, human being\_*impedi:mentum, -i:\, n., *hindrance* (impediment); plur.  
    *impedi:menta, -o:rum\, \_baggage\_*impera:tor, impera:to:ris\, m., *commander in chief, general*  
    (emperor)  
  *legio:, legio:nis\, f., \_legion\_*ma:ter, ma:tris\, f., *mother* (maternal)  
  *o:rdo:, o:rdinis\, m., \_row, rank\_ (order)*pater, patris\, m., *father* (paternal)  
  *salu:s, salu:tis\, f., \_safety\_ (salutary)*soror, soro:ris\, f., *sister* (sorority)

**CLASS II**

*235.* Consonant stems that add no termination in the nominative are declined in the other cases exactly like those that add /-s\.  They may be masculine, feminine, or neuter.

*236.* PARADIGMS

**MASCULINES AND FEMININES**

co:nsul, legio:, f., o:rdo:, pater, m.,  
m., *consul* *legion* m., *row* *father*  
BASES OR  
STEMS co:nsul- legio:n- o:rdin- patr-

SINGULAR TERMINATIONS  
M. AND F.  
Nom. co:nsul legio:  o:rdo:  pater —­  
Gen. co:nsulis legio:nis o:rdinis patris -is  
Dat. co:nsuli:  legio:ni:  o:rdini:  patri:  -i:   
Acc. co:nsulem legio:nem o:rdinem patrem -em  
Abl. co:nsule legio:ne o:rdine patre -e

**Page 78**

PLURAL
Nom. co:nsule:s legio:ne:s o:rdine:s patre:s -e:s
Gen. co:nsulum legio:num o:rdinum patrum -um
Dat. co:nsulibus legio:nibus o:rdinibus patribus -ibus
Acc. co:nsule:s legio:ne:s o:rdine:s patre:s -e:s
Abl. co:nsulibus legio:nibus o:rdinibus patribus -ibus

1.  With the exception of the nominative, the terminations are exactly  
the same as in Class I, and the base or stem is found in the same way.

2.  Masculines and feminines with bases or stems in -in- and -o:n-  
drop -n- and end in -o:  in the nominative, as legio:  (base or stem  
legio:n-), o:rdo:  (base or stem o:rdin-).

  3.  Bases or stems in -tr- have -ter in the nominative, as pater (base  
  or stem patr-).

  4.  Note how the genitive singular gives the clue to the whole  
  declension. *Always learn this with the nominative.*

*237.* EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 291.

I. 1.  Audisne tubas, Marce?  Non solum tubas audio sed etiam ordines militum et carros impedimentorum plenos videre possum. 2.  Quas legiones videmus?  Eae legiones nuper ex Gallia venerunt. 3.  Quid ibi fecerunt?  Studebantne pugnare an sine virtute erant? 4.  Multa proelia fecerunt[1] et magnas victorias et multos captivos reportaverunt. 5.  Quis est imperator earum legionum?  Caesar, summus Romanorum imperator. 6.  Quis est eques qui pulchram coronam gerit?  Is eques est frater meus.  Ei corona a consule data est quia summa virtute pugnaverat et a barbaris patriam servaverat.

II. 1.  Who has seen my father to-day? 2.  I saw him just now (nuper).  He was hastening to your dwelling with your mother and sister. 3.  When men are far from the fatherland and lack food, they cannot be restrained[2] from wrong[3]. 4.  The safety of the soldiers is dear to Caesar, the general. 5.  The chiefs were eager to storm a town full of grain which was held by the consul. 6.  The king forbade the baggage of the captives to be destroyed.

    [Footnote 1:  *proelium facere\ = \_to fight a battle.\_]*

    [Footnote 2:  *contineo\.  Cf.  Sec. 180.]*

    [Footnote 3:  Abl. iniuria.]

**LESSON XLI**

THE THIRD DECLENSION :  CONSONANT STEMS (*Concluded*)

  [Special Vocabulary]

*calamita:s, calamita:tis\, f., \_loss, disaster, defeat\_ (calamity)* caput, capitis\, n., *head* (capital) *flu:men, flu:minis\, n., \_river\_ (flume)* labor, labo:ris\, m., *labor, toil* *opus, operis\, n., \_work, task\_* o:ra:tor, o:ra:to:ris\, m., *orator* *ri:pa, -ae\, f., \_bank\_ (of a stream)* tempus, temporis\, n., *time* (temporal) *terror, terro:ris\, m., \_terror, fear\_* victor, victo:ris\, m., *victor*

*accipio:, accipere, acce:pi:, acceptus\, \_receive, accept\_*  
co:nfirmo:, co:nfi:rma:re, co:nfi:rma:vi:, co:nfi:rma:tus\, *strengthen, establish, encourage* (confirm)

**Page 79**

*238.* Neuter consonant stems add no termination in the nominative and are declined as follows:

flu:men, tempus, opus, caput,  
n., *river* n., *time* n., *work* n., *head*  
BASES OR  
STEMS flu:min- tempor- oper- capit-

SINGULAR TERMINATIONS
Nom. flu:men tempus opus caput —­
Gen. flu:minis temporis operis capitis -is
Dat. flu:mini: temperi: operi: capiti: -i:
Acc. flu:men tempus opus caput —­
Abl. flu:mine tempore opere capite -e
PLURAL
Nom. flu:mina tempora opera capita -a
Gen. flu:minum temporum operum capitum -um
Dat. flu:minibus temporibus operibus capitibus -ibus
Acc. flu:mina tempora opera capita -a
Abl. flu:minibus temporibus operibus capitibus -ibus

1.  Review Sec. 74 and apply the rules to this declension.

2.  Bases or stems in -in- have -e- instead of -i- in the nominative,  
as flu:men, base or stem flu:min-.

  3.  Most bases or stems in -er- and -or- have -us in the nominative, as  
  opus, base or stem oper-; tempus, base or stem tempor-.

*239.* EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 292.

I. 1.  Barbari ubi Romam ceperunt, maxima regum opera deleverunt. 2.  Romani multas calamitates a barbaris acceperunt. 3.  Ubi erat summus terror apud oppidanos, animi dubii eorum ab oratore claro confirmati sunt. 4.  Roma est in ripis fiuminis magni. 5.  Ubi Caesar imperator milites suos arma capere iussit, ii a proelio contineri non potuerunt. 6.  Ubi proelium factum est, imperator reperiri non potuit. 7.  Imperator sagitta in capite vulneratus erat et stare non poterat. 8.  Eum magno labore pedes ex proelio portavit. 9.  Is bracchiis suis imperatorem tenuit et eum ex periculis summis servavit. 10.  Virtute sua bonus miles ab imperatore coronam accepit.

II. 1.  The consul placed a crown on the head of the victor. 2.  Before the gates he was received by the townsmen. 3.  A famous orator praised him and said, “By your labors you have saved the fatherland from disaster.” 4.  The words of the orator were pleasing to the victor. 5.  To save the fatherland was a great task.

  [Illustration:  Corona]

**LESSON XLII**

**REVIEW LESSON**

*240.* Review the paradigms in Secs. 233, 236, 238; and decline all nouns of the third declension in this selection.

TERROR CIMBRICUS[1]

Olim Cimbri et Teutones, populi Germaniae, cum feminis liberisque Italiae adpropinquaverant et copias Romanas maximo proelio vicerant.  Ubi fuga legionum nuntiata est, summus erat terror totius Romae, et Romani, graviter commoti, sacra crebra deis faciebant et salutem petebant.

**Page 80**

Tum Manlius orator animos populi ita confirmavit:—­“Magnam calamitatem accepimus.  Oppida nostra a Cimbris Teutonibusque capiuntur, agricolae interficiuntur, agri vastantur, copiae barbarorum Romae adpropinquant.  Itaque, nisi novis animis proelium novum faciemus et Germanos ex patria nostra sine mora agemus, erit nulla salus feminis nostris liberisque.  Servate liberos!  Servate patriam!  Antea superati sumus quia imperatores nostri fuerunt infirmi.  Nunc Marius, clarus imperator, qui iam multas alias victorias reportavit, legiones ducet et animos nostros terrore Cimbrico liberare maturabit.”

Marius tum in Africa bellum gerebat.  Sine mora ex Africa in Italiam vocatus est.  Copias novas non solum toti Italiae sed etiam provinciis sociorum imperavit.[2] Disciplina autem dura laboribusque perpetuis milites exercuit.  Tum cum peditibus equitibusque, qui iam proelio studebant, ad Germanorum castra celeriter properavit.  Diu et acriter pugnatum est.[3] Denique barbari fugerunt et multi in fuga ab equitibus sunt interfecti.  Marius pater patriae vocatus est.

[Footnote 1:  About the year 100 B.C. the Romans were greatly alarmed by an invasion of barbarians from the north known as Cimbri and Teutons.  They were traveling with wives and children, and had an army of 300,000 fighting men.  Several Roman armies met defeat, and the city was in a panic.  Then the Senate called upon Marius, their greatest general, to save the country.  First he defeated the Teutons in Gaul.  Next, returning to Italy, he met the Cimbri.  A terrible battle ensued, in which the Cimbri were utterly destroyed; but the *terror Cimbricus* continued to haunt the Romans for many a year thereafter.]

    [Footnote 2:  *He made a levy* (of troops) *upon*, *imperavit\ with  
    the acc. and the dat.]*

    [Footnote 3:  Cf.  Sec. 200.  II. 2.]

**LESSON XLIII**

**THE THIRD DECLENSION :  *I*-STEMS**

  [Special Vocabulary]

*animal, anima:lis (-ium[A])\, n., \_animal\_*avis, avis (-ium)\, f., *bird* (aviation)  
  *caede:s, caedis (-ium)\, f., \_slaughter\_  
  calcar, calca:ris (-ium), n., \_spur\_*ci:vis, ci:vis (-ium)\, m. and f., *citizen* (civic)  
  *clie:ns, clientis (-ium)\, m., \_retainer, dependent\_ (client)*fi:nis, fi:nis (-ium)\, m., *end, limit* (final);  
    plur., *country, territory*  
  *hostis, hostis (-ium)\, m. and f., \_enemy\_ in war (hostile).   
    Distinguish from* inimi:cus\, which means a *personal* enemy  
  *ignis, ignis (-ium)\, m., \_fire\_ (ignite)*i:nsigne, i:nsignis (-ium)\, n. *decoration, badge* (ensign)  
  *mare, maris (-ium[B])\, n., \_sea\_ (marine)*na:vis, na:vis (-ium)\, f., *ship* (naval);  
  *na:vis longa\, \_man-of-war\_*turris, turris (-ium)\, f., *tower* (turret)  
  *urbs, urbis (-ium)\, f., \_city\_ (suburb).  An* urbs\ is larger than an  
    *oppidum\.*

**Page 81**

    [Footnote A:  The genitive plural ending -ium is written to mark  
    the i-stems.]

    [Footnote B:  The genitive plural of *mare\ is not in use.]*

*241.* To decline a noun of the third declension correctly we must know whether or not it is an i-stem.  Nouns with i-stems are

  1.  Masculines and feminines:

*a.* Nouns in -e:s and -i:s with the same number of syllables in  
    the genitive as in the nominative.  Thus *caede:s, caedis\, is an  
    i-stem, but* mi:les, mi:litis\, is a consonant stem.

*b.* Nouns in -ns and -rs.

*c.* Nouns of one syllable in -s or -x preceded by a consonant.

  2.  Neuters in -e, -al, and -ar.

*242.* The declension of i-stems is nearly the same as that of consonant stems.  Note the following differences:

*a.* Masculines and feminities have -ium in the genitive plural and -i:s or -e:s in the accusative plural.

*b.* Neuters have -i:  in the ablative singular, and an -i- in every form of the plural.

*243.* Masculine and Feminine *I*-Stems.  Masculine and feminine i-stems are declined as follows:

caede:s, f., hostis, urbs, f., clie:ns, m.,
*slaughter* m., *enemy* *city* *retainer*
STEMS caedi- hosti- urbi- clienti-
BASES caed- host- urb- client-

SINGULAR TERMINATIONS  
M. AND F.  
Nom. caede:s hostis urbs clie:ns[1] -s, -is, *or* -e:s  
Gen. caedis hostis urbis clientis -is  
Dat. caedi:  hosti:  urbi:  clienti:  -i:   
Acc. caedem hostem urbem clientem -em (-im)  
Abl. caede hoste urbe cliente -e (-i:)

PLURAL
Nom. caede:s hoste:s urbe:s cliente:s -e:s
Gen. caedium hostium urbium clientium -ium
Dat. caedibus hostibus urbibus clientibus -ibus
Acc. caedi:s, hosti:s, urbi:s, clienti:s, -i:s,
-e:s -e:s -e:s -e:s -e:s
Abl. caedibus hostibus urbibus clientibus -ibus

[Footnote 1:  Observe that the vowel before -ns is long, but that  
it is shortened before -nt.  Cf.  Sec. 12.2, 3.]

1. *avis\,* ci:vis\, *fi:nis\,* ignis\, *navis\ have the ablative  
singular in -i:  or -e.*

2. *turris\ has accusative* turrim\ and ablative *turri:\ or* turre\.

*244.* Neuter *I*-Stems.  Neuter i-stems are declined as follows:

**Page 82**

i:nsigne, n., animal, n., calcar,
*decoration* *animal* n., *spur*
STEMS i:nsigni- anima:li- calca:ri-
BASES i:nsign- anima:l- calca:r-
SINGULAR TERMINATIONS
Nom. i:nsigne animal calcar -e *or* —­
Gen. i:nsignis anima:lis calca:ris -is
Dat. i:nsigni: anima:li: calca:ri: -i:
Acc. i:nsigne animal calcar -e *or* —­
Abl. i:nsigni: anima:li: calca:ri: -i:
PLURAL
Nom. i:nsignia anima:lia calca:ria -ia
Gen. i:nsignium anima:lium calca:rium -ium
Dat. i:nsignibus anima:libus calca:ribus -ibus
Acc. i:nsignia anima:lia calca:ria -ia
Abl. i:nsignibus anima:libus calca:ribus -ibus

  1.  Review Sec. 74 and see how it applies to this declension.

  2.  The final -i- of the stem is usually dropped in the nominative.   
  If not dropped, it is changed to -e.

  3.  A long vowel is shortened before final -l or -r. (Cf.  Sec. 12.2.)

*245.* EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 292.

I. 1.  Quam urbem videmus?  Urbs quam videtis est Roma. 2.  Cives Romani urbem suam turribus altis et muris longis muniverant. 3.  Venti navis longas prohibebant finibus hostium adpropinquare. 4.  Imperator a clientibus suis calcaria auri et alia insignia accepit. 5.  Milites Romani cum hostibus bella saeva gesserunt et eos caede magna superaverunt. 6.  Alia animalia terram, alia mare amant. 7.  Naves longae quae auxilium ad imperatorem portabant igni ab hostibus deletae sunt. 8.  In eo mari avis multas vidimus quae longe a terra volaverant. 9.  Nonne vidistis navis longas hostium et ignis quibus urbs nostra vastabatur?  Certe, sed nec caedem civium nec fugam clientium vidimus. 10.  Aves et alia animalia, ubi ignem viderunt, salutem fuga petere celeriter inceperunt. 11.  Num. iudex in peditum ordinibus stabat?  Minime, iudex erat apud equites et equus eius insigne pulchrum gerebat.

  [Illustration:  NAVES LONGAE]

II. 1.  Because of the lack of grain the animals of the village were not able to live. 2.  When the general[2] heard the rumor, he quickly sent a horseman to the village. 3.  The horseman had a beautiful horse and wore spurs of gold. 4.  He said to the citizens, “Send your retainers with horses and wagons to our camp, and you will receive an abundance of grain.” 5.  With happy hearts they hastened to obey his words.[3]

    [Footnote 2:  Place first.]

    [Footnote 3:  Not the accusative.  Why?]

**LESSON XLIV**

**IRREGULAR NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION :  GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION**

  [Special Vocabulary]

**Page 83**

*arbor, arboris\, f., \_tree\_ (arbor)*collis, collis (-ium)\, m., *hill*  
  *de:ns, dentis (-ium)\, m., \_tooth\_ (dentist)  
   fo:ns, fontis (-ium), m.. \_fountain, spring; source\_*iter, itineris\, n., *march, journey, route* (itinerary)  
  *me:nsis, me:nsis (-ium)\, m., \_month\_*moenia, -ium\, n., plur., *walls, fortifications*.  Cf. *mu:rus\*mo:ns, montis (-ium)\, m., *mountain*;  
    *summus mo:ns\, \_top of the mountain\_*numquam\, adv., *never*  
  *po:ns, pontis\, m., \_bridge\_ (pontoon)*sanguis, sanguinis\, m., blood (sanguinary)  
  *summus, -a, -um\, \_highest, greatest\_ (summit)*tra:ns\, prep, with acc., *across* (transatlantic)  
  *vi:s (vi:s)\, gen. plur.* virium\, f. *strength, force, violence*  
    (vim)

*246.* PARADIGMS

[Transcriber’s Note:  The original text gives vi:- and vi:r- as the “Bases” of *vi:s\, and omits the “Stems” for both words.  The forms have been regularized to agree with the inflectional table in the Appendix.]*
vi:s, f., \_force\_ iter, n., \_march\_
STEMS vi:- and vi:ri- iter- and itiner-
BASES v- and vi:r- iter- and itiner-
SINGULAR
Nom. vi:s iter
Gen. vi:s (rare) itineris
Dat. vi: (rare) itineri:
Acc. vim iter
Abl. vi: itinere
PLURAL
Nom. vi:re:s itinera
Gen. vi:rium itinerum
Dat. vi:ribus itineribus
Acc. vi:ri:s, or -e:s itinera
Abl. vi:ribus itineribus

\_247.\_ There are no rules for gender in the third declension that do not present numerous exceptions.[1] The following rules, however, are of great service, and should be thoroughly mastered:

  1. *Masculine\ are nouns in -or, -o:s, -er, -es (gen. -itis).*

*a.* *arbor\, \_tree\_, is feminine; and* iter\, *march*, is neuter.

  2. *Feminine\ are nouns in -o:, -is, -x, and in -s preceded by  
  a consonant or by any long vowel but* o:\.

*a.* Masculine are *collis\ (\_hill\_),* lapis\, *me:nsis\ (\_month\_),*o:rdo:\, *pe:s\, and nouns in -nis and -guis—­as* ignis\,  
    *sanguis\ (\_blood\_)—­and the four monosyllables*

*de:ns\, \_a tooth\_;* mo:ns\, *a mountain*  
      *po:ns\, \_a bridge\_;* fo:ns\, *a fountain*

  3. *Neuters\ are nouns in -e, -al, -ar, -n, -ur, -us, and*caput\.

    [Footnote 1:  Review Sec. 60.  Words denoting males are, of course,  
    masculine, and those denoting females, feminine.]

*248.* Give the gender of the following nouns and the rule by which it is determined:

animal calamitas flumen lapis navis avis caput ignis legio opus caede:s eques i:nsigne mare salu:s calcar fi:nis labor mi:les urbs

*249.* EXERCISES

**Page 84**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 292.

I. *The First Bridge over the Rhine.* Salus sociorum erat semper cara Romanis.  Olim Galli, amici Romanorum, multas iniurias ab Germanis qui trans flumen Rhenum vivebant acceperant.  Ubi legati ab iis ad Caesarem imperatorem Romanum venerunt et auxilium postulaverunt, Romani magnis itineribus ad hostium finis properaverunt.  Mox ad ripas magni fluminis venerunt.  Imperator studebat copias suas trans fluvium ducere, sed nulla via[2] poterat.  Nullas navis habebat.  Alta erat aqua.  Imperator autem, vir clarus, numquam adversa fortuna commotus, novum consilium cepit.  Iussit suos[3] in[4] lato flumine facere pontem.  Numquam antea pons in Rheno visus erat.  Hostes ubi pontem quem Romani fecerant viderunt, summo terrore commoti, sine mora fugam parare inceperunt.

II. 1.  The enemy had taken (possession of) the top of the mountain. 2.  There were many trees on the opposite hills. 3.  We pitched our camp near (ad) a beautiful spring. 4.  A march through the enemies’ country is never without danger. 5.  The time of the month was suitable for the march. 6.  The teeth of the monster were long. 7.  When the foot soldiers[5] saw the blood of the captives, they began to assail the fortifications with the greatest violence.[2]

    [Footnote 2:  Abl. of manner.]

    [Footnote 3:  *suos\, used as a noun, \_his men\_.]*

    [Footnote 4:  We say *build a bridge over*; the Romans, *make a  
    bridge on*.]

    [Footnote 5:  Place first.]

\* \* \* \* \*

  Fifth Review, Lessons XXXVII-XLIV, Secs. 517-520

\* \* \* \* \*

**LESSON XLV**

**ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION :  *I*-STEMS**

  [Special Vocabulary]

*a:cer, a:cris, a:cre\, \_sharp, keen, eager\_ (acrid)* brevis, breve\, *short, brief* *difficilis, difficile\, \_difficult\_* facilis, facile\, *facile, easy* *fortis, forte\, \_brave\_ (fortitude)* gravis, grave\, *heavy, severe, serious* (grave) *omnis, omne\, \_every, all\_ (omnibus)* pa:r\, gen. *paris\, \_equal\_ (par)* pauci:, -ae, -a\, *few, only a few* (paucity) *secundus, -a, -um\, \_second; favorable\_, opposite of adversus* signum, -i:\, n., *signal, sign, standard* *ve:lo:x\, gen.* ve:lo:cis\, *swift* (velocity)

*conloco:, conloca:re, conloca:vi:, conloca:tus\, \_arrange, station,  
    place\_ (collocation)*de:mo:nstro:, de:mo:nstra:re, de:mo:nstra:vi:, de:mo:nstra:tus\,  
    *point out, explain* (demonstrate)  
  *mando:, manda:re, manda:vi:, manda:tus\, \_commit, intrust\_ (mandate)*

*250.* Adjectives are either of the first and second declensions (like *bonus\,* aeger\, or *liber\), or they are of the third declension.*

**Page 85**

*251.* Nearly all adjectives of the third declension have i-*stems*, and they are declined almost like nouns with i-stems.

*252.* Adjectives learned thus far have had a different form in the nominative for each gender, as, *bonus\, m.;* bona\, f.; *bonum\, n.  Such an adjective is called an \_adjective of three endings\_.  Adjectives of the third declension are of the following classes:*

    I. Adjectives of three endings—­  
      a different form in the nominative for each gender.

   II.  Adjectives of two endings—­  
      masculine and feminine nominative alike, the neuter different.

  III.  Adjectives of one ending—­  
      masculine, feminine, and neuter nominative all alike.

*253.* Adjectives of the third declension in -er have three endings; those in -is have two endings; the others have one ending.

**CLASS I**

*254.* Adjectives of Three Endings are declined as follows:

        a:cer, a:cris, a:cre, *keen, eager*  
        STEM a:cri-  
        BASE a:cr-

SINGULAR PLURAL
MASC. FEM. NEUT. MASC. FEM. NEUT.
Nom. a:cer a:cris a:cre a:cre:s a:cre:s a:cria
Gen. a:cris a:cris a:cris a:crium a:crium a:crium
Dat. a:cri: a:cri: a:cri: a:cribus a:cribus a:cribus
Acc. a:crem a:crem a:cre a:cri:s, -e:s a:cri:s, -e:s a:cria
Abl. a:cri: a:cri: a:cri: a:cribus a:cribus a:cribus

**CLASS II**

*255.* Adjectives of Two Endings are declined as follows:

        omnis, omne, *every, all*[1]  
        STEM omni-  
        BASE omn-

SINGULAR PLURAL
MASC. AND FEM. NEUT. MASC. AND FEM. NEUT.
Nom. omnis omne omne:s omnia
Gen. omnis omnis omnium omnium
Dat. omni: omni: omnibus omnibus
Acc. omnem omne omni:s, -e:s omnia
Abl. omni: omni: omnibus omnibus

    [Footnote 1:  *omnis\ is usually translated \_every\_ in the singular  
    and \_all\_ in the plural.]*

**CLASS III**

*256.* Adjectives of One Ending are declined as follows:

        pa:r, *equal*  
        STEM pari-  
        BASE par-

SINGULAR PLURAL
MASC. AND FEM. NEUT. MASC. AND FEM. NEUT.
Nom. pa:r pa:r pare:s paria
Gen. paris paris parium parium
Dat. pari: pari: paribus paribus
Acc. parem pa:r pari:s, -e:s paria
Abl. pari: pari: paribus paribus

  1.  All i-stem adjectives have -i:  in the ablative singular.

**Page 86**

  2.  Observe that the several cases of adjectives of one ending have the  
  same form for all genders excepting in the accusative singular and in  
  the nominative and accusative plural.

  3.  Decline *vir acer\,* legio acris\, *animal acre\,* ager omnis\,  
  *scutum omne\,* proelium par\.

*257.* There are a few adjectives of one ending that have consonant stems.  They are declined exactly like nouns with consonant stems.

*258.* EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 293.

I. *The Romans invade the Enemy’s Country.* Olim pedites Romani cum equitibus velocibus in hostium urbem iter faciebant.  Ubi non longe afuerunt, rapuerunt agricolam, qui eis viam brevem et facilem demonstravit.  Iam Romani moenia alta, turris validas aliaque opera urbis videre poterant.  In moenibus stabant multi principes.  Principes ubi viderunt Romanos, iusserunt civis lapides aliaque tela de muris iacere.  Tum milites fortes contineri a proelio non poterant et acer imperator signum tuba dari iussit.  Summa vi omnes maturaverunt.  Imperator Sexto legato impedimenta omnia mandavit.  Sextus impedimenta in summo colle conlocavit.  Grave et acre erat proelium, sed hostes non pares Romanis erant.  Alii interfecti, alii capti sunt.  Apud captivos erant mater sororque regis.  Pauci Romanorum ab hostibus vulnerati sunt.  Secundum proelium Romanis erat gratum.  Fortuna fortibus semper favet.

II. 1.  Some months are short, others are long. 2.  To seize the top of the mountain was difficult. 3.  Among the hills of Italy are many beautiful springs. 4.  The soldiers were sitting where the baggage had been placed because their feet were weary. 5.  The city which the soldiers were eager to storm had been fortified by strong walls and high towers. 6.  Did not the king intrust a heavy crown of gold and all his money to a faithless slave?  Yes, but the slave had never before been faithless.

  [Illustration:  AQUILA LEGIONIS]

**LESSON XLVI**

**THE FOURTH OR *U*-DECLENSION**

  [Special Vocabulary]

*adventus, -u:s\, m., \_approach, arrival\_ (advent)*ante\, prep, with acc., *before* (ante-date)  
  *cornu:, -u:s\, n., \_horn, wing\_ of an army (cornucopia);*a:  dextro:  cornu:\, *on the right wing*;  
    *a:  sinistro:  cornu:\, \_on the left wing\_*equita:tus, -u:s\, m., *cavalry*  
  *exercitus, -u:s\, m., \_army\_*impetus, -u:s\, m., *attack* (impetus);  
    *impetum facere in\, with acc., \_to make an attack on\_*lacus, -u:s, dat. and abl. plur. lacubus\, m., *lake*  
  *manus, -u:s\, f., \_hand; band, force\_ (manual)*portus, -u:s\, m., *harbor* (port)  
  *post\, prep, with acc., \_behind, after\_ (post-mortem)*

*cremo:, crema:re, crema:vi:, crema:tus\, \_burn\_ (cremate)*exerceo:, exerce:re, exercui:, exercitus\, *practice, drill, train*  
    (exercise)

**Page 87**

*259.* Nouns of the fourth declension are either masculine or neuter.

*260.* Masculine nouns end in -us, neuters in -u:.  The genitive ends in -u:s.

*a.* Feminine by exception are *domus\, \_house\_;* manus\, *hand*;  
and a few others.

**PARADIGMS**

[Transcriber’s Note:   
The “Stems” are missing in the printed book.  They have been supplied  
from the inflectional table in the Appendix.]

adventus, cornu:,  
m., *arrival* n., *horn*  
STEMS adventu- cornu-  
BASES advent- corn-

SINGULAR TERMINATIONS
MASC. NEUT.
Nom. adventus cornu: -us -u:
Gen. adventu:s cornu:s -u:s -u:s
Dat. adventui: (u:) cornu: -ui: (u:) -u:
Acc. adventum cornu: -um -u:
Abl. adventu: cornu: -u: -u:
PLURAL
Nom. adventu:s cornua -u:s -ua
Gen. adventuum cornuum -uum -uum
Dat. adventibus cornibus -ibus -ibus
Acc. adventu:s cornua -u:s -ua
Abl. adventibus cornibus -ibus -ibus

  1.  Observe that the base is found, as in other declensions, by  
  dropping the ending of the genitive singular.

  2. *lacus\, \_lake\_, has the ending -ubus in the dative and ablative  
  plural;* portus\, *harbor*, has either -ubus or -ibus.

  3. *cornu:\ is the only neuter that is in common use.*

*261.* EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 293.

I. 1.  Ante adventum Caesaris veloces hostium equites acrem impetum in castra fecerunt. 2.  Continere exercitum a proelio non facile erat. 3.  Post adventum suum Caesar iussit legiones ex castris duci. 4.  Pro castris cum hostium equitatu pugnatum est. 5.  Post tempus breve equitatus trans flumen fugit ubi castra hostium posita erant. 6.  Tum victor imperator agros vastavit et vicos hostium cremavit. 7.  Castra autem non oppugnavit quia milites erant defessi et locus difficilis. 8.  Hostes non cessaverunt iacere tela, quae paucis nocuerunt. 9.  Post adversum proelium principes Gallorum legatos ad Caesarem mittere studebant, sed populo persuadere non poterant.

II. 1.  Did you see the man-of-war on the lake? 2.  I did not see it (*fem*.) on the lake, but I saw it in the harbor. 3.  Because of the strong wind the sailor forbade his brother to sail. 4.  Caesar didn’t make an attack on the cavalry on the right wing, did he? 5.  No, he made an attack on the left wing. 6.  Who taught your swift horse to obey? 7.  I trained my horse with my (own) hands, nor was the task difficult. 8.  He is a beautiful animal and has great strength.

**LESSON XLVII**

EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE :  THE DECLENSION OF *DOMUS*

**Page 88**

  [Special Vocabulary]

   Athe:nae, -a:rum, f., plur., *Athens*  
   Corinthus, -i:, f., *Corinth*  
  *domus, -u:s\, locative* domi:\, f., *house, home* (dome).  Cf.  
    *domicilium\*Gena:va, -ae\, f., *Geneva*  
   Pompe:ii, -o:rum, m., plur., *Pompeii*, a city in Campania.  See map  
  *propter\, prep. with acc., \_on account of, because of\_  
   ru:s, ru:ris, in the plur. only nom. and acc.* ru:ra\, n., *country*  
    (rustic)  
  *tergum, tergi:\, n., \_back\_;* a:  tergo:\, *behind, in the rear*  
  *vulnus, vulneris\, n., \_wound\_ (vulnerable)*

*committo:, committere, commi:si:, commissus\, \_intrust, commit;\_*proelium committere\, *join battle*  
  *convoco:, convoca:re, convoca:vi:, convoca:tus\, \_call together,  
    summon\_ (convoke)*timeo:, time:re, timui:, ——­\, *fear; be afraid* (timid)  
  *verto:, vertere, verti:, versus\, \_turn, change\_ (convert);*terga vertere\, *to turn the backs*, hence *to retreat*

*262.* We have become thoroughly familiar with expressions like the following:

  Galba ad (or in) oppidum properat  
  Galba ab (de or ex) oppido properat  
  Galba in oppido habitat

From these expressions we may deduce the following rules:

*263.* RULE.  Accusative of the Place to. *The /place to which\ is expressed by /ad\ or /in\ with the accusative.  This answers the question Whither?*

*264.* RULE.  Ablative of the Place from. *The /place from which\ is expressed by /a:\ or /ab\, /de\, /e:\ or /ex\, with the separative ablative.  This answers the question Whence?* (Cf.  Rule, Sec. 179.)

*265.* RULE.  Ablative of the Place at or in. *The /place at or in which\ is expressed by the ablative with /in\.  This answers the question Where?*

*a.* The ablative denoting the *place where* is called the *locative  
    ablative* (cf. *locus\, \_place\_).*

*266.* Exceptions.  Names of towns, small islands,[1] *domus\, \_home\_,* ru:s\, *country*, and a few other words in common use omit the prepositions in expressions of place, as,

  Galba Athenas properat, *Galba hastens to Athens*  
  Galba Athenis properat, *Galba hastens from Athens*  
  Galba Athenis habitat, *Galba lives at* (or *in*) *Athens*  
  Galba domum properat, *Galba hastens home*  
  Galba rus properat, *Galba hastens to the country*  
  Galba domo properat, *Galba hastens from home*  
  Galba rure properat, *Galba hastens from the country*  
  Galba ruri (less commonly rure) habitat,  
    *Galba lives in the country*

*a.* Names of *countries*, like *Germania\,* Italia\, *etc*., do not  
    come under these exceptions. *With them prepositions must not be  
    omitted.*

**Page 89**

    [Footnote 1:  Small islands are classed with towns because they  
    generally have but one town, and the name of the town is the same as  
    the name of the island.]

*267.* The Locative Case.  We saw above that the place-relation expressed by *at* or *in* is regularly covered by the locative ablative.  However, Latin originally expressed this relation by a separate form known as the *locative case*.  This case has been everywhere merged in the ablative excepting in the singular number of the first and second declensions.  The form of the locative in these declensions is like the genitive singular, and its use is limited to names of towns and small islands, *domi:\, \_at home\_, and a few other words.*

*268.* RULE.  Locative and Locative Ablative. *To express the /place in which\ with names of towns and small islands, /if they are singular and of the first or second declension\, use the locative; otherwise use the locative ablative without a preposition; as*,

  Galba Romae habitat, *Galba lives at Rome*  
  Galba Corinthi habitat, *Galba lives at Corinth*  
  Galba domi habitat, *Galba lives at home*

Here *Romae\,* Corinthi\, and *domi\ are \_locatives\_, being \_singular\_ and of the first and second declensions respectively.  But in*

  Galba Athenis habitat, *Galba lives at Athens*,  
  Galba Pompeiis habitat, *Galba lives at Pompeii*

*Athenis\ and* Pompeiis\ are locative ablatives.  These words can have no locative case, as the nominatives *Athenae\ and* Pompeii\ are\_plural\_ and there is no plural locative case form.

*269.* The word *domus\, \_home, house\_, has forms of both the second and the fourth declension.  Learn its declension (Sec. 468).*

*270.* EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 293.

I. 1.  Corinthi omnia insignia auri a ducibus victoribus rapta erant. 2.  Caesar Genavam exercitum magnis itineribus duxit. 3.  Quem pontem hostes cremaverant?  Pontem in Rheno hostes cremaverant. 4.  Pompeiis multas Romanorum domos videre poteritis. 5.  Roma consul equo veloci rus properavit. 6.  Domi consulis homines multi sedebant. 7.  Imperator iusserat legatum Athenas cum multis navibus longis navigare. 8.  Ante moenia urbis sunt ordines arborum altarum. 9.  Propter arbores altas nec lacum nec portum reperire potuimus. 10.  Proeliis crebris Caesar legiones suas quae erant in Gallia exercebat. 11.  Cotidie in loco idoneo castra ponebat et muniebat.

II. 1.  Caesar, the famous general, when he had departed from Rome, hastened to the Roman province on a swift horse.[2] 2.  He had heard a rumor concerning the allies at Geneva. 3.  After his arrival Caesar called the soldiers together and commanded them to join battle. 4.  The enemy hastened to retreat, some because[3] they were afraid, others because[3] of wounds. 5.  Recently I was at Athens and saw the place where the judges used to sit.[4] 6.  Marcus and Sextus are my brothers; the one lives at Rome, the other in the country.

**Page 90**

    [Footnote 2:  Latin says “by a swift horse.”  What construction?]

    [Footnote 3:  Distinguish between the English conjunction *because*  
    (quia or quod) and the preposition *because of* (propter).]

    [Footnote 4:  *used to sit*, express by the imperfect.]

  [Illustration:  DAEDALUS ET ICARUS]

*271.* DAED’ALUS AND IC’ARUS

Creta est insula antiqua quae aqua alta magni maris pulsatur.  Ibi olim Minos erat rex.  Ad eum venit Daedalus qui ex Graecia patria fugiebat.  Eum Minos rex benignis verbis accepit et ei domicilium in Creta dedit. [5]Quo in loco Daedalus sine cura vivebat et regi multa et clara opera faciebat.  Post tempus longum autem Daedalus patriam caram desiderare incepit.  Domum properare studebat, sed regi persuadere non potuit et mare saevum fugam vetabat.

[Footnote 5:  *And in this place*; *quo\ does not here introduce a subordinate relative clause, but establishes the connection with the preceding sentence.  Such a relative is called a \_connecting relative\_, and is translated by \_and\_ and a demonstrative or personal pronoun.]*

**LESSON XLVIII**

**THE FIFTH OR E:-DECLENSION :  THE ABLATIVE OF TIME**

  [Special Vocabulary]

*acie:s, -e:i:\, f., \_line of battle\_*aesta:s, aesta:tis\, f., *summer*  
  *annus, -i:\, m., \_year\_ (annual)*die:s, die:i:\, m., *day* (diary)  
  *fide:s, fidei:\, no plur., f., \_faith, trust; promise, word;  
    protection\_;* in fidem veni:re\, *to come under the protection*  
  *fluctus, -u:s\, m. \_wave, billow\_ (fluctuate)*hiems, hiemis\, f., *winter*  
  *ho:ra, -ae\, f., \_hour\_*lu:x, lu:cis\, f., *light* (lucid); *pri:ma lux\, \_daybreak\_*meri:die:s\, acc. -em, abl. -e:, no plur., m., *midday* (meridian)  
  *nox, noctis (-ium)\, f., \_night\_ (nocturnal)*pri:mus, -a, -um\, *first* (prime)  
  *re:s, rei:\, f., \_thing, matter\_ (real);*re:s gestae\, *deeds, exploits* (lit. *things performed*);  
    *re:s adversae\, \_adversity\_;* re:s secundae\, *prosperity*  
  *spe:s, spei:\, f., \_hope\_*

*272.* Gender.  Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine except *die:s\, \_day\_, and* meri:die:s\, *midday*, which are usually masculine.

*273.* PARADIGMS

[Transcriber’s Note:   
The “Stems” are missing in the printed book.  They have been supplied  
from the inflectional table in the Appendix.]

die:s, re:s, f.,  
m., *day* *thing*  
STEMS die:- re:-  
BASES di- r-

**Page 91**

SINGULAR TERMINATIONS
Nom. die:s re:s -e:s
Gen. die:i: rei: -e:i: *or* -ei:
Dat. die:i: rei: -e:i: *or* -ei:
Acc. diem rem -em
Abl. die: re: -e:
PLURAL
Nom. die:s re:s -e:s
Gen. die:rum re:rum -e:rum
Dat. die:bus re:bus -e:bus
Acc. die:s re:s -e:s
Abl. die:bus re:bus -e:bus

1.  The vowel *e\ which appears in every form is regularly long.  It is  
shortened in the ending -ei:  after a consonant, as in* r-ei:\; and  
before -m in the accusative singular, as in *di-em\. (Cf.  Sec. 12.2.)*

  2.  Only *die:s\ and* re:s\ are complete in the plural.  Most other  
  nouns of this declension lack the plural. *Acie:s\, \_line of battle\_,  
  and* spe:s\, *hope*, have the nominative and accusative plural.

*274.* The ablative relation (Sec. 50) which is expressed by the prepositions *at, in*, or *on* may refer not only to place, but also to time, as *at noon, in summer, on the first day*.  The ablative which is used to express this relation is called the *ablative of time*.

*275.* RULE.  The Ablative of Time. *The time /when\ or /within which\ anything happens is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

*a.* Occasionally the preposition /\_in\_\ is found.  Compare the  
    English *Next day we started* and *On\ the next day we started\_.*

*276.* EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 294.

I. *Galba the Farmer.* Galba agricola ruri vivit.  Cotidie prima luce laborare incipit, nec ante noctem in studio suo cessat.  Meridie Iulia filia eum ad cenam vocat.  Nocte pedes defessos domum vertit.  Aestate filii agricolae auxilium patri dant.  Hieme agricola eos in ludum mittit.  Ibi magister pueris multas fabulas de rebus gestis Caesaris narrat.  Aestate filii agricolae perpetuis laboribus exercentur nec grave agri opus est iis molestum.  Galba sine ulla cura vivit nec res adversas timet.

II. 1.  In that month there were many battles in Gaul. 2.  The cavalry of the enemy made an attack upon Caesar’s line of battle. 3.  In the first hour of the night the ship was overcome by the billows. 4.  On the second day the savages were eager to come under Caesar’s protection. 5.  The king had joined battle, moved by the hope of victory. 6.  That year a fire destroyed many birds and other animals. 7.  We saw blood on the wild beast’s teeth.

*277.* DAED’ALUS AND IC’ARUS (*Continued*)

Tum Daedalus gravibus curis commotus filio suo Icaro ita dixit:  “Animus meus, Icare, est plenus tristitiae nec oculi lacrimis egent.  Discedere ex Creta, Athenas properare, maxime studeo; sed rex recusat audire verba mea et omnem reditus spem eripit.  Sed numquam rebus adversis vincar.  Terra et mare sunt inimica, sed aliam fugae viam reperiam.”  Tum in artis ignotas animum dimittit et mirum capit consilium.  Nam pennas in ordine ponit et veras alas facit.

**Page 92**

**LESSON XLIX**

**PRONOUNS CLASSIFIED :  PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS**

  [Special Vocabulary]

*ami:citia, -ae\, f., \_friendship\_ (amicable)*itaque\, conj., *and so, therefore, accordingly*  
  *littera, -ae\, f., \_a letter\_ of the alphabet;  
    plur., \_a letter, an epistle\_*metus, metu:s\, m., *fear*  
  *nihil, indeclinable\, n., \_nothing\_ (nihilist)*nu:ntius, nu:nti:\, m., *messenger*.  Cf. *nu:ntio:\*pa:x, pa:cis\, f., *peace* (pacify)  
  *re:gnum, -i:\, n., \_reign, sovereignty, kingdom\_*supplicum, suppli’ci:\, n., *punishment*;  
    *supplicum su:mere de:\, with abl., \_inflict punishment on\_;*supplicum dare\, *suffer punishment*.  Cf. *poena\*

*placeo:, place:re, placui:, placitus\, \_be pleasing to, please\_,  
    with dative.  Cf.  Sec. 154*su:mo:, su:mere, su:mpsi:, su:mptus\, *take up, assume*  
  *sustineo:, sustine:re, sustinui:, sustentus\, \_sustain\_*

*278.* We have the same kinds of pronouns in Latin as in English.  They are divided into the following eight classes:

  1. *Personal pronouns\, which show the person speaking, spoken to, or  
  spoken of; as,* ego\, *I*; *tu\, \_you\_;* is\, *he*. (Cf.  Sec. 279.  
  *etc*.)

  2. *Possessive pronouns\, which denote possession; as,* meus\, *tuus\,*suus\, *etc*. (Cf.  Sec. 98.)

  3. *Reflexive pronouns\, used in the predicate to refer back to the  
  subject; as, \_he saw himself\_. (Cf.  Sec. 281.)*

  4. *Intensive pronouns\, used to emphasize a noun or pronoun; as, \_I  
  myself saw it\_. (Cf.  Sec. 285.)*

  5. *Demonstrative pronouns\, which point out persons or things; as,*is\, *this, that*. (Cf.  Sec. 112.)

  6. *Relative pronouns\, which connect a subordinate adjective clause  
  with an antecedent; as,* qui\, *who*. (Cf.  Sec. 220.)

  7. *Interrogative pronouns\, which ask a question; as,* quis\, *who?*  
  (Cf.  Sec. 225.)

  8. *Indefinite pronouns\, which point out indefinitely; as, \_some one,  
  any one, some, certain ones\_, etc. (Cf.  Sec. 296.)*

*279.* The demonstrative pronoun *is\,* ea\, *id\, as we learned in Sec. 115, is regularly used as the personal pronoun of the third person (\_he\_, \_she\_, \_it\_, \_they\_, etc.).*

*280.* The personal pronouns of the first person are *ego\, \_I\_;* no:s\, *we*; of the second person, *tu:\, \_thou\_ or \_you\_;* vo:s\, *ye* or *you*.  They are declined as follows:

       SINGULAR  
       FIRST PERSON SECOND PERSON  
  Nom. ego, *I* tu:, *you*  
  Gen. mei:, *of me* tui:, *of you*  
  Dat. mihi, *to* or *for me* tibi, *to* or *for you*  
  Acc. me:, *me* te:, *you*  
  Abl. me:, *with, from*, *etc*., *me* te:, *with, from*, *etc*., *you*

**Page 93**

PLURAL
Nom. no:s, *we* vo:s, *you*
Gen. nostrum or nostri:, *of us* vestrum or vestri:, *of you*
Dat. no:bi:s, *to* or *for us* vo:bi:s, *to* or *for you*
Acc. no:s, *us* vo:s, *you*
Abl. no:bi:s, *with, from*, vo:bi:s, *with, from*,
*etc*., *us* *etc*., *you*

1.  The personal pronouns are not used in the nominative excepting for  
emphasis or contrast.

*281.* The Reflexive Pronouns. 1.  The personal pronouns *ego\ and* tu:\ may be used in the predicate as reflexives; as,

video me, *I see myself*  
videmus nos, *we see ourselves*  
vides te, *you see yourself*  
videtis vos, *you see yourselves*

  2.  The reflexive pronoun of the third person (*himself, herself,  
  itself, themselves*) has a special form, used only in these senses,  
  and declined alike in the singular and plural.

SINGULAR AND PLURAL  
    Gen. sui:  Acc. se:   
    Dat. sibi Abl. se:

  EXAMPLES  
    Puer se videt, *the boy sees himself*  
    Puella se videt, *the girl sees herself*  
    Animal se videt, *the animal sees itself*  
    Ii se vident, *they see themselves*

*a.* The form *se:\ is sometimes doubled,* se:se:\, for emphasis.

  3.  Give the Latin for

*I teach myself* *We teach ourselvesYou teach yourself* *You teach yourselvesHe teaches himself* *They teach themselves*

*282.* The preposition *cum\, when used with the ablative of* ego\, *tu:\, or* sui:\, is appended to the form, as, *me:cum\, \_with me\_;* te:cum\, *with you*; *no:bi:scum\, \_with us\_; etc.*

*283.* EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 294.

I. 1.  Mea mater est cara mihi et tua mater est cara tibi. 2.  Vestrae litterae erant gratae nobis et nostrae litterae erant gratae vobis. 3.  Nuntius regis qui nobiscum est nihil respondebit. 4.  Nuntii pacem amicitiamque sibi et suis sociis postulaverunt. 5.  Si tu arma sumes, ego regnum occupabo. 6.  Uter vestrum est civis Romanus?  Neuter nostrum. 7.  Eo tempore multi supplicium dederunt quia regnum petierant. 8.  Sume supplicium, Caesar, de hostibus patriae acribus. 9.  Prima luce alii metu commoti sese fugae mandaverunt; alii autem magna virtute impetum exercitus nostri sustinuerunt. 10.  Soror regis, ubi de adverso proelio audivit, sese Pompeiis interfecit.

II. 1.  Whom do you teach?  I teach myself. 2.  The soldier wounded himself with his sword. 3.  The master praises us, but you he does not praise. 4.  Therefore he will inflict punishment on you, but we shall not suffer punishment. 5.  Who will march (i.e. make a march) with me to Rome? 6.  I will march with you to the gates of the city. 7.  Who will show us[1] the way?  The gods will show you[1] the way.

**Page 94**

    [Footnote 1:  Not accusative.]

DAED’ALUS AND IC’ARUS (*Concluded*)

*284.* Puer Icarus una[2] stabat et mirum patris opus videbat.  Postquam manus ultima[3] alis imposita est, Daedalus eas temptavit et similis avi in auras volavit.  Tum alas umeris fili adligavit et docuit eum volare et dixit, “Te veto, mi fili, adpropinquare aut soli aut mari.  Si fluctibus adpropinquaveris,[4] aqua alis tuis nocebit, et si soli adpropinquaveris,[4] ignis eas cremabit.”  Tum pater et filius iter difficile incipiunt.  Alas movent et aurae sese committunt.  Sed stultus puer verbis patris non paret.  Soli adpropinquat.  Alae cremantur et Icarus in mare decidit et vitam amittit.  Daedalus autem sine ullo periculo trans fluctus ad insulam Siciliam volavit.

    [Footnote 2:  Adverb, see vocabulary.]

    [Footnote 3:  *manus ultima\, \_the finishing touch\_.  What literally?]*

    [Footnote 4:  Future perfect.  Translate by the present.]

**LESSON L**

THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN *IPSE* AND THE DEMONSTRATIVE *IDEM*

  [Special Vocabulary]

*corpus, corporis\, n., \_body\_ (corporal)* de:nsus, -a, -um\, *dense* *i:dem, e’adem, idem\, demonstrative pronoun, \_the same\_ (identity)* ipse, ipsa, ipsum\, intensive pronoun, *self; even, very* *mi:rus, -a, -um\, \_wonderful, marvelous\_ (miracle)* o:lim\, adv., *formerly, once upon a time* *pars, partis (-ium)\, f., \_part, region, direction\_* quoque\, adv., *also*.  Stands *after* the word which it emphasizes *so:l, so:lis\, m., \_sun\_ (solar)* ve:rus, -a, -um\, *true, real* (verity)

*de:beo:, de:be:re, de:bui:, de:bitus\, \_owe, ought\_ (debt)*e:ripio:, e:ripere, e:ripui:, e:reptus\, *snatch from*

*285.* *Ipse\ means \_-self\_ (\_him-self, her-self\_, etc.) or is translated by \_even\_ or \_very\_.  It is used to emphasize a noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, with which it agrees like an adjective.*

*a.* *Ipse\ must be carefully distinguished from the reflexive*sui\.  The latter is always used as a pronoun, while *ipse\ is  
    regularly adjective.  Compare*

      Homo se videt, *the man sees himself* (reflexive)  
      Homo ipse periculum videt,  
        *the man himself* (intensive) *sees the danger*  
      Homo ipsum periculum videt,  
        *the man sees the danger itself* (intensive)

*286.* Except for the one form *ipse\, the intensive pronoun is declined exactly like the nine irregular adjectives (cf.  Secs. 108, 109).  Learn the declension (Sec. 481).*

*287.* The demonstrative *idem\, meaning \_the same\_, is a compound of* is\.  It is declined as follows:

**Page 95**

SINGULAR
MASC. FEM. NEUT.
Nom. i:dem e’adem idem
Gen. eius’dem eius’dem eius’dem
Dat. ei:’dem ei:’dem ei:’dem
Acc. eun’dem ean’dem idem
Abl. eo:’dem ea:’dem eo:’dem

PLURAL  
Nom. ii:’dem eae’dem e’adem  
ei:’dem  
Gen. eo:run’dem ea:run’dem eo:run’dem  
Dat. ii:s’dem ii:s’dem ii:s’dem  
ei:s’dem ei:s’dem ei:s’dem  
Acc. eo:s’dem ea:s’dem e’adem  
Abl. ii:s’dem ii:s’dem ii:s’dem  
ei:s’dem ei:s’dem ei:s’dem

*a.* From forms like *eundem\ (eum + -dem),* eo:rundem\ (eo:rum  
+ -dem), we learn the rule that *m\ before* d\ is changed to *n\.*

*b.* The forms *ii:dem\,* ii:sdem\ are often spelled and pronounced  
with one *i:\.*

*288.* EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 295.

I. 1.  Ego et tu[1] in eadem urbe vivimus. 2.  Iter ipsum non timemus sed feras saevas quae in silva densa esse dicuntur. 3.  Olim nos ipsi idem iter fecimus. 4.  Eo tempore multas feras vidimus. 5.  Sed nobis non nocuerunt. 6.  Caesar ipse scutum de manibus militis eripuit et in ipsam aciem properavit. 7.  Itaque milites summa virtute tela in hostium corpora iecerunt. 8.  Romani quoque gravia vulnera acceperunt. 9.  Denique hostes terga verterunt et ommis in partis[2] fugerunt. 10.  Eadem hora litterae Romam ab imperatore ipso missae sunt. 11.  Eodem mense captivi quoque in Italiam missi sunt. 12.  Sed multi propter vulnera iter difficile trans montis facere recusabant et Genavae esse dicebantur.

II. 1.  At Pompeii there is a wonderful mountain. 2.  When I was in that place, I myself saw that mountain. 3.  On the same day many cities were destroyed by fire and stones from that very mountain. 4.  You have not heard the true story of that calamity, have you?[3] 5.  On that day the very sun could not give light to men. 6.  You yourself ought to tell (to) us that story.

    [Footnote 1:  Observe that in Latin we say *I and you*, not *you  
    and I*.]

    [Footnote 2:  Not *parts*, but *directions*.]

    [Footnote 3:  Cf.  Sec. 210.]

*289.* HOW HORATIUS HELD THE BRIDGE[4]

Tarquinius Superbus, septimus et ultimus rex Romanorum, ubi in exsilium ab iratis Romanis eiectus est, a Porsena, rege Etruscorum, auxilium petiit.  Mox Porsena magnis cum copiis Romam venit, et ipsa urbs summo in periculo erat.  Omnibus in partibus exercitus Romanus victus erat.  Iam rex montem Ianiculum[5] occupaverat.  Numquam antea Romani tanto metu tenebantur.  Ex agris in urbem properabant et summo studio urbem ipsam muniebant.

    [Footnote 4:  The story of Horatius has been made familiar by  
    Macaulay’s well-known poem “Horatius” in his *Lays of Ancient Rome*.   
    Read the poem in connection with this selection.]

**Page 96**

    [Footnote 5:  The Janiculum is a high hill across the Tiber from  
    Rome.]

**LESSON LI**

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS *HIC*, *ISTE*, *ILLE*

  [Special Vocabulary]

*hic, haec, hoc\, demonstrative pronoun, \_this\_ (of mine);  
    \_he, she, it\_*ille, illa, illud\, demonstrative pronoun *that* (yonder);  
    *he, she, it*  
  *invi:sus, -a, -um\, \_hateful, detested\_, with dative Cf.  Sec. 143*iste, ista, istud\, demonstrative pronoun, *that* (of yours);  
    *he, she, it*  
  *li:berta:s, -a:tis\, f., \_liberty\_*modus, -i:\, m., *measure; manner, way, mode*  
  *no:men, no:minis\, n., \_name\_ (nominate)*oculus, -i:\, m., *eye* (oculist)  
  *pri:stinus, -a, -um\, \_former, old-time\_ (pristine)*pu:blicus, -a, -um\, *public, belonging to the state;*  
    *re:s pu:blica, rei:  pu:blicae\, f., \_the commonwealth, the state,  
    the republic\_*vesti:gium, vesti:’gi:\, n., *footprint, track; trace, vestige*  
  *vo:x, vo:cis\, f., \_voice\_*

*290.* We have already learned the declension of the demonstrative pronoun *is\ and its use. (Cf.  Lesson XVII.) That pronoun refers to persons or things either far or near, and makes no definite reference to place or time.  If we wish to point out an object definitely in place or time, we must use* hic\, *iste\, or* ille\.  These demonstratives, like *is\, are used both as pronouns and as adjectives, and their relation to the speaker may be represented graphically thus:*

hic iste ille
SPEAKER ------------->-------------->--------------->
*this*, *he*; *that*, *he*; *that*, *he*
(near); (remote); (more remote)
*a.* In dialogue *hic\ refers to a person or thing near the speaker;* iste\, to a person or thing near the person addressed; *ille\, to a person or thing remote from both.  These distinctions are illustrated in the model sentences, Sec. 293, which should be carefully studied and imitated.*

\_291.\_ Hic\ is declined as follows:

SINGULAR
MASC. FEM. NEUT.
Nom. hic haec hoc
Gen. huius huius huius
Dat. huic huic huic
Acc. hunc hanc hoc
Abl. ho:c ha:c ho:c
PLURAL
Nom. hi: hae haec
Gen. ho:rum ha:rum ho:rum
Dat. hi:s hi:s hi:s
Acc. ho:s ha:s haec
Abl. hi:s hi:s hi:s

*a.* *Huius\ is pronounced \_h[oo]’y[oo]s\_, and* huic\ is pronounced  
    *h[oo]ic* (one syllable).

*292.* The demonstrative pronouns *iste\,* ista\, *istud\, and* ille\, *illa\,* illud\, except for the nominative and accusative singular neuter forms *istud\ and* illud\, are declined exactly like *ipse\,* ipsa\, *ipsum\. (See Sec. 481.)*

**Page 97**

*293.* MODEL SENTENCES

*Is this horse* (of mine) *strong?*  
    Estne hic equus validus?

*That horse* (of yours) *is strong, but that one* (yonder) *is weak*  
    Iste equus est validus, sed ille est infirmus

*Are these* (men by me) *your friends?*  
    Suntne hi amici tui?

*Those* (men by you) *are my friends,  
      but those* (men yonder) *are enemies*  
    Isti sunt amici mei, sed illi sunt inimici

*294.* EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 295.

I. *A German Chieftain addresses his Followers.* Ille fortis Germanorum dux suos convocavit et hoc modo animos eorum confirmavit.  “Vos, qui in his finibus vivitis, in hunc locum convocavi[1] quia mecum debetis istos agros et istas domos ab iniuriis Romanorum liberare.  Hoc nobis non difficile erit, quod illi hostes has silvas densas, feras saevas quarum vestigia vident, montes altos timent.  Si fortes erimus, dei ipsi nobis viam salutis demonstrabunt.  Ille sol, isti oculi calamitates nostras viderunt.[1] Itaque nomen illius rei publicae Romanae non solum nobis, sed etiam omnibus hominibus qui libertatem amant, est invisum.  Ad arma vos voco.  Exercete istam pristinam virtutem et vincetis.”

    [Footnote 1:  The perfect definite. (Cf.  Sec. 190.)]

II. 1.  Does that bird (of yours)[2] sing? 2.  This bird (of mine)[2] sings both[3] in summer and in winter and has a beautiful voice. 3.  Those birds (yonder)[2] in the country don’t sing in winter. 4.  Snatch a spear from the hands of that soldier (near you)[2] and come home with me. 5.  With those very eyes (of yours)[2] you will see the tracks of the hateful enemy who burned my dwelling and made an attack on my brother. 6.  For (propter) these deeds (res) we ought to inflict punishment on him without delay. 7.  The enemies of the republic do not always suffer punishment.

    [Footnote 2:  English words in parentheses are not to be translated.   
    They are inserted to show what demonstratives should be used.   
    (Cf.  Sec. 290.)]

    [Footnote 3:  *both ... and*, *et ... et\.]*

  [Illustration:  HORATIUS PONTEM DEFENDIT]

*295.* HOW HORATIUS HELD THE BRIDGE (*Continued*)

Altera urbis pars muris, altera flumine satis muniri videbatur.  Sed erat pons in flumine qui hostibus iter paene dedit.  Tum Horatius Cocles, fortis vir, magna voce dixit, “Rescindite pontem, Romani!  Brevi tempore Porsena in urbem copias suas traducet.”  Iam hostes in ponte erant, sed Horatius cum duobus (cf.  Sec. 479) comitibus ad extremam pontis partem properavit, et hi soli aciem hostium sustinuerunt.  Tum vero cives Romani pontem a tergo rescindere incipiunt, et hostes frustra Horatium superare temptant.

**LESSON LII**

**THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS**

**Page 98**

  [Special Vocabulary]

*incolumis, -e\, \_unharmed\_*ne:  ... quidem\, adv., *not even*.  The emphatic word stands between  
    *ne:\ and* quidem\  
  *nisi\, conj., \_unless, if ... not\_*paene\, adv., *almost* (pen-insula)  
  *satis\, adv., \_enough, sufficiently\_ (satisfaction)*tantus, -a, -um\, *so great*  
  *ve:ro:\, adv., \_truly, indeed, in fact\_.  As a conj. \_but, however\_,  
    usually stands second, never first.*

*de:cido:, de:cidere, de:cidi:, ——­\, \_fall down\_ (deciduous)* de:silio:, de:sili:re, de:silui:, de:sultus\, *leap down, dismount* *maneo:, mane:re, ma:nsi:, ma:nsu:rus\, \_remain\_* tra:du:co:, tra:du:cere, tra:du:xi:, tra:ductus\, *lead across*

*296.* The indefinite pronouns are used to refer to *some person* or *some thing*, without indicating which particular one is meant.  The pronouns *quis\ and* qui\, which we have learned in their interrogative and relative uses, may also be indefinite; and nearly all the other indefinite pronouns are compounds of *quis\ or* qui\ and declined almost like them.  Review the declension of these words, Secs. 221, 227.

*297.* Learn the declension and meaning of the following indefinites:

MASC.  FEM.  NEUT.  
quis quid, *some one, any one* (substantive)  
qui:  qua or quae quod, *some, any* (adjective), Sec. 483  
aliquis aliquid, *some one, any one*  
(substantive), Sec. 487  
aliqui:  aliqua aliquod, *some, any* (adjective), Sec. 487  
qui:dam quaedam quoddam, quiddam, *a certain,  
a certain one*, Sec. 485  
quisquam quicquam or quidquam (no plural), *any one*  
(at all) (substantive), Sec. 486  
quisque quidque, *each one, every one*  
(substantive), Sec. 484  
quisque quaeque quodque, *each, every* (adjective), Sec. 484

[Transcriber’s Note:   
In the original text, the combined forms (masculine/feminine) were  
printed in the “masculine” column.]

NOTE.  The meanings of the neuters, *something*, *etc*., are easily inferred from the masculine and feminine.

*a.* In the masculine and neuter singular of the indefinites,  
    quis-forms and quid-forms are mostly used as substantives,  
    qui-forms and quod-forms as adjectives.

*b.* The indefinites *quis\ and* qui\ never stand first in a clause, and are rare excepting after *si\,* nisi\, *ne:\,* num\ (as, si quis, *if any one*; si quid, *if anything*; nisi quis, *unless some one*).  Generally *aliquis\ and* aliqui\ are used instead.*c.* The forms *qua\ and* aliqua\ are both feminine nominative singular and neuter nominative plural of the indefinite adjectives *qui\*

***Page 99***

*and* aliqui\ respectively.  How do these differ from the corresponding forms of the relative *qui\?*\_d.\_ Observe that qui:dam\ (qui:  + -dam) is declined like *qui:\, except that in the accusative singular and genitive plural* m\ of *qui:\ becomes* n\ (cf.  Sec. 287.a):  *quendam\,* quandam\, *quorundam\,* quarundam\; also that the neuter has *quiddam\ (substantive) and* quoddam\ (adjective) in the nominative and accusative singular. *Qui:dam\ is the least indefinite of the indefinite pronouns, and implies that you could name the person or thing referred to if you cared to do so.*

    \_e.\_ Quisquam\ and *quisque\ (substantive) are declined like*quis\.

*f.* *Quisquam\, \_any one\_ (quicquam or quidquam, \_anything\_),  
    is always used substantively and chiefly in negative sentences.  The  
    corresponding adjective \_any\_ is* u:llus, -a, -um\ (Sec. 108).

*298.* EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 295.

I. 1.  Aliquis de ponte in flumen decidit sed sine ullo periculo servatus est. 2.  Est vero in vita cuiusque hominis aliqua bona fortuna. 3.  Ne militum quidem[1] quisquam in castris mansit. 4.  Si quem meae domi vides, iube eum discedere. 5.  Si quis pontem tenet, ne tantus quidem exercitus capere urbem potest. 6.  Urbs non satis munita erat et meridie rex quidam paene copias suas trans pontem traduxerat. 7.  Denique miles quidam armatus in fluctus desiluit et incolumis ad alteram ripam oculos vertit. 8.  Quisque illi forti militi aliquid dare debet. 9.  Tanta vero virtus Romanus semper placuit. 10.  Olim Corinthus erat urbs satis magna et paene par Romae ipsi; nunc vero moenia deciderunt et pauca vestigia urbis illius reperiri possunt. 11.  Quisque libertatem amat, et aliquibus vero nomen regis est invisum.

II. 1.  If you see a certain Cornelius at Corinth, send him to me. 2.  Almost all the soldiers who fell down into the waves were unharmed. 3.  Not even at Pompeii did I see so great a fire. 4.  I myself was eager to tell something to some one. 5.  Each one was praising his own work. 6.  Did you see some one in the country?  I did not see any one. 7.  Unless some one will remain on the bridge with Horatius, the commonwealth will be in the greatest danger.

    [Footnote 1:  Observe that *qui:dam\ and* quidem\ are different  
    words.]

*299.* HOW HORATIUS HELD THE BRIDGE (*Concluded*)

Mox, ubi parva pars pontis mansit, Horatius iussit comites discedere et solus mira constantia impetum illius totius exercitus sustinebat.  Denique magno fragore pons in flumen decidit.  Tum vero Horatius tergum vertit et armatus in aquas desiluit.  In eum hostes multa tela iecerunt; incolumis autem per fiuctus ad alteram ripam tranavit.  Ei propter tantas res gestas populus Romanus non solum alia magna praemia dedit sed etiam statuam Horati in loco publico posuit.

**Page 100**

\* \* \* \* \*

  Sixth Review, Lessons XLV-LII, Secs. 521-523

\* \* \* \* \*

**LESSON LIII**

**REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES**

  [Special Vocabulary]

*aquila, -ae\, f., \_eagle\_ (aquiline)*auda:x\, gen. *auda:cis\, adj., \_bold, audacious\_*celer, celeris, celere\, *swift, quick* (celerity).  Cf. *ve:lo:x\*explo:rato:r, -o:ris\, m., *scout, spy* (explorer)  
  *inge:ns\, gen.* ingentis\, adj., *huge, vast*  
  *medius, -a., -um\, \_middle, middle part of\_ (medium)*me:ns, mentis (-ium)\, f., *mind* (mental).  Cf. *animus\*opportu:nus, -a, -um\, *opportune*  
  *quam\, adv., \_than\_.  With the superlative* quam\ gives the force of  
    *as possible*, as *quam auda:cissimi:  viri:\, \_men as bold as  
    possible\_*recens\, gen. *recentis\, adj., \_recent\_*tam\, adv., *so*.  Always with an adjective or adverb, while *ita\ is  
    generally used with a verb*

*quaero:, quaerere, quaesi:vi:, quaesi:tus\, \_ask, inquire, seek\_  
    (question).  Cf.* peto:\

*300.* The quality denoted by an adjective may exist in either a higher or a lower degree, and this is expressed by a form of inflection called comparison.  The mere presence of the quality is expressed by the positive degree, its presence in a higher or lower degree by the comparative, and in the highest or lowest of all by the superlative.  In English the usual way of comparing an adjective is by using the suffix \_-er\_ for the comparative and \_-est\_ for the superlative; as, positive *high*, comparative *higher*, superlative *highest*.  Less frequently we use the adverbs *more* and *most*; as, positive *beautiful*, comparative *more beautiful*, superlative *most beautiful.*

In Latin, as in English, adjectives are compared by adding suffixes or by using adverbs.

*301.* Adjectives are compared by using suffixes as follows:

  POSITIVE COMPARATIVE SUPERLATIVE  
  cla:rus, -a, -um cla:rior, cla:ri:us cla:rissimus, -a, -um  
    (*bright*) (*brighter*) (*brightest*)  
    (BASE cla:r-)  
  brevis, breve brevior, brevius brevissimus, -a, -um  
    (*short*) (*shorter*) (*shortest*)  
    (BASE brev-)  
  ve:lo:x ve:lo:cior, ve:lo:cius ve:lo:cissimus, -a, -um  
    (*swift*) (*swifter*) (*swiftest*)  
    (BASE veloc-)

*a.* The comparative is formed from the base of the positive by  
    adding -ior masc. and fem., and -ius neut.; the superlative by  
    adding /-issimus, -issima, -issimum\.

*302.* Less frequently adjectives are compared by using the adverbs *magis\, \_more\_;* maxime:\, *most*; as, *ido:neus\, \_suitable\_;* magis ido:neus\, *more suitable*; *maxime:  ido:neus\, \_most suitable.\_*

**Page 101**

*303.* Declension of the Comparative.  Adjectives of the comparative degree are declined as follows:

SINGULAR PLURAL
MASC. AND FEM. NEUT. MASC. AND FEM. NEUT.
Nom. cla:rior cla:ri:us cla:ri:o:re:s cla:rio:ra
Gen. cla:rio:ris cla:rio:ris cla:rio:rum cla:rio:rum
Dat. cla:rio:ri: cla:rio:ri: cla:rio:ribus cla:rio:ribus
Acc. cla:rio:rem cla:rius cla:rio:re:s cla:rio:ra
Abl. cla:rio:re cla:rio:re cla:rio:ribus cla:rio:ribus

*a.* Observe that the endings are those of the consonant stems of  
    the third declension.

*b.* Compare *longus\, \_long\_;* fortis\, *brave*; *recens\ (base,  
    recent-), \_recent\_; and decline the comparative of each.*

*304.* Adjectives in -er form the comparative regularly, but the superlative is formed by adding -rimus, -a, -um to the nominative masculine of the positive; as,

  POSITIVE COMPARATIVE SUPERLATIVE  
  a:cer, a:cris, a:cre a:crior, a:crius a:cerrimus, -a, -um  
    (BASE acr-)  
  pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum pulchrior, pulchrius pulcherrimus,  
    (BASE pulchr-) -a, -um  
  li:ber, li:bera, li:berum li:berior, li:berius li:berrimus, -a, -um  
    (BASE li:ber-)

*a.* In a similar manner compare *miser\,* aeger\, *creber\.*

*305.* The comparative is often translated by *quite, too*, or *somewhat*, and the superlative by *very*; as, *altior\, \_quite\_ (\_too, somewhat\_) \_high\_;* altissimus\, *very high.*

*306.* EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 296.

I. 1.  Quid exploratores quaerebant?  Exploratores tempus opportfuissimum itineri quaerebant. 2.  Media in silva ignis quam creberrimos fecimus, quod feras tam audacis numquam antea videramus. 3.  Antiquis temporibus Germani erant fortiores quam Galli. 4.  Caesar erat clarior quam inimici[1] qui eum necaverunt. 5.  Quisque scutum ingens et pilum longius gerebat. 6.  Apud barbaros Germani erant audacissimi et fortissimi. 7.  Mens hominum est celerior quam corpus. 8.  Viri aliquarum terrarum sunt miserrimi. 9.  Corpora Germanorum erant ingentiora quam Romanorum. 10.  Acerrimi Gallorum principes sine ulla mora trans flumen quoddam equos velocissimos traduxerunt. 11.  Aestate dies sunt longiores quam hieme. 12.  Imperator quidam ab exploratoribus de recenti adventu navium longarum quaesivit.

II. 1.  Of all birds the eagle is the swiftest. 2.  Certain animals are swifter than the swiftest horse. 3.  The Roman name was most hateful to the enemies of the commonwealth. 4.  The Romans always inflicted the severest[2] punishment on faithless allies. 5.  I was quite ill, and so I hastened from the city to the country. 6.  Marcus had some friends dearer than Caesar.[3] 7.  Did you not seek a more recent report concerning the battle? 8.  Not even after a victory so opportune did he seek the general’s friendship.

**Page 102**

    [Footnote 1:  Why is this word used instead of *hostes\?]*

    [Footnote 2:  Use the superlative of *gravis\.]*

    [Footnote 3:  Accusative.  In a comparison the noun after *quam\ is in  
    the same case as the one before it.]*

N.B.  Beginning at this point, the selections for reading will be found near the end of the volume. (See p. 197.)

**LESSON LIV**

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES  
THE ABLATIVE WITH COMPARATIVES WITHOUT *QUAM*

  [Special Vocabulary]

*alacer, alacris, alacre\, \_eager, spirited, excited\_ (alacrity)*celerita:s, -a:tis\, f., *speed* (celerity)  
  *cla:mor, cla:mo:ris\, m., \_shout, clamor\_*le:nis, le:ne\, *mild, gentle* (lenient)  
  *mulier, muli’eris\, f., \_woman\_*multitu:do:, multitu:dinis\, f., *multitude*  
  *ne:mo\, dat.* ne:mini:\, acc. *ne:minem\ (gen.* nu:lli:us\, abl.  
    *nu:llo:\, from* nu:llus\), no plur., m. and f., *no one*  
  *no:bilis, no:bile\, \_well known, noble\_*noctu:\, adv. (an old abl.), *by night* (nocturnal)  
  *statim\, adv., \_immediately, at once\_*subito:\, adv., *suddenly*  
  *tardus, -a, -um\, \_slow\_ (tardy)*cupio:, cupere, cupi:vi:, cupi:tus\, *desire, wish* (cupidity)

*307.* The following six adjectives in -lis form the comparative regularly; but the superlative is formed by adding -limus to the base of the positive.  Learn the meanings and comparison.

POSITIVE COMPARATIVE SUPERLATIVE facilis, -e, *easy* facilior, -ius facillimus, -a, -um difficilis, -e, *hard* difficilior, -ius difficillimus, -a, -um similis, -e, *like* similior, -ius simillimus, -a, -um dissimilis, -e, *unlike* dissimilior, -ius dissimillimus, -a, -um gracilis, -e, *slender* gracilior, -ius gracillimus, -a, -um humilis, -e, *low* humilior, -ius humillimus, -a, -um

*308.* From the knowledge gained in the preceding lesson we should translate the sentence *Nothing is brighter than the sun*

  Nihil est clarius quam sol

But the Romans, especially in negative sentences, often expressed the comparison in this way,

  Nihil est clarius sole

which, literally translated, is *Nothing is brighter away from the sun*; that is, *starting from the sun as a standard, nothing is brighter*.  This relation is expressed by the separative ablative *sole\.  Hence the rule*

*309.* RULE.  Ablative with Comparatives. *The comparative degree, if /quam\ is omitted, is followed by the separative ablative.*

*310.* EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 296.

**Page 103**

I. 1.  Nemo milites alacriores Romanis vidit. 2.  Statim imperator iussit nuntios quam celerrimos litteras Romam portare. 3.  Multa flumina sunt leniora Rheno. 4.  Apud Romanos quis erat clarior Caesare? 5.  Nihil pulchrius urbe Roma vidi. 6.  Subito multitudo audacissima magno clamore proelium acrius commisit. 7.  Num est equus tuus tardus?  Non vero tardus, sed celerior aquila. 8.  Ubi Romae fui, nemo erat mihi amicior Sexto. 9.  Quaedam mulieres cibum militibus dare cupiverunt. 10.  Rex vetuit civis ex urbe noctu discedere. 11.  Ille puer est gracilior hac muliere. 12.  Explorator duas (*two*) vias, alteram facilem, alteram difficiliorem, demonstravit.

II. 1.  What city have you seen more beautiful than Rome? 2.  The Gauls were not more eager than the Germans. 3.  The eagle is not slower than the horse. 4.  The spirited woman did not fear to make the journey by night. 5.  The mind of the multitude was quite gentle and friendly. 6.  But the king’s mind was very different. 7.  The king was not like (similar to) his noble father. 8.  These hills are lower than the huge mountains of our territory.

  [Illustration:  ARMA ROMANA]

**LESSON LV**

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (*Continued*)

  [Special Vocabulary]

*aedificium, aedifi’ci:\, n., \_building, dwelling\_ (edifice)*imperium, impe’ri:\, n., *command, chief power; empire*  
  *mors, mortis (-ium)\, f., \_death\_ (mortal)*reliquus, -a, -um\, *remaining, rest of*.  As a noun, m. and n. plur.,  
    *the rest* (relic)  
  *scelus, sceleris\, n., \_crime\_*servitu:s, -u:tis\, f., *slavery* (servitude)  
  *valle:s, vallis (-ium)\, f., \_valley\_*

*abdo:, abdere, abdidi:, abditus\, \_hide\_*contendo:, contendere, contendi:, contentus\, *strain, struggle;  
    hasten* (contend)  
  *occi:do:, occi:dere, occi:di:, occi:sus\, \_cut down, kill\_.  Cf.*neco:\, *interficio:\*perterreo:, perterre:re, perterrui:, perterritus\, *terrify,  
    frighten*  
  *recipio:, recipere, rece:pi:, receptus\, \_receive, recover\_;*se:  recipere\, *betake one’s self, withdraw, retreat*  
  *tra:do:, tra:dere, tra:didi:, tra:ditus\, \_give over, surrender,  
    deliver\_ (traitor)*

*311.* Some adjectives in English have irregular comparison, as *good, better, best*; *many, more, most.* So Latin comparison presents some irregularities.  Among the adjectives that are compared irregularly are

POSITIVE COMPARATIVE SUPERLATIVE bonus, -a, -um, *good* melior, melius optimus, -a, -um magnus, -a, -um, *great* maior, maius maximus, -a, -um malus, -a, -um, *bad* peior, peius pessimus, -a, -um multus, -a, -um, *much* ——­, plu:s plu:rimus, -a, -um multi:, -ae, -a, *many* plu:re:s, plu:ra plu:rimi:, -ae, -a parvus, -a, -um, *small* minor, minus minimus, -a, -um

*312.* The following four adjectives have two superlatives.  Unusual forms are placed in parentheses.

**Page 104**

  exterus, -a, -um, (exterior, -ius, { extre:mus, -a, -um }  
    *outward* *outer*) {(extimus, -a, -um) }  
            
                                      *outermost, last*  
  i:nferus, -a, -um, i:nferior, -ius, { i:nfimus, -a, -um }  
    *low* *lower* { i:mus, -a, -um }  
            
                                      *lowest*  
  posterus, -a, -um, (posterior, -ius, { postre:mus, -a, -um }  
    *next* *later*) {(postumus, -a, -um) }  
            
                                      *last*  
  superus, -a, -um, superior, -ius { supre:mus, -a, -um }  
    *above* *higher* { summus, -a, -um }  
            
                                      *highest*

*313.* *Plu:s\, \_more\_ (plural \_more, many, several\_), is declined as follows:*

SINGULAR PLURAL
MASC. AND FEM. NEUT. MASC. AND FEM. NEUT.
Nom. ——­ plu:s plu:re:s plu:ra
Gen. ——­ plu:ris plu:rium plu:rium
Dat. ——­ ——­ plu:ribus plu:ribus
Acc. ——­ plu:s plu:ri:s, -e:s plu:ra
Abl. ——­ plu:re plu:ribus plu:ribus

*a.* In the singular *plu:s\ is used only as a neuter substantive.*

*314.* EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 296.

I. 1.  Reliqui hostes, qui a dextro cornu proelium commiserant, de superiore loco fugerunt et sese in silvam maximam receperunt. 2.  In extrema parte silvae castra hostium posita erant. 3.  Plurimi captivi ab equitibus ad Caesarem ducti sunt. 4.  Caesar vero iussit eos in servitutem tradi. 5.  Postero die magna multitudo mulierum ab Romanis in valle ima reperta est. 6.  Hae mulieres maxime perterritae adventu Caesaris sese occidere studebant. 7.  Eae quoque pluris fabulas de exercitus Romani sceleribus audiverant. 8.  Fama illorum militum optima non erat. 9.  In barbarorum aedificiis maior copia frumenti reperta est. 10.  Nemo crebris proeliis contendere sine aliquo periculo potest.

II. 1.  The remaining women fled from their dwellings and hid themselves. 2.  They were terrified and did not wish to be captured and given over into slavery. 3.  Nothing can be worse than slavery. 4.  Slavery is worse than death. 5.  In the Roman empire a great many were killed because they refused to be slaves. 6.  To surrender the fatherland is the worst crime.

**LESSON LVI**

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (*Concluded*)  
ABLATIVE OF THE MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE

  [Special Vocabulary]

*aditus, -u:s\, m., \_approach, access; entrance\_*ci:vita:s, ci:vita:tis\, f., *citizenship; body of citizens, state*  
    (city)  
  *inter\, prep, with acc., \_between, among\_ (interstate commerce)*nam\, conj., *for*  
  *obses, obsidis\, m. and f., \_hostage\_*paulo:\, adv. (abl. n. of *paulus\), \_by a little, somewhat\_*

**Page 105**

*incolo:, incolere, incolui:, —­\, transitive, \_inhabit\_;  
    intransitive, \_dwell\_.  Cf.* habito:\, *vi:vo:\*relinquo:, relinquere, reli:qui:, relictus\, *leave, abandon*  
    (relinquish)  
  *statuo:, statuere, statui:, statu:tus\, \_fix, decide\_ (statute),  
    usually with infin.*

*315.* The following adjectives are irregular in the formation of the superlative and have no positive.  Forms rarely used are in parentheses.

COMPARATIVE SUPERLATIVE citerior, *hither* (citimus, *hithermost*) interior, *inner* (intimus, *inmost*) prior, *former* pri:mus, *first* propior, *nearer* proximus, *next, nearest* ulterior, *further* ultimus, *furthest*

*316.* In the sentence *Galba is a head taller than Sextus*, the phrase *a head taller* expresses the *measure of difference\ in height between Galba and Sextus.  The Latin form of expression would be \_Galba is taller than Sextus* by a head\\_.  This is clearly an ablative relation, and the construction is called the *ablative of the measure of difference\.*

**EXAMPLES**

  Galba est altior capite quam Sextus  
    *Galba is a head taller* (taller by a head) *than Sextus*.   
  Illud iter ad Italiam est multo brevius  
    *That route to Italy is much shorter* (shorter by much)

*317.* RULE.  Ablative of the Measure of Difference. *With comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the measure of difference.*

*a.* Especially common in this construction are the neuter ablatives

  eo:, *by this, by that* nihilo:,[1] *by nothing*  
  ho:c, *by this* paulo:, *by a little*  
  multo:, *by much*

    [Footnote 1:  *nihil\ was originally* nihilum\ and declined like  
    *pilum\.  There is no plural.]*

*318.* EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 297.

I. 1.  Barbari proelium committere statuerunt eo magis quod Romani infirmi esse videbantur. 2.  Meum consilium est multo melius quam tuum quia multo facilius est. 3.  Haec via est multo latior quam illa. 4.  Barbari erant nihilo tardiores quam Romani. 5.  Tuus equus est paulo celerior quam meus. 6.  Ii qui paulo fortiores erant prohibuerunt reliquos aditum relinquere. 7.  Inter illas civitates Germania milites habet optimos. 8.  Propior via quae per hanc vallem ducit est inter portum et lacum. 9.  Servi, qui agros citeriores incolebant, priores dominos relinquere non cupiverunt, quod eos amabant. 10.  Ultimae Germaniae partes numquam in fidem Romanorum venerunt. 11.  Nam trans Rhenum aditus erat multo difficilior exercitui Romano.

**Page 106**

II. 1.  Another way much more difficult (more difficult by much) was left through hither Gaul. 2.  In ancient times no state was stronger than the Roman empire. 3.  The states of further Gaul did not wish to give hostages to Caesar. 4.  Slavery is no better (better by nothing) than death. 5.  The best citizens are not loved by the worst. 6.  The active enemy immediately withdrew into the nearest forest, for they were terrified by Caesar’s recent victories.

**LESSON LVII**

**FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS**

  [Special Vocabulary]

*aequus, -a, -um\, \_even, level; equal\_*cohors, cohortis (-ium)\, f., *cohort*, a tenth part of a legion,  
    about 360 men  
  *curro:, currere, cucurri:, cursus\, \_run\_ (course)*difficulta:s, -a:tis\, f., *difficulty*  
  *fossa, -ae\, f., \_ditch\_ (fosse)*ge:ns, gentis (-ium)\, f., *race, tribe, nation* (Gentile)  
  *nego:tium, nego:ti:\, n., \_business, affair, matter\_ (negotiate)*regio:, -o:nis\, f., *region, district*  
  *ru:mor, ru:mo:ris\, m., \_rumor, report\_.  Cf.* fa:ma\  
  *simul atque\, conj., \_as soon as\_*

*suscipio:, suscipere, susce:pi:, susceptus\, \_undertake\_*traho:, trahere, tra:xi:, tra:ctus\, *drag, draw* (ex-tract)  
  *valeo:, vale:re, valui:, valitu:rus\, \_be strong\_; plu:rimum vale:re,  
    \_to be most powerful, have great influence\_ (value).  Cf. validus*

*319.* Adverbs are generally derived from adjectives, as in English (e.g. adj. *sweet*, adv. *sweetly*).  Like adjectives, they can be compared; but they have no declension.

*320.* Adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declensions are formed and compared as follows:

POSITIVE COMPARATIVE SUPERLATIVE
*Adj.* ca:rus, *dear* ca:rior ca:rissimus
*Adv.* ca:re:, *dearly* ca:rius ca:rissime:
*Adj.* pulcher, *beautiful* pulchrior pulcherrimus
*Adv.* pulchre:, *beautifully* pulchrius pulcherrime:
*Adj.* li:ber, *free* li:berior li:berrimus
*Adv.* li:bere:, *freely* li:berius li:berrime:

*a.* The positive of the adverb is formed by adding -e:  to the base  
    of the positive of the adjective.  The superlative of the adverb is  
    formed from the superlative of the adjective in the same way.

*b.* The comparative of any adverb is the neuter accusative singular  
    of the comparative of the adjective.

*321.* Adverbs derived from adjectives of the third declension are formed like those described above in the comparative and superlative.  The positive is usually formed by adding -iter to the base of adjectives of three endings or of two endings, and -ter to the base of those of one ending;[1] as,

**Page 107**

POSITIVE COMPARATIVE SUPERLATIVE
*Adj.* fortis, *brave* fortior fortissimus
*Adv.* fortiter, *bravely* fortius fortissime:
*Adj.* auda:x, *bold* auda:cior auda:cissimus
*Adv.* auda:cter, *boldly* auda:cius auda:cissime:

[Footnote 1:  This is a good working rule, though there are some  
exceptions to it.]

*322.* Case Forms as Adverbs.  As we learned above, the neuter accusative of comparatives is used adverbially.  So in the positive or superlative some adjectives, instead of following the usual formation, use the accusative or the ablative singular neuter adverbially; as,

*Adj.* facilis, *easy* pri:mus, *first  
Adv.* facile (acc.), *easily* pri:mum (acc.), *first*  
pri:mo:  (abl.), *at first  
Adj.* multus, *many* plu:rimus, *most  
Adv.* multum (acc.), *much* plu:rimum (acc.), *most*  
multo:  (abl.), *by much*

*323.* Learn the following irregular comparisons:

bene, *well* melius, *better* optime:, *best* diu:, *long* (time) diu:tius, *longer* diu:tissime:, *longest* magnopere, *greatly* magis, *more* maxime:, *most* parum, *little* minus, *less* minime:, *least* prope, *nearly, near* propius, *nearer* proxime:, *nearest* saepe, *often* saepius, *oftener* saepissime:, *oftenest*

*324.* Form adverbs from the following adjectives, using the regular rules, and compare them:  *laetus\,* superbus\, *molestus\,* amicus\, *acer\,* brevis\, *gravis\,* recens\.

*325.* RULE.  Adverbs. *Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs.*

*326.* EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 297.

I. 1.  Nulla res melius gesta est quam proelium illud[2] ubi Marius multo minore exercitu multo maiores copias Germanorum in fugam dedit. 2.  Audacter in Romanorum cohortis hostes impetus fecerunt 3.  Marius autem omnes hos fortissime sustinuit. 4.  Barbari nihilo fortiores erant quam Romani. 5.  Primo barbari esse superiores videbantur, tum Romani acrius contenderunt. 6.  Denique, ubi iam diutissime paene aequo proelio pugnatum est, barbari fugam petierunt. 7.  Quaedam Germanorum gentes, simul atque rumorem illius calamitatis audiverunt, sese in ultimis regionibus finium suorum abdiderunt. 8.  Romani saepius quam hostes vicerunt, quod meliora arma habebant. 9.  Inter omnis gentis Romani plurimum valebant. 10.  Hae cohortes simul atque in aequiorem regionem se receperunt, castra sine ulla difficultate posuerunt.

II. 1.  Some nations are easily overcome by their enemies. 2.  Germany is much larger than Gaul. 3.  Were not the Romans the most powerful among the tribes of Italy? 4.  On account of (his) wounds the soldier dragged his body from the ditch with the greatest difficulty. 5.  He was able neither to run nor to fight. 6.  Who saved him?  A certain horseman boldly undertook the matter. 7.  The rumors concerning the soldier’s death were not true.

**Page 108**

    [Footnote 2:  *ille\ standing after its noun means \_that well-known,  
    that famous\_.]*

**LESSON LVIII**

**NUMERALS :  THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE**

  [Special Vocabulary]

*commea:tus, -u:s\, m.. \_provisions\_* la:titu:do:, -inis\, f., *width* (latitude) *longitu:do:, -inis\, f., \_length\_ (longitude)* magnitu:do:, -inis\, f., *size, magnitude* *merca:tor, merca:to:ris\, m., \_trader, merchant\_* mu:ni:tio:, -o:nis\, f., *fortification* (munition) *spatium, spati:\, n., \_room, space, distance; time\_*

  cogno:sco:, cogno:scere, cogno:vi:, cognitus\, *learn*;  
    in the perfect tenses, *know* (re-cognize)  
  *co:go:, co:gere, coe:gi:, coa:ctus\, \_collect; compel\_ (cogent)*de:fendo:, de:fendere, de:fendi:, de:fe:nsus\, *defend*  
  *incendo:, incendere, incendi:, ince:nsus\, \_set fire to, burn\_  
    (incendiary).  Cf.* cremo:\  
  *obtineo:, obtine:re, obtinui:, obtentus\, \_possess, occupy, hold\_  
    (obtain)*pervenio:, perveni:re, perve:ni:, perventus\, *come through, arrive*

*327.* The Latin numeral adjectives may be classified as follows:

  1. *Cardinal Numerals\, answering the question \_how many?\_ as,*u:nus\, *one*; *duo\, \_two\_; etc.*

  2. *Ordinal Numerals\, derived in most cases from the cardinals and  
  answering the question \_in what order?\_ as,* pri:mus\, *first*;  
  *secundus\, \_second\_; etc.*

  3. *Distributive Numerals\, answering the question \_how many at a  
  time?\_ as,* singuli:\, *one at a time*.

*328.* The Cardinal Numerals.  The first twenty of the cardinals are as follows:

1, u:nus 6, sex 11, u:ndecim 16, se:decim 2, duo 7, septem 12, duodecim 17, septendecim 3, tre:s 8, octo:  13, tredecim 18, duode:vi:ginti:  4, quattuor 9, novem 14, quattuordecim 19, u:nde:vi:ginti:  5, qui:nque 10, decem 15, qui:ndecim 20, vi:ginti:

*a.* Learn also *centum\ = 100,* ducenti:\ = 200, *mi:lle\ = 1000.*

*329.* Declension of the Cardinals.  Of the cardinals only *u:nus\,* duo\, *tre:s\, the hundreds above one hundred, and* mi:lle\ used as a noun, are declinable.

*a.* *u:nus\ is one of the nine irregular adjectives, and is declined like* nu:llus\ (cf.  Secs. 109, 470).  The plural of *u:nus\ is used to agree with a plural noun of a singular meaning, as,* u:na castra\, *one camp*; and with other nouns in the sense of *only*, as, *Galli u:ni\, \_only the Gauls\_.*

    \_b.\_ Learn the declension of duo\, *two*; *tre:s\, \_three\_; and*mi:lle\, *a thousand*. (Sec. 479.)

**Page 109**

*c.* The hundreds above one hundred are declined like the plural of  
    *bonus\; as,*

      ducenti:, -ae, -a  
      ducento:rum, -a:rum, -o:rum  
        *etc*. *etc*. *etc*.

*330.* We have already become familiar with sentences like the following:

  Omnium avium aquila est velocissima  
    *Of all birds the eagle is the swiftest*  
  Hoc oraculum erat omnium clarissimum  
    *This oracle was the most famous of all*

In such sentences the genitive denotes the whole, and the word it modifies denotes a part of that whole.  Such a genitive, denoting the whole of which a part is taken, is called a *partitive genitive\.*

*331.* RULE.  Partitive Genitive. *Words denoting a part are often used with the genitive of the whole, known as the /partitive genitive\.*

*a.* Words denoting a part are especially pronouns, numerals, and other adjectives.  But cardinal numbers excepting *mille\ regularly take the ablative with* ex\ or *de\ instead of the partitive genitive.*\_b.\_ Mille\, *a thousand*, in the singular is usually an indeclinable adjective (as, *mille milites\, \_a thousand soldiers\_), but in the plural it is a declinable noun and takes the partitive genitive (as,* decem milia militum\, *ten thousand soldiers*).

EXAMPLES:

  Fortissimi horum sunt Germani  
    *The bravest of these are the Germans*  
  Decem milia hostium interfecta sunt  
    *Ten thousand* (lit. *thousands*) *of the enemy were slain*  
  Una ex captivis erat soror regis  
    *One of the captives was the king’s sister*

*332.* EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 297.

I. 1.  Caesar maximam partem aedificiorum incendit. 2.  Magna pars munitionis aqua fluminis deleta est. 3.  Galli huius regionis quinque milia hominum coegerant. 4.  Duo ex meis fratribus eundem rumorem audiverunt. 5.  Quis Romanorum erat clarior Caesare? 6.  Quinque cohortes ex illa legione castra quam fortissime defendebant. 7.  Hic locus aberat aequo spatio[1] ab castris Caesaris et castris Germanorum. 8.  Caesar simul atque pervenit, plus commeatus ab sociis postulavit. 9.  Nonne mercatores magnitudinem insulae cognoverant?  Longitudinem sed non latitudinem cognoverant. 10.  Pauci hostium obtinebant collem quem exploratores nostri viderunt.

II. 1.  I have two brothers, and one of them lives at Rome. 2.  Caesar stormed that very town with three legions. 3.  In one hour he destroyed a great part of the fortification. 4.  When the enemy could no longer[2] defend the gates, they retreated to a hill which was not far distant.[3] 5.  There three thousand of them bravely resisted the Romans.[4]

    [Footnote 1:  Ablative of the measure of difference.]

**Page 110**

    [Footnote 2:  Not *longius\.  Why?]*

    [Footnote 3:  Latin, *was distant by a small space.*]

    [Footnote 4:  Not the accusative.]

**LESSON LIX**

NUMERALS (*Continued*) :  THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT

  [Special Vocabulary]

*agmen, agminis\, n., \_line of march, column\_;*pri:mum agmen\, *the van*;  
    *novissimum agmen\, \_the rear\_*atque\, *ac\, conj., \_and\_;* atque\ is used before vowels and  
    consonants, *ac\ before consonants only.  Cf.* et\ and /-que\  
  *concilium, conci’li:\, n., \_council, assembly\_*Helve:tii:, -o:rum\, m., *the Helvetii*, a Gallic tribe  
  *passus, passu:s\, m., \_a pace\_, five Roman feet;*mi:lle passuum\, *a thousand (of) paces*, a Roman mile  
  *qua:  de:  causa:\, \_for this reason, for what reason\_*va:llum, -i:\, n., *earth-works, rampart*

*cado:, cadere, cecidi:, ca:su:rus\, \_fall\_ (decadence)*de:do:, de:dere, de:didi:, de:ditus\, *surrender, give up*;  
    with a reflexive pronoun, *surrender one’s self, submit*, with the  
    dative of the indirect object  
  *premo:, premere, pressi:, pressus\, \_press hard, harass\_*vexo:, vexa:re, vexa:vi:, vexa:tus\, *annoy, ravage* (vex)

*333.* Learn the first twenty of the ordinal numerals (Sec. 478).  The ordinals are all declined like *bonus\.*

*334.* The distributive numerals are declined like the plural of *bonus\.  The first three are*

    singuli:, -ae, -a, *one each, one by one*  
    bi:ni:, -ae, -a, *two each, two by two*  
    terni:, -ae, -a, *three each, three by three*

*335.* We have learned that, besides its use as object, the accusative is used to express space relations not covered by the ablative.  We have had such expressions as *per plurimos annos\, \_for a great many years\_;* per totum diem\, *for a whole day*.  Here the space relation is one of *extent of time*.  We could also say *per decem pedes\, \_for ten feet\_, where the space relation is one of \_extent of space\_.  While this is correct Latin, the usual form is to use the accusative with no preposition, as,*

  Vir totum diem cucurrit, *the man ran for a whole day*  
  Caesar murum decem pedes movit, *Caesar moved the wall ten feet*

*336.* RULE.  Accusative of Extent. *Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.*

*a.* This accusative answers the questions *how long? how far?*

*b.* Distinguish carefully between the accusative of time *how long*  
    and the ablative of time *when*, or *within which.*

Select the accusatives of time and space and the ablatives of time in the following:

**Page 111**

When did the general arrive?  He arrived at two o’clock.  How long had he been marching?  For four days.  How far did he march?  He marched sixty-five miles.  Where has he pitched his camp?  Three miles from the river, and he will remain there several days.  The wall around the camp is ten feet high.  When did the war begin?  In the first year after the king’s death.

*337.* EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 298.

I. *Caesar in Gaul*.  Caesar bellum in Gallia septem annos gessit.  Primo anno Helvetios vicit, et eodem anno multae Germanorum gentes ei sese dediderunt.  Multos iam annos Germani Gallos vexabant[1] et duces Germani copias suas trans Rhenum saepe traducebant.[1] Non singuli veniebant, sed multa milia hominum in Galliam contendebant.  Qua de causa principes Galliae concilium convocaverunt atque statuerunt legates ad Caesarem mittere.  Caesar, simul atque hunc rumorem audivit, copias suas sine mora coegit.  Prima luce fortiter cum Germanis proelium commisit.  Totum diem acriter pugnatum est.  Caesar ipse a dextro cornu acicm duxit.  Magna pars exercitus Germani cecidit.  Post magnam caedem pauci multa milia passuum ad flumen fugerunt.

II. 1.  Caesar pitched camp two miles from the river. 2.  He fortified the camp with a ditch fifteen feet wide and a rampart nine feet high. 3.  The camp of the enemy was a great way off (was distant by a great space). 4.  On the next day he hastened ten miles in three hours. 5.  Suddenly the enemy with all their forces made an attack upon (*in\ \_with acc.\_) the rear. 6.  For two hours the Romans were hard pressed by the barbarians. 7.  In three hours the barbarians were fleeing.*

    [Footnote 1:  Translate as if pluperfect.]

**LESSON LX**

**DEPONENT VERBS**

  [Special Vocabulary]

*aut\, conj., \_or\_;* aut ... aut\, *either ... or*  
  *causa:\, abl. of* causa\, *for the sake of, because of*.  Always  
    stands *after* the gen. which modifies it  
  *fere:\, adv., \_nearly, almost\_*opi:nio:, -o:nis\, f., *opinion, supposition, expectation*  
  *re:s fru:menta:ria, rei:  fru:menta:riae\, f. (lit. \_the grain  
    affair\_), \_grain supply\_*timor, -o:ris\, m., *fear*.  Cf. *timeo:\*undique\, adv., *from all sides*

*co:nor, co:na:ri:, co:na:tus sum\, \_attempt, try\_*e:gredior, e:gredi:, e:gressus sum\, *move out, disembark*;  
    *pro:gredior\, \_move forward, advance\_ (egress, progress)*moror, mora:ri:, mora:tus sum\, *delay*  
  *orior, oriri:, ortus sum\, \_arise, spring; begin; be born\_ (\_from\_)  
    (origin)*profici:scor, profici:sci:, profectus sum\, *set out*  
  *revertor, reverti:, reversus sum\, \_return\_ (revert).  The forms of  
    this verb are usually active,*

***Page 112***

*and not deponent, in the perfect  
    system.  Perf. act.,* reverti:\  
  *sequor, sequi:, secu:tus sum\, \_follow\_ (sequence).  Note the  
    following compounds of* sequor\ and the force of the different  
    prefixes:   
    *co:nsequor\ (\_follow with\_), \_overtake\_;*i:nsequor\ (*follow against*), *pursue*;  
    *subsequor\ (\_follow under\_), \_follow close after\_*

*338.* A number of verbs are passive in form but active in meaning; as, *hortor\, \_I encourage\_;* vereor\, *I fear*.  Such verbs are called *deponent\ because they have laid aside (*de-ponere\, *to lay aside*) the active forms.

*a.* Besides having all the forms of the passive, deponent verbs  
have also the future active infinitive and a few other active forms  
which will be noted later. (SecSecs. 375, 403.b.)

*339.* The principal parts of deponents are of course passive in form, as,

Conj.  I hortor, hortari:, hortatus sum, *encourage*  
Conj.  II vereor, vere:ri:, veritus sum, *fear*  
Conj.  III (*a*) sequor, sequi:, secu:tus sum, *follow*  
(*b*) patior, pati:, passus sum, *suffer, allow*  
Conj.  IV partior, parti:ri:, parti:tus sum, *share, divide*

Learn the synopses of these verbs. (See Sec. 493.) *Patior\ is conjugated like the passive of* capio\ (Sec. 492).

*340.* PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE

The prepositions with the accusative that occur most frequently are

ante, *before* apud, *among* circum, *around* contra:, *against, contrary to* extra:, *outside of* in, *into, in, against, upon* inter, *between, among* intra:, *within* ob, *on account of* (quam ob rem, *wherefore, therefore*) per, *through, by means of* post, *after, behind* propter, *on account of, because of* tra:ns, *across, over*

*a.* Most of these you have had before.  Review the old ones and  
    learn the new ones.  Review the list of prepositions governing the  
    ablative, Sec. 209.

*341.* EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 298.

I. 1.  Tres ex legatis, contra Caesaris opinionem, iter facere per hostium finis verebantur. 2.  Quis eos hortatus est?  Imperator eos hortatus est et iis persuadere conatus est, sed non potuit. 3.  Quid legatos perterruit?  Aut timor hostium, qui undique premebant, aut longitudo viae eos perterruit. 4.  Tamen omnes fere Caesarem multo magis quam hostis veriti sunt. 5.  Fortissimae gentes Galliae ex Germanis oriebantur. 6.  Quam ob rem tam fortes erant?  Quia nec vinum nec alia quae virtutem delent ad se portari patiebantur. 7.  Caesar ex mercatoribus de insula Britannia quaesivit, sed nihil cognoscere potuit. 8.  Itaque ipse statuit hanc terram petere, et media fere aestate cum multis navibus longis profectus est. 9.  Magna celeritate iter confecit et in opportunissimo loco egressus est. 10.  Barbari summis viribus eum ab insula prohibere conati sunt. 11.  Ille autem barbaros multa milia passuum insecutus est; tamen sine equitatu eos consequi non potuit.

**Page 113**

II. 1.  Contrary to our expectation, the enemy fled and the cavalry followed close after them. 2.  From all parts of the multitude the shouts arose of those who were being wounded. 3.  Caesar did not allow the cavalry to pursue too far.[1] 4.  The cavalry set out at the first hour and was returning[2] to camp at the fourth hour. 5.  Around the Roman camp was a rampart twelve feet high. 6.  Caesar will delay three days because of the grain supply. 7.  Nearly all the lieutenants feared the enemy and attempted to delay the march.

    [Footnote 1:  Comparative of *longe\.]*

    [Footnote 2:  Will this be a deponent or an active form?]

\* \* \* \* \*

  Seventh Review, Lessons LIII-LX, Secs. 524-526

\* \* \* \* \*

  [Illustration]

**PART III**

**CONSTRUCTIONS**

**INTRODUCTORY NOTE**

The preceding part of this book has been concerned chiefly with forms and vocabulary.  There remain still to be learned the forms of the Subjunctive Mood, the Participles, and the Gerund of the regular verb, and the conjugation of the commoner irregular verbs.  These will be taken up in connection with the study of constructions, which will be the chief subject of our future work.  The special vocabularies of the preceding lessons contain, exclusive of proper names, about six hundred words.  As these are among the commonest words in the language, *they must be mastered*.  They properly form the basis of the study of words, and will be reviewed and used with but few additions in the remaining lessons.

For practice in reading and to illustrate the constructions presented, a continued story has been prepared and may be begun at this point (see p. 204).  It has been divided into chapters of convenient length to accompany progress through the lessons, but may be read with equal profit after the lessons are finished.  The story gives an account of the life and adventures of Publius Cornelius Lentulus, a Roman boy, who fought in Caesar’s campaigns and shared in his triumph.  The colored plates illustrating the story are faithful representations of ancient life and are deserving of careful study.

**LESSON LXI**

**THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD**

*342.* In addition to the indicative, imperative, and infinitive moods, which you have learned, Latin has a fourth mood called the subjunctive.  The tenses of the subjunctive are

  PRESENT }  
  IMPERFECT } ACTIVE AND PASSIVE  
  PERFECT }  
  PLUPERFECT }

*343.* The tenses of the subjunctive have the same time values as the corresponding tenses of the indicative, and, in addition, *each of them may refer to future time*.  No meanings of the tenses will be given in the paradigms, as the translation varies with the construction used.

**Page 114**

*344.* The present subjunctive is inflected as follows:

     CONJ.  I CONJ.  II CONJ.  III CONJ.  IV  
     ACTIVE VOICE  
     SINGULAR  
  1. a’mem mo’neam re’gam ca’piam au’diam  
  2. a’me:s mo’nea:s re’ga:s ca’pia:s au’dia:s  
  3. a’met mo’neat re’gat ca’piat au’diat

PLURAL
1. ame:’mus monea:’mus rega:’mus capia:’mus audia:’mus
2. ame:’tis monea:’tis rega:’tis capia:’tis audia:’tis
3. a’ment mo’neant re’gant ca’piant au’diant
PASSIVE VOICE
SINGULAR
1. a’mer mo’near re’gar ca’piar au’diar
2. ame:’ris monea:’ris rega:’ris capia:’ris audia:’ris
(-re) (-re) (-re) (-re) (-re)
3. ame:’tur monea:’tur rega:’tur capia:’tur audia:’tur
   PLURAL  
  
1. ame:’mur monea:’mur rega:’mur capia:’mur audia:’mur  
2. ame:’mini:  monea:’mini:  rega:’mini:  capia:’mini:  audia:’mini:   
3. amen’tur monean’tur regan’tur capian’tur audian’tur

*a.* The present subjunctive is formed from the present stem.

*b.* The mood sign of the present subjunctive is -e:- in the first conjugation and -a:- in the others.  It is shortened in the usual places (cf.  Sec. 12), and takes the place of the final vowel of the stem in the first and third conjugations, but not in the second and fourth.

*c.* The personal endings are the same as in the indicative.

*d.* In a similar way inflect the present subjunctive of *curo\,*iubeo\, *sumo\,* iacio\, *munio\.*

*345.* The present subjunctive of the irregular verb *sum\ is inflected as follows:*

{ 1. sim { 1. si:mus
SING. { 2. si:s PLURAL { 2. si:tis
{ 3. sit { 3. sint

*346.* The Indicative and Subjunctive Compared.

1.  The two most important of the finite moods are the indicative and the subjunctive.  The indicative deals with facts either real or assumed.  If, then, we wish to assert something as a fact or to inquire after a fact, we use the indicative.2.  On the other hand, if we wish to express a *desire* or *wish*, a *purpose*, a *possibility*, an *expectation*, or some such notion, we must use the subjunctive.  The following sentences illustrate the difference between the indicative and the subjunctive ideas.

INDICATIVE IDEAS SUBJUNCTIVE IDEAS

**Page 115**

1. *He is brave* 1. *May he be brave*  
Fortis est Fortis sit (idea of wishing)  
2. *We set out at once* 2. *Let us set out at once*  
Statim proficiscimur Statim proficiscamur  
(idea of willing)  
3. *You hear him every day* 3. *You can hear him every day*  
Cotidie eum audis Cotidie eum audias  
(idea of possibility)  
4. *He remained until the ship* 4. *He waited until the ship  
arrived* *should arrive*  
Mansit dum navis pervenit Exspectavit dum navis  
perveniret[1]  
(idea of expectation)  
5. *Caesar sends men who find the* 5. *Caesar sends men  
bridge* *who are to find*  
(or *to find*) *the bridge*  
Caesar mittit homines qui Caesar homines mittit qui  
pontem reperiunt pontem reperiant  
(idea of purpose)

[Footnote 1:  *perveniret\, imperfect subjunctive.]*

NOTE.  From the sentences above we observe that the subjunctive may be used in either independent or dependent clauses; but it is far more common in the latter than in the former.

*347.* EXERCISE

Which verbs in the following paragraph would be in the indicative and which in the subjunctive in a Latin translation?

There have been times in the history of our country when you might be proud of being an American citizen.  Do you remember the day when Dewey sailed into Manila Bay to capture or destroy the enemy’s fleet?  You might have seen the admiral standing on the bridge calmly giving his orders.  He did not even wait until the mines should be removed from the harbor’s mouth, but sailed in at once.  Let us not despair of our country while such valor exists, and may the future add new glories to the past.

**LESSON LXII**

**THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE**

*348.* Observe the sentence

  Caesar homines mittit qui pontem reperiant,  
  *Caesar sends men to find the bridge*

The verb *reperiant\ in the dependent clause is in the subjunctive because it tells us what Caesar wants the men to do; in other words, it expresses his will and the purpose in his mind.  Such a use of the subjunctive is called the subjunctive of purpose.*

*349.* RULE.  Subjunctive of Purpose. *The subjunctive is used in a dependent clause to express the purpose of the action in the principal clause.*

*350.* A clause of purpose is introduced as follows:

I. If something is wanted, by

*qui:\, the relative pronoun (as above)*ut\, conj., *in order that, that*  
  *quo:\ (abl. of* qui:\, *by which*), *in order that, that*, used when  
    the purpose clause contains a comparative.  The ablative *quo:\  
    expresses the measure of difference. (Cf.  Sec. 317.)*

**Page 116**

II.  If something is not wanted, by

*ne:\, conj., \_in order that not, that not, lest\_*

*351.* EXAMPLES

  1.  Caesar copias cogit quibus hostis insequatur  
    *Caesar collects troops with which to pursue the foe*

  2.  Pacem petunt ut domum revertantur  
    *They ask for peace in order that they may return home*

  3.  Pontem faciunt quo facilius oppidum capiant  
    *They build a bridge that they may take the town more easily*  
    (lit. *by which the more easily*)

  4.  Fugiunt ne vulnerentur  
     *They flee that they may not* (or *lest they*) *be wounded*

*352.* Expression of Purpose in English.  In English, purpose clauses are sometimes introduced by *that* or *in order that*, but much more frequently purpose is expressed in English by the infinitive, as *We eat to live*, *She stoops to conquer*.  In Latin prose, on the other hand, *purpose is never expressed by the infinitive\.  Be on your guard and do not let the English idiom betray you into this error.*

*353.* EXERCISES

I.  
  1.  Veniunt ut { ducant, mittant, videant, audiant,  
                        { ducantur, mittantur, videantur, audiantur.  
  2.  Fugimus ne:  { capiamur, tradamur, videamus,  
                        { necemur, rapiamur, resistamus.  
  3.  Mittit nuntios qui { dicant, audiant, veniant,  
                        { narrent, audiantur, in concilio sedeant.  
  4.  Castra muniunt { sese defendant, impetum sustineant,  
         quo:  facilius { hostis vincant, salutem petant.

II. 1.  The Helvetii send ambassadors to seek[1] peace. 2.  They are setting out at daybreak in order that they may make a longer march before night. 3.  They will hide the women in the forest (*acc. with* *in\) that they may not be captured. 4.  The Gauls wage many wars to free[1] their fatherland from slavery. 5.  They will resist the Romans[2] bravely lest they be destroyed.*

[Footnote 1:  Not infinitive.]

    [Footnote 2:  Not accusative.]

**LESSON LXIII**

**INFLECTION OF THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES**

*354.* The imperfect subjunctive may be formed by adding the personal endings to the present active infinitive.

   CONJ.  I CONJ.  II CONJ.  III CONJ.  IV  
   ACTIVE  
1. ama:’rem mone:’rem re’gerem ca’perem audi:’rem 2. ama:’re:s mone:’re:s re’gere:s ca’pere:s audi:’re:s 3. ama:’ret mone:’ret re’geret ca’peret audi:’ret

**Page 117**

1. ama:re:’mus mone:re:’mus regere:’mus capere:’mus audi:re:’mus
2. ama:re:’tis mone:re:’tis regere:’tis capere:’tis audi:re:’tis
3. ama:’rent mone:’rent re’gerent ca’perent audi:’rent
PASSIVE
1. ama:’rer mone:’rer re’gerer ca’perer audi:’rer
2. ama:re:’ris mone:re:’ris regere:’ris capere:’ris audi:re:’ris
(-re) (-re) (-re) (-re) (-re)
3. ama:re:’tur mone:re:’tur regere:’tur capere:’tur audi:re:’tur

1. ama:re:’mur mone:re:’mur regere:’mur capere:’mur —­re:’mur 2. ama:re:’mini:  mone:re:’mini:  regere:’mini:  capere:’mini:  —­re’mini:  3. ama:ren’tur mone:ren’tur regeren’tur caperen’tur —­ren’tur

*a.* In a similar way inflect the imperfect subjunctive, active and  
passive, of *curo\,* iubeo\, *sumo\,* iacio\, *munio\.*

*355.* The imperfect subjunctive of the irregular verb *sum\ is inflected as follows:*

{ 1. es’sem { 1. esse:’mus
SING. { 2. es’se:s PLURAL { 2. esse:’tis
{ 3. es’set { 3. es’sent

*356.* The three great distinctions of time are *present*, *past*, and *future*.  All tenses referring to present or future time are called *primary tenses\, and those referring to past time are called* secondary tenses\.  Now it is a very common law of language that in a complex sentence the tense in the dependent clause should be of the same kind as the tense in the principal clause.  In the sentence *He /says\ that he /is\ coming*, the principal verb, *says*, is present, that is, is in a primary tense; and *is coming*, in the dependent clause, is naturally also primary.  If I change *he says* to *he said*,—­in other words, if I make the principal verb secondary in character,—­I feel it natural to change the verb in the dependent clause also, and I say, *He /said\ that he /was\ coming*.  This following of a tense by another of the same kind is called *tense sequence*, from *sequi:*, “to follow.”

In Latin the law of tense sequence is obeyed with considerable regularity, especially when an indicative in the principal clause is followed by a subjunctive in the dependent clause.  Then a primary tense of the indicative is followed by a primary tense of the subjunctive, and a secondary tense of the indicative is followed by a secondary tense of the subjunctive.  Learn the following table:

*357.* TABLE FOR SEQUENCE OF TENSES

+-----+-------------------+----------------------------

**Page 118**

+-----+-------------------+----------------------------  
---------------+
| | PRINCIPAL VERB | DEPENDENT VERBS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE |
| P | IN THE +---------------------+---------------------+
| R | INDICATIVE | *Incomplete or* | *Completed Action* |
| I | | *Continuing Action* | |
| M +-------------------+---------------------+-----------  
----------+
| A | Present | | |
| R | Future | Present | Perfect |
| T | Future perfect | | |
+-----+-------------------+---------------------+-----------  
----------+
| S D | | | |
| E A | Imperfect | | |
| C R | Perfect | Imperfect | Pluperfect |
| O Y | Pluperfect | | |
| N- | | | |
+-----+-------------------+---------------------+-----------  
----------+
 *358.* RULE. Sequence of Tenses. *Primary
tenses are followed by primary tenses and secondary
by secondary.  
359.* EXAMPLES
  
I. Primary tenses in principal and dependent clauses:
  
 Mittit }  
 Mittet } homines ut agros vastent  
 Miserit }
{ *sends* } { *that they may* }
*He* { *will send* } *men* { *in order to* }
{ *will have sent* } { *to lay waste the fields* }
  
II. Secondary tenses in principal and dependent
clauses:
  
 Mittebat}  
 Misit } homines ut agros vastarent  
 Miserat }
{ *was sending* } { *that they might* }
*He* { *sent or has sent* } *men* { *in order to* }
{ *had sent* } { *to lay waste the fields* }
 *360.* EXERCISES
  
I.  
 1. Venerant ut {ducerent, mitterent,
viderent, audirent,  
 {ducerentur,
mitterentur, viderentur, audirentur
  
2. Fugiebat ne {caperetur, traderetur,
videretur,  
{necaretur, raperetur, resisteret.
  
3. Misit nuntios qui {dicerent,
audirent, venirent  
{narrarent, audirentur, in
concilio sederent.
  
4. Castra muniverunt {sese defenderent,
impetum sustinerent,  
quo facilius {hostis vincerent, salutem
peterent.
  
II. 1. Caesar encouraged the soldiers in order
that they might fight more bravely. 2. The Helvetii
left their homes to wage war. 3. The scouts set
out at once lest they should be captured by the Germans.
4. Caesar inflicted punishment on them in order
that the others might be more terrified. 5. He
sent messengers to Rome to announce the victory.

**Page 119**

**LESSON LXIV**

**THE PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE** *361.* The perfect and the pluperfect subjunctive
active are inflected as follows:
  
 CONJ. I CONJ.
II CONJ. III CONJ. IV  
 PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE  
 SINGULAR  
1. ama:’verim monu’erim re:’xerim
ce:’perim audi:’verim 2. ama:’veris
monu’eris re:’xeris ce:’peris
audi:’veris 3. ama:’verit monu’erit
re:’xerit ce:’perit audi:’verit
PLURAL
1. ama:ve’rimus monue’rimus re:xe’rimus ce:pe’rimus audi:ve’rimus
2. ama:ve’ritis monue’ritis re:xe’ritis ce:pe’ritis audi:ve’ritis
3. ama:’verint monu’erint re:’xerint ce:’perint audi:’verint
PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE
SINGULAR
1. ama:vis’sem monuis’sem re:xis’sem ce:pis’sem audi:vis’sem
2. ama:vis’se:s monuis’se:s re:xis’se:s ce:pis’se:s audi:vis’se:m
3. ama:vis’set monuis’set re:xis’set ce:pis’set audi:vis’set
PLURAL
1. ama:visse:’mus —­isse:’mus —­isse:’mus —­isse:’mus —­isse:’mus
2. ama:visse:’tis —­isse:’tis —­isse:’tis —­isse:’tis —­isse:’tis
3. ama:vis’sent —­is’sent —­is’sent —­is’sent —­is’sent
 *a.* Observe that these
two tenses, like the corresponding ones in  
 the indicative, are formed
from the perfect stem.
 *b.* Observe that the
perfect subjunctive active is like the future  
 perfect indicative active,
excepting that the first person singular  
 ends in -m and not in -o:.
 *c.* Observe that the
pluperfect subjunctive active may be formed by  
 adding /-issem, -isse:s\,
*etc*. to the perfect stem.
 *d.* In a similar way
inflect the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive  
 active of *curo\,* iubeo\,
*sumo\,* iacio\, *munio\.  
362.* The passive of the perfect subjunctive
is formed by combining the perfect passive participle
with *sim\, the present subjunctive of* sum\.
  
 CONJ. I CONJ.
II CONJ. III CONJ. IV  
 PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
PASSIVE  
 SINGULAR  
 1. ama:’tus mo’nitus
re:c’tus cap’tus audi:’tus
sim  
 sim
sim sim sim  
 2. ama:’tus mo’nitus
re:c’tus cap’tus audi:’tus
si:s  
 si:s
si:s si:s si:s  
 3. ama:’tus mo’nitus
re:c’tus cap’tus audi:’tus
sit  
 sit
sit sit sit
PLURAL
1. ama:’ti: mo’niti: re:c’ti: cap’ti: audi:’ti: si:mus
si:mus si:mus si:mus si:mus
2. ama:’ti: mo’niti: re:c’ti: cap’ti: audi:’ti: si:tis
si:tis si:tis si:tis si:tis
3. ama:’ti: mo’niti: re:c’ti: cap’ti: audi:’ti: sint
sint sint sint sint
 *363.* The passive of the pluperfect subjunctive
is formed by combining the perfect passive participle
with *essem\, the imperfect subjunctive of* sum\.

**Page 120**

CONJ. I CONJ.
II CONJ. III CONJ. IV  
 PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
PASSIVE  
 SINGULAR  
 1. ama:tus monitus re:ctus
captus audi:tus essem  
 essem
essem essem essem  
 2. ama:tus monitus re:ctus
captus audi:tus esse:s  
 esse:s
esse:s esse:s esse:s  
 3. ama:tus monitus re:ctus
captus audi:tus esset  
 esset
esset esset esset  
 PLURAL  
 1. ama:ti: moniti:
re:cti: capti: audi:ti: esse:mus  
 esse:mus
esse:mus esse:mus esse:mus  
 2. ama:ti: moniti:
re:cti: capti: audi:ti: esse:tis  
 esse:tis
esse:tis esse:tis esse:tis  
 3. ama:ti: moniti:
re:cti: capti: audi:ti: essent  
 essent
essent essent essent
 *a.* In a similar way
inflect the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive  
 passive of *curo\,* iubeo\,
*sumo\,* iacio\, *munio\.  
364.* The perfect and pluperfect subjunctive
of the irregular verb *sum\ are inflected as follows:* PERFECT PLUPERFECT fu’erim fue’rimus fuis’sem fuisse:’mus fu’eris fue’ritis fuis’se:s fuisse:’tis fu’erit fu’erint fuis’set fuis’sent *365.* A substantive clause is a clause used
like a noun, as,
 *That the men are afraid* is clear
enough (clause as subject)  
 He ordered *them to call on him*
(clause as object)
  
We have already had many instances of infinitive clauses
used in this way (cf. Sec. 213), and have noted
the similarity between Latin and English usage in
this respect. But the Latin often uses the *subjunctive*
in substantive clauses, and this marks an important
difference between the two languages.
 *366.* RULE. Substantive Clauses of Purpose.
*A substantive clause of purpose with the subjunctive
is used as the object of verbs of /commanding\, /urging\,
/asking\, /persuading\, or /advising\, where in English
we should usually have the infinitive.*

**EXAMPLES**

1. *The general ordered the soldiers
to run*  
 Imperator
militibus imperavit ut currerent  
 2. *He urged them to resist bravely*  
 Hortatus
est ut fortiter resisterent  
 3. *He asked them to give the children
food*  
 Petivit
ut liberis cibum darent  
 4. *He will persuade us not to set out*  
 Nobis persuadebit
ne proficiscamur  
 5. *He advises us to remain at home*  
 Monet ut
domi maneamus
 *a.* The object clauses
following these verbs all express the  
 purpose or will of the principal
subject that something be done or  
 not done. (Cf. Sec. 348.)

**Page 121**

*367.* The following verbs are used with object
clauses of purpose. Learn the list and the principal
parts of the new ones.
  
 hortor, *urge*  
 impero, *order* (with the *dative*
of the *person* ordered and a *subjunctive clause*
of the *thing* ordered done)  
 moneo, *advise*  
 peto, quaero, rogo, *ask, seek*  
 persuadeo, *persuade* (with the same
construction as impero)  
 postulo, *demand, require*  
 suadeo, *advise* (cf. persuadeo)
  
N.B. Remember that *iubeo\, \_order\_, takes
the infinitive as in English. (Cf. Sec.
213.1.) Compare the sentences*  
 Iubeo eum venire, *I order him to come*  
 Impero ei ut veniat, *I give orders
to him that he is to come*  
We ordinarily translate both of these sentences like
the first, but the difference in meaning between iubeo
and impero in the Latin requires the *infinitive*
in the one case and the *subjunctive* in the other.
 *368.* EXERCISES
  
I. 1. Petit atque hortatur ut ipse dicat. 2.
Caesar Helvetiis imperravit ne per provinciam iter
facerent. 3. Caesar non iussit Helvetios per
provinciam iter facere. 4. Ille civibus persuasit
ut de finibus suis discederent. 5. Caesar principes
monebit ne proelium committant. 6. Postulavit
ne cum Helvetiis aut cum eorum sociis bellum gererent.
7. Ab iis quaesivi ne proficiscerentur. 8.
Iis persuadere non potui ut domi manerent.
  
II. 1. Who ordered Caesar to make the march?
(*Write this sentence both with* *impero\ \_and
with\_* iubeo\.) 2. The faithless scouts persuaded
him to set out at daybreak. 3. They will ask him
not to inflict punishment. 4. He demanded that
they come to the camp. 5. He advised them to
tell everything (omnia).
  
NOTE. Do not forget that the English infinitive
expressing purpose must be rendered by a Latin subjunctive.
Review Sec. 352.
  
 [Illustration: LEGIO ITER FACIT]

**LESSON LXV**

**THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF *POSSUM* : VERBS OF FEARING** *369.* Learn the subjunctive of *possum\ (Sec.
495), and note especially the position of the accent.  
370.* Subjunctive after Verbs of Fearing.
We have learned that what we want done or not done
is expressed in Latin by a subjunctive clause of purpose.
In this class belong also *clauses after verbs of
fearing*, for we fear either that something will
happen or that it will not, and we either want it
to happen or we do not. If we want a thing to
happen and fear that it will not, the purpose clause
is introduced by *ut\. If we do not want it
to happen and fear that it will,* ne:\ is used.
Owing to a difference between the English and Latin
idiom we translate *ut\ after a verb of fearing
by \_that not\_, and* ne:\ by *that* or *lest*.

**Page 122**

*371.* EXAMPLES
  
 timeo } { veniat  
 timebo } ut {  
 timuero } { venerit
 *I fear*, *shall fear*, *shall have feared*,
*that he will not come*, *has not come*
timebam } { veniret
timui } ut {
timueram } { venisset
 *I was fearing*, *feared*, *had feared*,
*that he would not come*, *had not come*  
The same examples with *ne:\ instead of* ut\
would be translated *I fear that* or *lest
he will come*, *has come*, *etc*.
 *372.* RULE. Subjunctive after Verbs of
Fearing. *Verbs of fearing are followed by a substantive
clause of purpose introduced by /ut\ (that not) or
/ne:\ (that or lest).  
373.* EXERCISES
  
I. 1. Caesar verebatur ut supplicium captivorum
Gallis placeret. 2. Romani ipsi magnopere verebantur
ne Helvetii iter per provinciam facerent. 3.
Timebant ut satis rei frumentariae mitti posset. 4.
Vereor ut hostium impetum sustinere possim. 5.
Timuit ne impedimenta ab hostibus capta essent. 6.
Caesar numquam timuit ne legiones vincerentur. 7.
Legiones pugnare non timuerunt.[1]
  
II. 1. We fear that they are not coming. 2.
We fear lest they are coming. 3. We feared that
they had come. 4. We feared that they had not
come. 5. They feared greatly that the camp could
not be defended. 6. Almost all feared[1] to leave
the camp.
[Footnote 1:  Distinguish between what one is afraid *to do* (complementary infinitive as here) and what one is afraid *will take place* or *has taken place* (substantive clause with the subjunctive).]

**LESSON LXVI**

**THE PARTICIPLES** *374.* The Latin verb has the following Participles:[1]
[Transcriber’s Note:  For reasons of space, this table is given in two forms:  first a reduced version without translation, and then the complete text, including translations, split into two elements.]  
CONJ. I CONJ.
II CONJ. III CONJ. IV  
ACTIVE  
PRESENT ama:ns mone:ns rege:ns capie:ns
audie:ns  
FUTURE ama:tu:rus monitu:rus re:ctu:rus captu:rus
audi:tu:rus
PASSIVE
PERFECT ama:tus monitus re:ctus captus audi:tus
FUTURE[2] amandus monendus regendus capiendus audiendus
  
CONJ. I
CONJ. II  
ACTIVE  
PRESENT ama:ns mone:ns *loving* *advising*  
FUTURE ama:tu:rus monitu:rus *about to love* *about to
advise*  
PASSIVE  
PERFECT ama:tus monitus *loved, having* *advised, having
been advised  
been loved*  
FUTURE[2] amandus monendus *to be loved* *to be advised*

**Page 123**

CONJ. III
CONJ. IV  
ACTIVE  
PRESENT rege:ns capie:ns
audie:ns *ruling* *taking* *hearing*  
FUTURE re:ctu:rus captu:rus
audi:tu:rus *about to rule* *about to take* *about to hear*
PASSIVE
PERFECT re:ctus captus audi:tus
*ruled, having* *taken, having* *heard, havinhbeen ruled* *been taken* *been heard*
FUTURE[2] regendus capiendus audiendus
*to be ruled* *to be taken* *to be heard*  
[Footnote 1: Review Sec. 203.]
  
[Footnote 2: The future passive
participle is often called the *gerundive*.]
 *a.* The present active and
future passive participles are formed  
from the present stem, and the future active and
perfect passive  
participles are formed from the participial stem.
*b.* The present active participle is formed by adding -ns to the present stem.  In -io:  verbs of the third conjugation, and in the fourth conjugation, the stem is modified by the addition of -e:-, as *capi-e:-ns\,* audi-e:-ns\.  It is declined like an adjective of one ending of the third declension. (Cf.  Sec. 256.)  
amans, *loving*  
BASE amant- STEM amanti-
SINGULAR PLURAL
MASC. AND FEM. NEUT. MASC. AND FEM. NEUT.
Nom. ama:ns ama:ns amante:s amantia
Gen. amantis amantis amantium amantium
Dat. amanti: amanti: amantibus amantibus
Acc. amantem ama:ns amanti:s *or* -e:s amantia
Abl. amanti: amanti: amantibus amantibus
*or* -e *or* -e
  
(1) When used as an adjective the
ablative singular ends in -i:;  
when used as a participle or as a substantive, in
-e.
  
(2) In a similar way decline *monens\,*regens\, *capiens\,* audiens\.
 *c.* The future active participle
is formed by adding -u:rus to the  
base of the participial stem. We have already
met this form combined  
with *esse\ to produce the future active infinitive.
(Cf. Sec. 206.)  
d.* For the perfect
passive participle see Sec. 201. The future  
 passive participle or gerundive
is formed by adding -ndus to the  
 present stem.
 *e.* All participles
in -us are declined like *bonus\.  
f.* Participles agree with
nouns or pronouns like adjectives.
 *g.* Give all the participles
of the following verbs: *curo\,*  
iubeo\, *sumo\,* iacio\, *munio\.  
375.* Participles of Deponent Verbs. Deponent
verbs have the participles of the active voice as
well as of the passive; consequently every deponent
verb has four participles, as,

**Page 124**

*Pres. Act.*
horta:ns, *urging  
Fut. Act.* horta:tu:rus,
*about to urge  
Perf. Pass.* (in form) horta:tus,
*having urged  
Fut. Pass.* (*Gerundive*) hortandus,
*to be urgeda.* Observe that the perfect participle of deponent verbs is passive in form but *active* in meaning. *No other verbs have a perfect active participle.* On the other hand, the future passive participle of deponent verbs is passive in meaning as in other verbs. *b.* Give the participles
of *conor\,* vereor\, *sequor\,* patior\, *partior\.  
376.* Tenses of the Participle. The tenses
express time as follows:
1.  The present active participle corresponds to the English present active participle in \_-ing\_, but can be used only of an action occurring at the same time as the action of the main verb; as, *milites insequentes ceperunt multos\, \_the soldiers, while pursuing, captured many.\_ Here the pursuing and the capturing are going on together.*2.  The perfect participle (excepting of deponents) is regularly passive and corresponds to the English past participle with or without the auxiliary \_having been\_; as, auditus\, *heard* or *having been heard*.  
 3. The future active participle,
translated *about to*, *etc*., denotes  
 time after the action of the main verb.
 *377.* Review Secs. 203, 204, and, note the following
model sentences:
  
 1. *Milites currentes erant defessi\,
\_the soldiers who were running\_  
 (lit. \_running\_) \_were weary\_.*  
 2. *Caesar profecturus Romam non exspectavit\,
\_Caesar, when about to  
 set out\_ (lit. \_about to set out\_) \_for
Rome, did not wait\_.*  
 3. *Oppidum captum vidimus\, \_we saw
the town which had been captured\_  
 (lit. \_captured town\_).*  
 4. *Imperator triduum moratus profectus
est\, \_the general, since\_  
 (\_when\_, or \_after\_) \_he had delayed\_
(lit. \_the general, having  
 delayed\_) \_three days, set out\_.*  
 5. *Milites victi terga non verterunt\,
\_the soldiers, though they  
 were conquered\_ (lit. \_the soldiers conquered\_),
\_did not retreat\_.*  
In each of these sentences the literal translation
of the participle is given in parentheses. We
note, however, that its proper translation usually
requires a clause beginning with some conjunction (*when,
since, after, though*, *etc*.), or a relative
clause. Consider, in each case, what translation
will best bring out the thought, and do not, as a rule,
translate the participle literally.
 *378.* EXERCISES
  
I. 1. Puer timens ne capiatur fugit. 2.
Aquila ira commota avis reliquas interficere conata
erat. 3. Milites ab hostibus pressi tela iacere
non potuerunt. 4. Caesar decimam legionem laudaturus
ad primum agmen progressus est. 5. Imperator
hortatus equites ut fortiter pugnarent signum proelio
dedit. 6. Milites hostis octo milia passuum insecuti
multis cum captivis ad castra reverterunt. 7.
Sol oriens multos interfectos vidit. 8. Romani
consilium audax suspicati barbaris sese non commiserunt.
9. Navis e portu egressa nullo in periculo erat.

**Page 125**

II.[3] 1. The army was in very great danger while
marching through the enemy’s country. 2.
Frightened by the length of the way, they longed for
home. 3. When the scouts were about to set out,
they heard the shouts of victory. 4. When we
had delayed many days, we set fire to the buildings
and departed. 5. While living at Rome I heard
orators much better than these. 6. The soldiers
who are fighting across the river are no braver than
we.
  
 [Footnote 3: In this
exercise use participles for the subordinate  
 clauses.]

**LESSON LXVII**

THE IRREGULAR VERBS *VOLO:*, *NO:LO:*, *MALO:*  
THE ABLATIVE WITH A PARTICIPLE, OR ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE
 *379.* Learn the principal parts and conjugation
of *volo:\, \_wish\_;* no:lo:\ (ne + volo:), *be
unwilling*; *malo:\ (magis + volo:), \_be more
willing, prefer\_ (Sec. 497). Note the irregularities
in the present indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive,
and in the imperfect subjunctive. (Cf. Sec. 354.)a.* These verbs are usually followed by the infinitive with or without a subject accusative; as, *volunt venire\, \_they wish to come\_;* volunt amico:s venire\, *they wish their friends to come*.  The English usage is the same.[1]  
 [Footnote 1: Sometimes
the subjunctive of purpose is used after  
 these verbs. (See Sec. 366.)]
  
[ Conjugations given in Sec. 497:
PRINCIPAL PARTS:  volo:, velle, volui:, ——­, *be willing, will, wish* no:lo:, no:lle, no:lui:, ——­, *be unwilling, will not* ma:lo:, ma:lle, ma:lui:, ——­, *be more willing, prefer*
INDICATIVE
SINGULAR
*Pres.* volo: no:lo: ma:lo:
vi:s no:n vis ma:vi:s
vult no:n vult ma:vult
PLURAL volumus no:lumus ma:lumus vultis no:n vultis ma:vul’tis volunt no:lunt ma:lunt*Impf.* vole:bam no:le:bam ma:le:bam
*Fut.* volam, no:lam, ma:lam, ma:le:s, *etc*.
vole:s, *etc*. no:le:s, *etc*.
*Perf.* volui: no:lui: ma:lui:
*Plup.* volueram no:lueram ma:lueram
*F. P.* voluero: no:luero: ma:luero:
SUBJUNCTIVE
SINGULAR
*Pres.* velim no:lim ma:lim
veli:s no:li:s ma:li:s
velit no:lit ma:lit
PLURAL veli:’mus no:li:’mus ma:li:’mus veli:’tis no:li:’tis ma:li:’tis velint no:lint ma:lint*Impf.* vellem no:llem ma:llem
*Perf.* voluerim no:luerim ma:luerim
*Plup.* voluissem no:luissem ma:luissem
  
IMPERATIVE *Pres.* no:li:   
no:li:te *Fut.* no:li:to:, *etc*.

**Page 126**

INFINITIVE
*Pres.* velle no:lle ma:lle
*Perf.* voluisse no:luisse ma:luisse
  
PARTICIPLE *Pres.* vole:ns, -entis no:le:ns, -entis
——­]
 *380.* Observe the following sentences:
  
 1. Magistro laudante omnes pueri
diligenter laborant, *with the  
 teacher praising*, or *since the
teacher praises*, or *the teacher  
 praising, all the boys labor diligently.*  
 2. Caesare ducente nemo progredi
timet, *with Caesar leading*, or *when Caesar leads*, or *if Caesar
leads*, or *Caesar leading, no one  
 fears to advance.*  
 3. His rebus cognitis milites fugerunt,
*when this was known*, or *since this was known*, or *these
things having been learned, the  
 soldiers fled.*  
 4. Proelio commisso multi vulnerati
sunt, *after the battle had  
 begun*, or *when the battle had begun*,
or *the battle having been  
 joined, many were wounded.a.* One of the fundamental ablative relations is expressed in English by the preposition *with* (cf.  Sec. 50).  In each of the sentences above we have a noun and a participle in agreement in the ablative, and the translation shows that in each instance the ablative expresses *attendant circumstance*.  For example, in the first sentence the circumstance attending or accompanying the diligent labor of the boys is the praise of the teacher.  This is clearly a *with* relation, and the ablative is the case to use.*b.* We observe, further, that the ablative and its participle are absolutely independent grammatically of the rest of the sentence.  If we were to express the thought in English in a similar way, we should use the nominative independent or absolute.  In Latin the construction is called the Ablative Absolute, or the Ablative with a Participle.  This form of expression is exceedingly common in Latin, but rather rare in English, so we must not, as a rule, employ the English absolute construction to translate the ablative abolute.  The attendant circumstance may be one of *time* (when or after), or one of *cause* (since), or one of *concession* (though), or one of *condition* (if).  In each case try to discover the precise relation, and tranlate the ablative and its participle by a clause which will best express the thought. *381.* RULE. Ablative Absolute. *The ablative
of a noun or pronoun with a present or perfect participle
in agreement is used to express attendant circumstance.*  
NOTE 1. The verb *sum\ has no present participle.
In consequence we often find two nouns or a noun and
an adjective in the ablative absolute with no participle
expressed; as,* te duce\, *you* (being) *leader*,
*with you as leader*; *patre infirmo\, \_my father\_
(being) \_weak\_.*

**Page 127**

NOTE 2. Be very careful not to put in the ablative
absolute a noun and participle that form the subject
or object of a sentence. Compare
 *a.* *The Gauls, having
been conquered by Caesar, returned home  
b.* *The Gauls having been
conquered by Caesar, the army returned  
home*  
In *a* the subject is *The Gauls having been
conquered by Caesar*, and we translate,
  
Galli a Caesare victi domum reverterunt
  
In *b* the subject is *the army*. *The
Gauls having been conquered by Caesar* is nominative
absolute in English, which requires the ablative absolute
in Latin, and we translate,
  
 Gallis a Caesare victis exercitus domum
revertit
  
NOTE 3. The fact that only deponent verbs have
a perfect active participle (cf. Sec. 375.a)
often compels a change of voice when translating from
one language to the other. For example, we can
translate *Caesar having encouraged the legions*
just as it stands, because *hortor\ is a deponent
verb. But if we wish to say \_Caesar having conquered
the Gauls\_, we have to change the voice of the participle
to the passive because* vinco\ is not deponent,
and say, *the Gauls having been conquered by Caesar*
(see translation above).
 *382.* EXERCISES
  
I. 1. Mavis, non vis, vultis, nolumus. 2.
Ut nolit, ut vellemus, ut malit. 3. Noli, velle,
noluisse, malle. 4. Vult, mavultis, ut nollet,
nolite. 5. Sole oriente, aves cantare inceperunt.
6. Clamoribus auditis, barbari progredi recusabant.
7. Caesare legiones hortato, milites paulo fortius
pugnaverunt. 8. His rebus cognitis, Helvetii finitimis
persuaserunt ut secum iter facerent. 9. Laboribus
confectis, milites a Caesare quaerebant ut sibi praemia
daret. 10. Concilio convocato, principes ita
responderunt. 11. Dux pluris dies in Helvetiorum
finibus morans multos vicos incendit. 12. Magnitudine
Germanorum cognita, quidam ex Romanis timebant. 13.
Mercatoribus rogatis, Caesar nihilo plus reperire
potuit.
  
II. 1. He was unwilling, lest they prefer, they
have wished. 2. You prefer, that they might be
unwilling, they wish. 3. We wish, they had preferred,
that he may prefer. 4. Caesar, when he heard the
rumor (*the rumor having been heard*), commanded
(imperare) the legions to advance more quickly. 5.
Since Caesar was leader, the men were willing to make
the journey. 6. A few, terrified[2] by the reports
which they had heard, preferred to remain at home.
7. After these had been left behind, the rest
hastened as quickly as possible. 8. After Caesar
had undertaken the business (*Caesar, the business
having been undertaken*), he was unwilling to delay
longer.[3]
  
 [Footnote 2: Would the
ablative absolute be correct here?]
  
 [Footnote 3: Not *longius\.
Why?]*

**LESSON LXVIII**

**THE IRREGULAR VERB *FIO:* : THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT**

**Page 128**

*383.* The verb *fi:o:\, \_be made, happen\_,
serves as the passive of* facio:\, *make*,
in the present system. The rest of the verb is
formed regularly from *facio:\. Learn the principal
parts and conjugation (Sec. 500). Observe that
the* i\ is long except before -er and in *fit\.  
a.* The compounds of
*facio\ with prepositions usually form the  
 passive regularly, as,  
Active* conficio, conficere,
confeci, confectus *Passive* conficior, confici, confectus
sum
  
[ Conjugation given in Sec. 500:
  
PRINCIPAL PARTS *fi:o:, fieri:,
factus sum\*
INDICATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE IMPERATIVE
*Pres.* fi:o: ——­ fi:am *2d Pers.* fi: fi:te
fi:s ——­
fit fi:unt
*Impf.* fi:e:bam fierem
*Fut.* fi:am ——­
INDICATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE *Perf.* factus, -a, -um sum factus, -a, -um sim *Plup.* factus, -a, -um eram factus, -a, -um essem *F.  P.* factus, -a, -um ero: INFINITIVE PARTICIPLES *Pres.* fieri:  *Perf.* factus, -a, -um *Perf.* factus, -a, -um esse *Ger.* faciendus, -a, -um *Fut.* [[factum i:ri:]]] *384.* Observe the following sentences:
  
 1. Terror erat tantus ut omnes fugerent,
*the terror was so great  
 that all fled.*  
 2. Terror erat tantus ut non facile
milites sese reciperent, *the  
 terror was so great that the soldiers
did not easily recover  
 themselves.*  
 3. Terror fecit ut omnes fugerent,
*terror caused all to flee*  
 (lit. *made that all fled*).
 *a.* Each of these sentences
is complex, containing a principal  
 clause and a subordinate clause.
 *b.* The principal clause
names a cause and the subordinate clause  
 states the *consequence*
or *result* of this cause.
*c.* The subordinate clause has its verb in the subjunctive, though it is translated like an indicative.  The construction is called the *subjunctive of consequence or result*, and the clause is called a consecutive or result clause. *d.* In the last example
the clause of result is the object of the  
 verb *fecit\.  
e.* The conjunction
introducing the consecutive or result clause is *ut\ = \_so that\_; negative,*ut no:n\ = *so that not*.
 *385.* RULE. Subjunctive of Result. *Consecutive
clauses of result are introduced by /ut\ or /ut no:n\
and have the verb in the subjunctive.  
386.* RULE. *Object clauses of result with
/ut\ or /ut no:n\ are found after verbs of /effecting\
or /bringing about\.*

**Page 129**

*387.* Purpose and Result Clauses Compared.
There is great similarity in the expression of purpose
and of result in Latin. If the sentence is affirmative,
both purpose and result clauses may be introduced by
*ut\; but if the sentence is negative, the purpose
clause has* ne:\ and the result clause *ut no:n\.
Result clauses are often preceded in the main clause
by such words as* tam\, *ita\,* sic\ (*so*),
and these serve to point them out. Compare
 *a.* Tam graviter vulneratus
est ut caperetur *He was so severely
wounded that he was captured  
b.* Graviter vulneratus
est ut caperetur *He was severely
wounded in order that he might be captured*  
Which sentence contains a result clause, and how is
it pointed out?
 *388.* EXERCISES
  
I. 1. Fit, fiet, ut fiat, fiebamus. 2. Fio,
fies, ut fierent, fieri, fiunt. 3. Fietis, ut
fiamus, fis, fiemus. 4. Milites erant tam tardi
ut ante noctem in castra non pervenirent. 5. Sol
facit ut omnia sint pulchra. 6. Eius modi pericula
erant ut nemo proficisci vellet. 7. Equites hostium
cum equitatu nostro in itinere contenderunt, ita tamen[1]
ut nostri omnibus in partibus superiores essent. 8.
Virtus militum nostrorum fecit ut hostes ne unum quidem[2]
impetum sustinerent. 9. Homines erant tam audaces
ut nullo modo contineri possent. 10. Spatium
erat tam parvum ut milites tela iacere non facile possent.
11. Hoc proelio facto barbari ita perterriti sunt
ut ab ultimis gentibus legati ad Caesarem mitterentur.
12. Hoc proelium factum est ne legati ad Caesarem
mitterentur.
  
 [Footnote 1: *ita tamen\,
\_with such a result however\_.]*  
 [Footnote 2: *ne:
... quidem\, \_not even\_. The emphatic word is  
 placed between.]*  
II. 1. It will happen, they were being made,
that it may happen. 2. It happens, he will be
made, to happen. 3. They are made, we were being
made, lest it happen. 4. The soldiers are so brave
that they conquer. 5. The soldiers are brave
in order that they may conquer. 6. The fortification
was made so strong that it could not be taken. 7.
The fortification was made strong in order that it
might not be taken. 8. After the town was taken,[3]
the townsmen feared that they would be made slaves.
9. What state is so weak that it is unwilling
to defend itself?
  
 [Footnote 3: Ablative
absolute.]

**LESSON LXIX**

THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC OR DESCRIPTION  
THE PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE
 *389.* Akin to the subjunctive of consequence
or result is the use of the subjunctive in clauses
of characteristic or description.
  
This construction is illustrated in the following
sentences:
  
 1. Quis est qui suam domum non amet?
*who is there who does not love  
 his own home?*  
 2. Erant qui hoc facere nollent,
*there were (some) who were  
 unwilling to do this.*

**Page 130**

3. Tu non is es qui amicos tradas,
*you are not such a one as to*,  
 or *you are not the man to, betray your
friends.*  
 4. Nihil video quod timeam, *I
see nothing to fear* (nothing of such  
 as character as to fear it).
*a.* Each of these examples contains a descriptive relative clause which tells what kind of a person or thing the antecedent is.  To express this thought the subjunctive is used.  A relative clause that merely states a fact and does not describe the antecedent uses the indicative.  Compare the sentences *Caesar is the
man who is leading us*,  
 Caesar
est is qui nos ducit  
 (mere
statement of fact, no description, with the indicative) *Caesar is the
man to lead us*,  
 Caesar
est is qui nos ducat  
 (descriptive
relative clause with the subjunctive)
 *b.* Observe that in
this construction a demonstrative pronoun and a  
 relative, as is *qui\, are
translated \_such a one as to, the man  
 to\_.  
c.* In which of the
following sentences would you use the  
 indicative and in which the
subjunctive?
 *These
are not the men who did this  
These
are not the men to do this  
390.* RULE. Subjunctive of Characteristic.
*A relative clause with the subjunctive is often
used to describe an antecedent. This is called
the /subjunctive of characteristic or description\.  
391.* Observe the sentences
  
 1. Romani *Caesarem consulem\ fecerunt,  
 \_the Romans
made* Caesar consul\\_.
  
 2. *Caesar consul\ a Romanis factus
est,  
 \_*Caesar\
was made *consul\ by the Romans\_.a.* Observe in 1 that the transitive verb *fecerunt\, \_made\_, has two objects:  (1) the direct object,* Caesarem\; (2) a second object, *consulem\, referring to the same person as the direct object and completing the predicate.  The second accusative is called a Predicate Accusative.*\_b.\_ Observe in 2 that when the verb is changed to the passive both of the accusatives become nominatives, the \_direct object\_ becoming the \_subject\_ and the \_predicate accusative\_ the \_predicate nominative\_.  
\_392.\_ RULE. Two Accusatives. \_Verbs of making\,
*choosing\,* calling\, *showing\, and the like,
may take a predicate accusative along with the direct
object. With the passive voice the two accusatives
become nominatives.\_  
393.* The verbs commonly found with two accusatives
are
creo, creare, creavi, creatus, *choose* appello, appellare, appellavi, appellatus } nomino, nominare, nominavi, nominatus } *call* voco, vocare, vocavi, vocatus } facio, facere, feci, factus, *make  
394.* EXERCISES

**Page 131**

I. 1. In Germaniae silvis sunt[1] multa genera
ferarum quae reliquis in locis non visa sint. 2.
Erant[1] itinera duo quibus Helvetii domo discedere
possent. 3. Erat[1] manus nulla, nullum oppidum,
nullum praesidium quod se armis defenderet. 4.
Toto frumento rapto, domi nihil erat quo mortem prohibere
possent. 5. Romani Galbam ducem creaverunt et
summa celeritate profecti sunt. 6. Neque erat[1]
tantae multitudinis quisquam qui morari vellet. 7.
Germani non ii sunt qui adventum Caesaris vereantur.
8. Consulibus occisis erant qui[2] vellent cum
regem creare. 9. Pace facta erat nemo qui arma
tradere nollet. 10. Inter Helvetios quis erat
qui nobilior illo esset?
  
II. 1. The Romans called the city Rome. 2.
The city was called Rome by the Romans. 3. The
better citizens wished to choose him king. 4.
The brave soldier was not the man to run. 5.
There was no one [3]to call me friend. 6. These
are not the men to[4] betray their friends. 7.
There were (some) who called him the bravest of all.
  
 [Footnote 1: Remember
that when the verb *sum\ precedes its subject  
 it is translated \_there is\_,
\_there are\_, \_there were\_, etc.]*  
 [Footnote 2: *erant
qui\, \_there were\_ (some) \_who\_. A wholly  
 indefinite antecedent of* qui\
does not need to be expressed.]
  
 [Footnote 3: A relative
clause of characteristic or description.]
  
 [Footnote 4: See Sec.
389.b.]
  
\* \* \* \*
\*
  
 Eighth Review, Lessons LXI-LXIX, Secs.
527-528
  
\* \* \* \*
\*

**LESSON LXX**

THE CONSTRUCTIONS WITH THE CONJUNCTION *CUM*
THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION
 *395.* The conjunction *cum\ has the following
meanings and constructions:*   
 cum TEMPORAL = *when*, followed by
the indicative or the subjunctive  
 cum CAUSAL = *since*, followed by
the subjunctive  
 cum CONCESSIVE = *although*, followed
by the subjunctive
  
As you observe, the mood after *cum\ is sometimes
indicative and sometimes subjunctive. The reason
for this will be made clear by a study of the following
sentences:*   
 1. Caesarem vidi tum cum in Gallia
eram, *I saw
Caesar at the time when I was in Gaul*.
  
 2. Caesar in eos impetum fecit cum
pacem peterent, *Caesar
made an attack upon them when they were seeking peace*.
  
 3. Hoc erat difficile cum pauci sine
vulneribus essent, *this
was difficult, since only a few were without wounds*.
  
 4. Cum primi ordines fugissent, tamen
reliqui fortiter consistebant, *though
the front ranks had fled, yet the rest bravely stood  
 their ground*.

**Page 132**

*a.* The underlying principle is one already familiar to you (cf.  Sec. 389.a).  When the *cum\ clause states a fact and simply \_fixes the time\_ at which the main action took place, the indicative mood is used.  So, in the first example,* cum in Gallia eram\ fixes the time when I saw Caesar.*b.* On the other hand, when the *cum\ clause \_describes the circumstances\_ under which the main act took place, the subjunctive mood is used.  So, in the second example, the principal clause states that Caesar made an attack, and the* cum\ clause describes the circumstances under which this act occurred.  The idea of *time* is also present, but it is subordinate to the idea of *description*.  Sometimes the descriptive clause is one of *cause* and we translate *cum\ by \_since\_; sometimes it denotes \_concession\_ and* cum\ is translated *although*. *396.* RULE. Constructions with *Cum*.
*The conjunction /cum\ means /when\, /since\, or
/although\. It is followed by the subjunctive
unless it means /when\ and its clause fixes the time
at which the main action took place.*  
NOTE. *Cum\ in clauses of description with the subjunctive
is much more common than its use with the indicative.  
397.* Note the following sentences:
  
 1. Oppidum erat parvum magnitudine
sed magnum multitudine hominum, *the town was small in size
but great in population*.
  
 2. Homo erat corpore infirmus sed
validus animo, *the man
was weak in body but strong in courage*.
*a.* Observe that *magnitudine\,* multitudine\, *corpore\, and* animo\ tell *in what respect* something is true.  The relation is one covered by the ablative case, and the construction is called the *ablative of specification*. *398.* RULE. Ablative of Specification.
*The ablative is used to denote /in what respect\
something is true.  
399.* IDIOMS
  
 aliquem certiorem facere, *to inform
some one* (lit. *to make some  
 one more certain*)  
 certior fieri, *to be informed* (lit.
*to be made more certain*)  
 iter dare, *to give a right of way,
allow to pass*  
 obsides inter se dare, *to give hostages
to each other  
400.* EXERCISES
  
I. 1. Helvetii cum patrum nostrorum tempore domo
prefecti essent, consulis exercitum in fugam dederant.
2. Cum Caesar in Galliam venit, Helvetii alios
agros petebant. 3. Caesar cum in citeriore Gallia
esset, tamen de Helvetiorum consiliis certior fiebat.
4. Cum Helvetii bello clarissimi essent, Caesar
iter per provinciam dare recusavit. 5. Legatus
cum haec audivisset, Caesarem certiorem fecit. 6.
Cum principes inter se obsides darent, Romani bellum
paraverunt. 7. Caesar, cum id nuntiatum esset,
maturat ab urbe proficisci. 8. Ne virtute quidem
Galli erant pares Germanis. 9. Caesar neque corpore
neque animo infirmus erat. 10. Illud bellum tum
incepit cum Caesar fuit consul.

**Page 133**

Observe in each case what mood follows *cum\, and
try to give the reasons for its use. In the third
sentence the* cum\ clause is concessive, in the
fourth and sixth causal.
  
II. 1. That battle was fought at the time when
(tum cum) I was at Rome. 2. Though the horsemen
were few in number, nevertheless they did not retreat.
3. When the camp had been sufficiently fortified,
the enemy returned home. 4. Since the tribes
are giving hostages to each other, we shall inform
Caesar. 5. The Gauls and the Germans are very
unlike in language and laws.

**LESSON LXXI**

**VOCABULARY REVIEW : THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE : THE PREDICATE GENITIVE** *401.* Review the word lists in Secs. 510, 511.
 *402.* The Gerund. Suppose we had to translate
the sentence
 *By overcoming the Gauls Caesar won
great glory*  
We can see that *overcoming* here is a verbal
noun corresponding to the English infinitive in \_-ing\_,
and that the thought calls for the ablative of means.
To translate this by the Latin infinitive would be
impossible, because the infinitive is indeclinable
and therefore has no ablative case form. Latin,
however, has another verbal noun of corresponding
meaning, called the *gerund\, declined as a neuter
of the second declension in the \_genitive\_, \_dative\_,
\_accusative\_, and \_ablative singular\_, and thus supplying
the cases that the infinitive lacks.[1] Hence, to
decline in Latin the verbal noun \_overcoming\_, we
should use the infinitive for the nominative and the
gerund for the other cases, as follows:* 
Nom. supera:re, *overcoming, to overcome* INFINITIVE
Gen. superandi:, *of overcoming* }
Dat. superando:, *for overcoming* }
Acc. superandum, *overcoming* } GERUND
Abl. superando:, *by overcoming* }
  
Like the infinitive, the gerund governs the same case
as the verb from which it is derived. So the
sentence given above becomes in Latin
  
 Superando Gallos Caesar magnam gloriam
reportavit
  
 [Footnote 1: Sometimes,
however, the infinitive is used as an  
 accusative.]
 *403.* The gerund[2] is formed by adding /-ndi:,
-ndo, -ndum, -ndo\, to the present stem, which is
shortened or otherwise changed, as shown below:

**PARADIGM OF THE GERUND**

CONJ. I CONJ. II CONJ. III CONJ. IV
Gen. amandi: monendi: regendi: capiendi: audiendi:
Dat. amando: monendo: regendo: capiendo: audiendo:
Acc. amandum monendum regendum capiendum audiendum
Abl. amando: monendo: regendo: capiendo: audiendo:
 *a.* Give the gerund
of *curo\,* deleo\, *sumo\,* iacio\, *venio\.  
b.* Deponent verbs have
the gerund of the active voice (see Sec.  
 493). Give the gerund
of *conor\,* vereor\, *sequor\,* patior\, *partior\.*

**Page 134**

[Footnote 2: The gerund
is the neuter singular of the future  
 passive participle used as
a noun, and has the same formation.   
 (Cf. Sec. 374.d.)]
 *404.* The Gerundive. The gerundive is the
name given to the future passive participle (Sec.
374.d) when the participle approaches the meaning
of a verbal noun and is translated like a gerund.
It is the adjective corresponding to the gerund.
For example, to translate *the plan of waging war*,
we may use the gerund with its direct object and say
*consilium gerendi bellum\; or we may use the gerundive
and say* consilium belli gerendi\, which means,
literally, *the plan of the war to be waged*,
but which came to have the same force as the gerund
with its object, and was even preferred to it.
 *405.* Compare the following parallel uses of
the gerund and gerundive:
  
GERUND
GERUNDIVE  
Gen. Spes faciendi pacem Spes faciendae
pacis  
Dat. Locus idoneus pugnando Locus
idoneus castris ponendis *A place suitable for* A
place suitable for  
fighting\_ pitching
camp\_  
Acc. Misit equites ad insequendum Misit
equites ad insequendos  
hostis *He sent horsemen to pursue* *He
sent horsemen to pursue  
the enemy*  
Abl. Narrando fabulas magister Narrandis
fabulis magister  
pueris placuit pueris
placuit *The teacher pleased the* The
teacher pleased the  
boys by telling stories\_ boys
by telling stories\_
 *a.* We observe
(1) That the gerund is a noun and the gerundive an adjective. (2) That the gerund, being a noun, may stand alone or with an object. (3) That the gerundive, being an adjective, is used only in agreement with a noun. *406.* RULE. Gerund and Gerundive.
  
 1. *The Gerund is a verbal noun and
is used only in the genitive,  
 dative, accusative, and ablative singular.
The constructions of these  
 cases are in general the same as those
of other nouns.*2. *The Gerundive is a verbal adjective and must be used instead of gerund + object excepting in the genitive and in the ablative without a preposition.  Even in these instances the gerundive construction is more usual.  
407.* RULE. Gerund or Gerundive of Purpose.
*The accusative of the gerund or gerundive withad\, \_or the genitive with* causa\[3] (= for
the sake of), is used to express purpose.\_
GERUND GERUNDIVE
Ad audiendum venerunt or Ad urbem videndam venerunt or
Audiendi causa venerunt Urbis videndae causa venerunt
*They came to hear* *They came to see the city*  
 [Footnote 3: *causa\
always \_follows\_ the genitive.]*  
NOTE. These sentences might, of course, be written
with the subjunctive of purpose,—­*venerunt
ut audirent\;* venerunt ut urbem viderent\.
In short expressions, however, the gerund and gerundive
of purpose are rather more common.

**Page 135**

*408.* We have learned that the word denoting
the owner or possessor of something is in the genitive,
as, *equus Galbae\, \_Galba’s horse.\_ If, now,
we wish to express the idea \_the horse is Galba’s\_,
Galba remains the possessor, and hence in the genitive
as before, but now stands in the predicate, as,* equus
est Galbae\. Hence this is called the predicate
genitive.
 *409.* RULE. Predicate Genitive. *The
possessive genitive often stands in the predicate,
especially after the forms of /sum\, and is then called
the predicate genitive.  
410.* IDIOMS
  
 alicui negotium dare, *to employ someone*  
 (lit. *to give business
to some one*)  
 novis rebus studere, *to be eager for
a revolution*  
 (lit. *to be eager for new
things*)  
 rei militaris peritissimus, *very skillful
in the art of war*  
 se suaque omnia, *themselves and all
their possessions  
411.* EXERCISES
  
I. 1. Caesar cum in Gallia bellum gereret, militibus
decimae legionis maxime favit quia rei militaris peritissimi
erant. 2. Sociis negotium dedit rei frumentariae
curandae. 3. Legati non solum audiendi causa sed
etiam dicendi causa venerunt. 4. Imperator iussit
exploratores locum idoneum munindo reperire. 5.
Nuper hae gentes novis rebus studebant; mox iis persuadebo
ut Caesari se suaque omnia dedant. 6. Iubere est
reginae[4] et parere est multitudinis.[4] 7. Hoc
proelio facto quidam ex hostibus ad pacem petendam
venerunt. 8. Erant qui arma tradere nollent.
9. Hostes tam celeriter progressi sunt ut spatium
pila in hostis iaciendi non daretur. 10. Spatium
neque arma capiendi[5] neque auxili petendi[5] datum
est.
  
II. 1. These ornaments [6]belong to Cornelia.
2. Men very skillful in the art of war were sent
[7]to capture the town. 3. The scouts found a
hill suitable for fortifying very near to the river.
4. Soon the cavalry will come [8]to seek supplies.
5. The mind of the Gauls is eager for revolution
and for undertaking wars. 6. To lead the line
of battle [9]belongs to the general. 7. [10]Whom shall
we employ to look after the grain supply?
  
 [Footnote 4: Predicate
genitive.]
  
 [Footnote 5: Which of
these expressions is gerund and which  
 gerundive?]
  
 [Footnote 6: *belong
to* = *are of*.]
  
 [Footnote 7: Use the
gerundive with *ad\.]*  
 [Footnote 8: Use the
genitive with *causa\. Where should* causa\  
 stand?]
  
 [Footnote 9: Compare
the first sentence.]
  
 [Footnote 10: Compare
the second sentence in the Latin above.]

**LESSON LXXII**

**THE IRREGULAR VERB *EO:* : INDIRECT STATEMENTS** *412.* Learn the principal parts and the conjugation
of *eo:\, \_go\_ (Sec. 499).  
a.* Notice that i:-,
the root of *eo:\, is changed to e- before  
 a vowel, excepting in* iens\,
the nominative of the present  
 participle. In the perfect
system -v- is regularly dropped.

**Page 136**

[ Conjugation given in Sec. 499:
PRINCIPAL PARTS eo:, i:re, ii:  (i:vi:), itum (n. perf. part.)  
PRES.  STEM i:-  
PERF.  STEM i:- or i:v-  
PART.  STEM it-  
INDICATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE
IMPERATIVE  
SING. PLUR.   
Pres. eo: i:mus eam
*2d Pers.* i: i:te  
i:s i:tis  
it eunt  
Impf. i:bam i:rem *Fut. i:bo: ——­*2d Pers.\_ i:to: i:to:te *3d
Pers.* i:to: eunto:   
Perf. ii: (i:vi:) ierim (i:verim)  
Plup. ieram (i:veram) i:ssem (i:vissem)  
F. P. iero: (i:vero:)
INFINITIVE  
Pres. i:re  
Perf. i:sse (i:visse)  
Fut. itu:rus, -a, -um esse  
 PARTICIPLES  
 Pres. ie:ns, *gen.* euntis (Sec.
472)  
 Fut. itu:rus, -a, -um  
 Ger. eundum
  
 GERUND  
 Gen. eundi:   
 Dat. eundo:   
 Acc. eundum  
 Abl. eundo:
  
 SUPINE  
 Acc. [[itum]]  
 Abl. [[itu:]] ]
 *413.* Learn the meaning and principal parts
of the following compounds of *eo:\ with prepositions:*   
 ad’eo:, adi:’re, ad’ii:,
ad’itus, *go to, visit*, with the accusative  
 ex’eo:, exi:’re, ex’ii:,
ex’itus, *go forth*, with *ex\ or* de\  
 and the ablative of the place
from which  
 in’eo:, ini:’re, in’ii:,
in’itus, *begin, enter upon*,  
 with the accusative  
 red’eo:, redi:’re, red’ii:,
red’itus, *return*, with *ad\ or* in\
and  
 the accusative of the place
to which  
 tra:ns’eo:, tra:nsi:’re, tra:ns’ii:,
tra:ns’itus, *cross*,  
 with the accusative
 *414.* Indirect Statements in English. Direct
statements are those which the speaker or writer makes
himself or which are quoted in his exact language.
Indirect statements are those reported in a different
form of words from that used by the speaker or writer.
Compare the following direct and indirect statements:
  
{ 1. The
Gauls are brave  
Direct statements { 2. The Gauls were brave  
{ 3. The Gauls will be
brave
  
Indirect statements { 1. *He says*
that the Gauls *are* brave  
after a verb in { 2. *He says* that the
Gauls *were* brave  
the present tense { 3. *He says* that the
Gauls *will be* brave
Indirect statements { 1. *He said* that the Gauls *were* brave
after a verb in { 2. *He said* that the Gauls *had been* brave
a past tense { 3. *He said* that the Gauls *would be* brave
  
We see that in English
 *a.* The indirect statement
forms a clause introduced by the  
 conjunction *that*.
 *b.* The verb is finite
(cf. Sec. 173) and its subject is in the  
 nominative.
 *c.* The tenses of the verbs
originally used are changed after the  
past tense, *He said.*

**Page 137**

*415.* Indirect Statements in Latin. In
Latin the direct and indirect statements above would
be as follows:
  
DIRECT { 1. Galli sunt fortes  
STATEMENTS { 2. Galli erant fortes  
{ 3. Galli erunt fortes
  
{ 1. *Dicit\ or* Dixit
Gallos esse fortis\  
{ (*He says* or *He said*  
{ *the Gauls to be brave*)[1]  
INDIRECT { 2. *Dicit\ or* Dixit Gallos fuisse
fortis\  
STATEMENTS { (*He says* or *He said*  
{ *the Gauls to have been brave*)[1]  
{ 3. *Dicit\ or* Dixit Gallos futuros
esse fortis\  
{ (*He says* or *He said*  
{ *the Gauls to be about to be
brave*)[1]
  
[Footnote 1: These parenthetical
renderings are not inserted as  
translations, but merely to show the literal meaning
of the Latin.]
  
Comparing these Latin indirect statements with the
English in the preceding section, we observe three
marked differences:
 *a.* There is no conjunction
corresponding to *that*.
 *b.* The verb is in the infinitive
and its subject is in the  
accusative.
 *c.* The tenses of the
infinitive are not changed after a past tense  
 of the principal verb.
 *416.* RULE. Indirect Statements. *When
a direct statement becomes indirect, the principal
verb is changed to the infinitive and its subject
nominative becomes subject accusative of the infinitive.  
417.* Tenses of the Infinitive. When the
sentences in Sec. 415 were changed from the direct
to the indirect form of statement, *sunt\ became*esse\, *erant\ became* fuisse\, and *erunt\
became* futuros esse\.
 *418.* RULE. Infinitive Tenses in Indirect
Statements. *A present indicative of a direct statement
becomes present infinitive of the indirect, a past
indicative becomes perfect infinitive, and a future
indicative becomes future infinitive.*  
NOTE. When translating into Latin an English
indirect statement, first decide what tense of the
indicative would have been used in the direct form.
That will show you what tense of the infinitive to
use in the indirect.
 *419.* RULE. Verbs followed by Indirect
Statements. *The accusative-with-infinitive construction
in indirect statements is found after verbs of /saying\,
/telling\, /knowing\, /thinking\, and /perceiving\.  
420.* Verbs regularly followed by indirect statements
are:
 *a*. Verbs of saying and telling:   
 dico, dicere, dixi, dictus,
*say*  
 nego, negare, negavi, negatus,
*deny, say not*  
 nuntio, nuntiare, nuntiavi,
nuntiatus, *announce*  
 respondeo, respondere, respondi,
responsus, *reply  
b*. Verbs of knowing:   
 cognosco, cognoscere, cognovi,
cognitus, *learn*,  
 (in the perf.)
*know*  
 scio, scire, scivi, scitus,
*know*

**Page 138**

*c*. Verbs of thinking:   
 arbitror, arbitrari, arbitratus
sum, *think, consider*  
 existimo, existimare, existimavi,
existimatus, *think, believe*  
 iudico, iudicare, iudicavi,
iudicatus, *judge, decide*  
 puto, putare, putavi, putatus,
*reckon, think*  
 spero, sperare, speravi, speratus,
*hope  
d*. Verbs of perceiving:   
 audio, audire, audivi, auditus,
*hear*  
 sentio, sentire, sensi, sensus,
*feel, perceive*  
 video, videre, vidi, visus,
*see*  
 intellego, intellegere, intellexi,
intellectus, *understand,  
 perceive*  
Learn such of these verbs as are new to you.
 *421.* IDIOMS  
 postridie eius diei, *on the next day*  
 (lit. *on the next day of
that day*)  
 inita aestate, *at the beginning of
summer*  
 memoria tenere, *to remember* (lit.
*to hold by memory*)  
 per exploratores cognoscere, *to learn
through scouts  
422.* EXERCISES
  
I. 1. It, imus, ite, ire. 2. Eunti, iisse
*or* isse, ibunt, eunt. 3. Eundi, ut eant,
ibitis, is. 4. Ne irent, i, ibant, ierat. 5.
Caesar per exploratores cognovit Gallos flumen transisse.
6. Romani audiverunt Helvetios inita aestate
de finibus suis exituros esse. 7. Legati responderunt
neminem ante Caesarem illam insulam adisse. 8.
Principes Gallorum dicunt se nullum consilium contra
Caesaris imperium inituros esse. 9. Arbitramur
potentiam reginae esse maiorem quam civium. 10.
Romani negant se libertatem Gallis erepturos esse.
11. His rebus cognitis sensimus legatos non venisse
ad pacem petendam. 12. Helvetii sciunt Romanos
priores victorias memoria tenere. 13. Socii cum
intellegerent multos vulnerari, statuerunt in suos
finis redire. 14. Aliquis nuntiavit Marcum consulem
creatum esse.
  
II. 1. The boy is slow. He says that the
boy is, was, (and) will be slow. 2. The horse
is, has been, (and) will be strong. He judged
that the horse was, had been, (and) would be strong.
3. We think that the army will go forth from
the camp at the beginning of summer. 4. The next
day we learned through scouts that the enemy’s
town was ten miles off.[2] 5. The king replied
that the ornaments belonged to[3] the queen.
  
 [Footnote 2: *to be
off, to be distant*, *abesse\.]*  
 [Footnote 3: Latin, *were
of* (Sec. 409).]
  
 [Illustration: TUBA]

**LESSON LXXIII**

VOCABULARY REVIEW : THE IRREGULAR VERB *FERO:*  
THE DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS
 *423.* Review the word lists in Secs. 513, 514.
 *424.* Learn the principal parts and conjugation
of the verb *fero:\, \_bear\_ (Sec. 498).*  
 1. Learn the principal parts and
meanings of the following compounds  
 of fero:, *bear*:

**Page 139**

ad’fero:, adfer’re, at’tuli:,
adla:’tus, *bring to; report*  
 co:n’fero:, co:nfer’re, con’tuli:,
conla:’tus, *bring together,  
 collect*  
 de’fero:, defer’re, de’tuli:,
dela:’tus, *bring to; report;  
 grant, confer*  
 i:n’fero:, i:nfer’re, in’tuli:,
inla:’tus, *bring in, bring against*  
 re’fero:, refer’re, ret’tuli:,
rela:’tus, *bear back, report*  
[ Conjugation given in Sec. 498:
  
PRINCIPAL PARTS fero:, ferre, tuli:,
la:tus  
PRES. STEM fer- PERF. STEM tul-
PART. STEM la:t-
INDICATIVE
ACTIVE PASSIVE
Pres. fero: ferimus feror ferimur
fers ferti:s ferris, -re ferimimi:
fert ferunt fertur feruntur
Impf. fere:bam fere:bar
Fut. feram, fere:s, *etc*. ferar, fere:ris, *etc*.
Perf. tuli: la:tus, -a, -um sum
Plup. tuleram la:tus, -a, -um eram
F. P. tulero: la:tus, -a, -um ero:
SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres. feram, fera:s, *etc*. ferar, fera:ris, *etc*.
Impf. ferrem ferrer
Perf. tulerim la:tus, -a, -um sim
Plup. tulissem la:tus, -a, -um essem
IMPERATIVE
Pres. 2d Pers. fer ferte ferre ferimini:
Fut. 2d Pers. ferto: ferto:te fertor
3d Pers. ferto: ferunto fertor feruntor
INFINITIVE
Pres. ferre ferri:
Perf. tulisse la:tus, -a, -um esse
Fut. la:tu:rus, -a, -um esse ——­
PARTICIPLES
Pres. fere:ns, -entis Pres. ——­
Fut. la:tu:rus, -a, -um Ger. ferendus, -a, -um
Perf. ——­ Perf. la:tus, -a, -um
  
 GERUND  
 Gen. ferendi:   
 Dat. ferendo:   
 Acc. ferendum  
 Abl. ferendo:
  
 SUPINE (Active Voice)  
 Acc. [[la:tum]]  
 Abl. [[la:tu:]] ]
 *425.* The dative is the case of the indirect
object. Many intransitive verbs take an indirect
object and are therefore used with the dative (cf.
Sec. 153). Transitive verbs take a direct object
in the accusative; but sometimes they have an indirect
object or dative as well. *The whole question, then,
as to whether or not a verb takes the dative, defends
upon its capacity for governing an indirect object.*
A number of verbs, some transitive and some intransitive,
which in their simple form would not take an indirect
object, when compounded with certain prepositions,
have a meaning which calls for an indirect object.
Observe the following sentences:
  
 1. Haec res exercitui magnam calamitatem
attulit, *this circumstance  
 brought great disaster to the army.*  
 2. Germani Gallis bellum inferunt,
*the Germans make war upon the  
 Gauls.*  
 3. Hae copiae proelio non intererant,
*these troops did not take  
 part in the battle.*

**Page 140**

4. Equites fugientibus hostibus occurrunt,
*the horsemen meet the  
 fleeing enemy.*  
 5. Galba copiis filium praefecit,
*Galba put his son in command of  
 the troops.*  
In each sentence there is a dative, and in each a
verb combined with a preposition. In no case
would the simple verb take the dative.
 *426.* RULE. Dative with Compounds. *Some
verbs compounded with /ad\, /ante\, /con\, /de\, /in\,
/inter\, /ob\, /post\, /prae\, /pro\, /sub\, /super\,
admit the dative of the indirect object. Transitive
compounds may take both an accusative and a dative.*  
NOTE 1. Among such verbs are[1]
  
 ad’fero, adfer’re, at’tuli,
adla’tus, *bring to; report*  
 ad’sum, ades’se, ad’fui,
adfutu’rus, *assist; be present*  
 de’fero, defer’re, de’tuli,
delatus, *report; grant, confer*  
 de’sum, dees’se, de’fui,——­,
*be wanting, be lacking*  
 in’fero, infer’re, in’tuli,
inla’tus, *bring against, bring upon*  
 inter’sum, interes’se, inter’fui,
interfutu’rus, *take part in*  
 occur’ro, occur’rere, occur’ri,
occur’sus, *run against, meet*  
 praefi’cio, praefi’cere, praefe’ci,
praefec’tus, *appoint over,  
 place in command of*  
 prae’sum, praees’se, prae’fui,
——­, *be over, be in command*  
 [Footnote 1: But the
accusative with *ad\ or* in\ is used with some  
 of these, when the idea of
*motion to* or *against* is strong.]
 *427.* IDIOMS
  
 graviter or moleste ferre, *to be annoyed
at, to be indignant at*,  
 followed by the accusative
and infinitive  
 se conferre ad or in, with the accusative, *to betake one’s self
to*  
 alicui bellum inferre, *to make war
upon some one*  
 pedem referre, *to retreat* (lit.
*to bear back the foot*)
 *428.* EXERCISES
  
I. 1. Fer, ferent, ut ferant, ferunt. 2.
Ferte, ut ferrent, tulisse, tulerant. 3. Tulimus,
ferens, latus esse, ferre. 4. Cum navigia insulae
adpropinquarent, barbari terrore commoti pedem referre
conati sunt. 5. Galli moleste ferebant Romanos
agros vastare. 6. Caesar sociis imperavit ne
finitimis suis bellum inferrent. 7. Exploratores,
qui Caesari occurrerunt, dixerunt exercitum hostium
vulneribus defessum sese in alium locum contulisse.
8. Hostes sciebant Romanos frumento egere et
hanc rem Caesari summum periculum adlaturam esse. 9.
Impedimentis in unum locum conlatis, aliqui militum
flumen quod non longe aberat transierunt. 10.
Hos rex hortatus est ut oraculum adirent et res auditas
ad se referrent. 11. Quem imperator illi legioni
praefecit? Publius illi legioni pracerat. 12.
Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Gallia, crebri ad eum[2]
rumores adferebantur litterisque quoque certior fiebat
Gallos obsides inter se dare.
  
II. 1. The Gauls will make war upon Caesar’s
allies. 2. We heard that the Gauls would make
war upon Caesar’s allies. 3. Publius did
not take part in that battle. 4. We have been
informed that Publius did not take part in that battle.
5. The man who was in command of the cavalry was
wounded and began to retreat. 6. Caesar did not
place you in command of the cohort to bring[3] disaster
upon the army.

**Page 141**

[Footnote 2: Observe
that when *adfero\ denotes \_motion to\_, it is  
 not followed by the dative;
cf. footnote, p. 182.]*  
 [Footnote 3: Not the
infinitive. (Cf. Sec. 352.)]

**LESSON LXXIV**

**VOCABULARY REVIEW : THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS** *429.* Review the word lists in Secs. 517, 518.
 *430.* When we report a statement instead of
giving it directly, we have an indirect statement.
(Cf. Sec. 414.) So, if we report a question instead
of asking it directly, we have an indirect question.
DIRECT QUESTION INDIRECT QUESTION
*Who conquered the Gauls? He asked who conquered the Gauls  
a.* An indirect question
depends, usually as object, upon a verb of  
 asking (as peto, postulo,
quaero, rogo) or upon some verb or  
 expression of saying or mental
action. (Cf. Sec. 420.)
 *431.* Compare the following direct and indirect
questions:
  
DIRECT INDIRECT
  
Quis Gallos vincit? { *a.*
Rogat quis Gallos vincat *Who is conquering the* { *He asks
who is conquering the  
Gauls?* { *Gauls*  
{ *b.* Rogavit quis
Gallos vinceret  
{ *He asked who
was conquering*  
{ *the Gauls*
{ *a.* Rogat ubi sit Roma
Ubi est Roma? { *He asks where Rome isWhere is Rome?* { *b.* Rogavit ubi esset Roma
{ *He asked where Rome was*  
{ *a.*
Rogat num Caesar Gallos vicerit  
{ *He asks whether
Caesar conquered*  
Caesarne Gallos vicit? { *the Gauls  
Did Caesar conquer the* { *b.* *Rogavit
num Caesar Gallos  
\_Gauls?\_ { vicisset  
{ \_He asked whether
Caesar had\_  
{ \_conquered the
Gauls\_  
a.* The verb in a direct
question is in the indicative mood, but  
the mood is subjunctive in an indirect question.
 *b.* The tense of the subjunctive
follows the rules for tense  
sequence.
*c.* Indirect questions are introduced by the same interrogative words as introduce direct questions, excepting that\_yes\_-or-*no* direct questions (cf.  Sec. 210) on becoming indirect are usually introduced by *num\, \_whether\_.*  
\_432.\_ RULE. Indirect Questions. \_In an indirect
question the verb is in the subjunctive and its tense
is determined by the law for tense sequence.\_
 *433.* IDIOMS
de tertia vigilia, *about the third watch* iniurias alicui inferre, *to inflict injuries upon some one* facere verba pro, with the ablative, *to speak in behalf of* in reliquum tempus, *for the future  
434.* EXERCISES

**Page 142**

I. 1. Rex rogavit quid legati postularent et
cur ad se venissent. 2. Quaesivit quoque num
nec recentis iniurias nec dubiam Romanorum amicitiam
memoria tenerent. 3. Videtisne quae oppida hostes
oppugnaverint? 4. Nonne scitis cur Galli sub montem
sese contulerint? 5. Audivimus quas iniurias
tibi Germani intulissent. 6. De tertia vigilia
imperator misit homines qui cognoscerent quae esset
natura montis. 7. Pro his orator verba fecit
et rogavit cur consules navis ad plenem summi periculi
locum mittere vellent. 8. Legatis convocatis
demonstravit quid fieri vellet. 9. Nuntius referebat
quid in Gallorum concilio de armis tradendis dictum
esset. 10. Moneo ne in reliquum tempus pedites
et equites trans flumen ducas.
  
II. 1. What hill did they seize? I see what
hill they seized. 2. Who has inflicted these
injuries upon our dependents? 3. They asked who
had inflicted those injuries upon their dependents.
4. Whither did you go about the third watch?
You know whither I went. 5. At what time did the
boys return home? I will ask at what time the
boys returned home.

**LESSON LXXV**

**VOCABULARY REVIEW : THE DATIVE OF PURPOSE, OR END FOR WHICH** *435.* Review the word lists in Secs. 521, 522.
 *436.* Observe the following sentences:
  
 1. Exploratores locum castris delegerunt,
*the scouts chose a place  
 for a camp.*  
 2. Hoc erat magno impedimento Gallis,
*this was* (for) *a great  
 hindrance to the Gauls.*  
 3. Duas legiones praesidio castris
reliquit, *he left two legions  
 as* (lit. *for*) *a guard to
the camp.*  
In each of these sentences we find a dative expressing
the *purpose or end for which* something is intended
or for which it serves. These datives are *castris\,*impedimento\, and *praesidio\. In the second
and third sentences we find a second dative expressing
the \_person or thing affected\_ (Gallis and castris).
As you notice, these are true datives, covering the
relations of \_for which\_ and \_to which\_. (Cf.
Sec. 43.)  
437.* RULE. Dative of Purpose or End. *The
dative is used to denote the /purpose or end for which\,
often with another dative denoting the /person or
thing affected\.  
438.* IDIOMS
  
 consilium omittere, *to give up a plan*  
 locum castris deligere, *to choose a
place for a camp*  
 alicui magno usui esse, *to be of great
advantage to some one*  
 (lit. *for great advantage
to some one*)
 *439.* EXERCISES

**Page 143**

I. 1. Rogavit cur illae copiae relictae essent.
Responderunt illas copias esse praesidio castris.
2. Caesar misit exploratores ad locum deligendum
castris. 3. Quisque existimavit ipsum nomen Caesaris
magno terrori barbaris futurum esse. 4. Prima
luce idem exercitus proelium acre commisit, sed gravia
suorum vulnera magnae curae imperatori erant. 5.
Rex respondit amicitiam populi Romani sibi ornamento
et praesidio debere esse. 6. Quis praeerat equitatui
quem auxilio Caesari socii miserant? 7. Aliquibus
res secundae sunt summae calamitati et res adversae
sunt miro usui. 8. Gallis magno ad pugnam erat
impedimento quod equitatus a dextro cornu premebat.
9. Memoria pristinae virtutis non minus quam
metus hostium erat nostris magno usui. 10. Tam
densa erat silva ut progredi non possent.
  
II. 1. I advise you [1]to give up the plan [2]of
making war upon the brave Gauls. 2. Do you know
[3]where the cavalry has chosen a place for a camp?
3. The fear of the enemy will be of great advantage
to you. 4. Caesar left three cohorts as (for)
a guard to the baggage. 5. In winter the waves
of the lake are so great [4]that they are (for) a great
hindrance to ships. 6. Caesar inflicted severe[5]
punishment on those who burned the public buildings.
  
 [Footnote 1: Subjunctive
of purpose. (Cf. Sec. 366.)]
  
 [Footnote 2: Express
by the genitive of the gerundive.]
  
 [Footnote 3: Indirect
question.]
  
 [Footnote 4: A clause
of result.]
  
 [Footnote 5: *gravis,
-e\.]*

**LESSON LXXVI**

**VOCABULARY REVIEW : THE GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF QUALITY OR DESCRIPTION** *440.* Review the word lists in Secs. 524, 525.
 *441.* Observe the English sentences
  
 (1) *A man /of\ great courage*, or
(2) *A man /with\ great courage*  
 (3) *A forest /of\ tall trees*, or
(4) *A forest /with\ tall trees*  
Each of these sentences contains a phrase of quality
or description. In the first two a man is described;
in the last two a forest. The descriptive phrases
are introduced by the prepositions *of* and *with*.
  
In Latin the expression of quality or description
is very similar.
  
The prepositions *of* and *with* suggest
the genitive and the ablative respectively, and we
translate the sentences above
  
 (1) *Vir magnae virtutis\, or (2)* Vir
magna virtute\  
 (3) *Silva altarum arborum\, or (4)*Silva altis arboribus\
  
There is, however, one important difference between
the Latin and the English. In English we may
say, for example, *a man of courage*, using the
descriptive phrase without an adjective modifier. *In
Latin, however, an adjective modifier must always
be used*, as above.
*a.* Latin makes a distinction between the use of the two cases in that *numerical descriptions of measure are in the genitive* and *descriptions of physical characteristics are in the ablative.* Other descriptive phrases may be in either case. *442.* EXAMPLES

**Page 144**

1. Fossa duodecim pedum, *a ditch
of twelve feet*.
  
 2. Homo magnis pedibus et parvo capite, *a man with big feet
and a small head*.
  
 3. *Rex erat vir summa audacia\ or* rex
erat vir summae audaciae\, *the king was a man of the
greatest boldness*.
 *443.* RULE. Genitive of Description. *Numerical
descriptions of measure are expressed by the genitive
with a modifying adjective.  
444.* RULE. Ablative of Description. *Descriptions
of physical characteristics are expressed by the ablative
with a modifying adjective.  
445.* RULE. Genitive or Ablative of Description.
*Descriptions involving neither numerical statements
nor physical characteristics may be expressed by either
the genitive or the ablative with a modifying adjective.  
446.* IDIOMS
  
 Helvetiis in animo est, *the Helvetii
intend*,  
 (lit. *it is in mind to
the Helvetians*)  
 in matrimonium dare, *to give in marriage*  
 nihil posse, *to have no power*  
 fossam perducere, *to construct a ditch*  
 (lit. *to lead a ditch through*)
 *447.* EXERCISES
  
I. 1. Milites fossam decem pedum per eorum finis
perduxerunt. 2. Princeps Helvetiorum, vir summae
audaciae, principibus gentium finitimarum sorores
in matrimonium dedit. 3. Eorum amicitiam confirmare
voluit quo facilius Romanis bellum inferret. 4.
Germani et Galli non erant eiusdem gentis. 5.
Omnes fere Germani erant magnis corporum viribus.[1]
6. Galli qui oppidum fortiter defendebant saxa
ingentis magnitudinis de muro iaciebant. 7. Cum
Caesar ab exploratoribus quaereret qui illud oppidum
incolerent, exploratores responderunt eos esse homines
summa virtute et magno consilio. 8. Moenia viginti
pedum a sinistra parte, et a dextra parte flumen magnae
altitudinis oppidum defendebant. 9. Cum Caesar
in Galliam pervenisset, erat rumor Helvetiis in animo
esse iter per provinciam Romanam facere. 10. Caesar,
ut eos ab finibus Romanis prohiberet, munitionem [2]multa
milia passuum longam fecit.
  
II. 1. Caesar was a general of much wisdom and
great boldness, and very skillful in the art of war.
2. The Germans were of great size, and thought
that the Romans had no power. 3. Men of the highest
courage were left in the camp as (for) a guard to
the baggage. 4. The king’s daughter, who
was given in marriage to the chief of a neighboring
state, was a woman of very beautiful appearance. 5.
The soldiers will construct a ditch of nine feet around
the camp. 6. A river of great width was between
us and the enemy.
  
 [Footnote 1: From *vis\.
(Cf. Sec. 468.)]*

**Page 145**

[Footnote 2:  Genitives and ablatives of description are adjective phrases.  When we use an *adverbial* phrase to tell *how long* or *how high* or *how deep* anything is, we must use the accusative of extent. (Cf.  Sec. 336.) For example, in the sentence above *multa milia passuum\ is an adverbial phrase (accusative of extent) modifying* longam\.  If we should omit *longam\ and say \_a fortification of many miles\_, the genitive of description (an adjective phrase) modifying* munitionem\ would be used, as *munitionem multorum milium passuum\.]*  
 [Illustration: GLADII]

**LESSON LXXVII**

**REVIEW OF AGREEMENT, AND OF THE GENITIVE, DATIVE, AND ACCUSATIVE** *448.* There are four agreements:
  
 1. That of the predicate noun or
of the appositive with the noun to  
 which it belongs (Secs. 76, 81).
  
 2. That of the adjective, adjective
pronoun, or participle with its  
 noun (Sec. 65).
  
 3. That of a verb with its subject
(Sec. 28).
  
 4. That of a relative pronoun with
its antecedent (Sec. 224).
 *449.* The relation expressed by the *genitive\
is, in general, denoted in English by the preposition
\_of\_. It is used to express*  
 {
*a.* As attributive (Sec. 38).  
 1. Possession {  
 {
*b.* In the predicate (Sec. 409).
  
 2. The whole of which a part is taken
(partitive genitive) (Sec. 331).
  
 3. Quality or description (Secs.
443, 445).
 *450.* The relation expressed by the *dative\
is, in general, denoted in English by the prepositions
\_to\_ or \_for\_ when they do not imply motion through
space. It is used to express*  
 {
*a.* With intransitive verbs and with  
 {
transitive verbs in connection with a  
 {
direct object in the accusative (Sec. 45).  
 1. The indirect object { *b*.
With special intransitive verbs  
 {
(Sec. 154).  
 {
*c*. With verbs compounded with *ad\,* ante\,  
 {
*con\,* de\, *in\,* inter\, *ob\,* post\,  
 {
*prae\,* pro\, *sub\,* super\ (Sec. 426).
  
 2. The object to which the quality
of an adjective is directed  
 (Sec. 143).
  
 3. The purpose, or end for which,
often with a second dative denoting  
 the person or thing affected (Sec. 437).
 *451.* The *accusative\ case corresponds, in
general, to the English objective. It is used
to express*  
 1. The direct object of a transitive
verb (Sec. 37).
  
 2. The predicate accusative together
with the direct object after  
 verbs of *making, choosing, falling,
showing*, and the like (Sec.  
 392).

**Page 146**

3. The subject of the infinitive
(Sec. 214).
  
 4. The object of prepositions that
do not govern the ablative (Sec.  
 340).
  
 5. The duration of time and the extent
of space (Sec. 336).
  
 6. The place to which (Secs. 263,
266).
 *452.* EXERCISES
  
I. 1. Milites quos vidimus dixerunt imperium
belli esse Caesaris imperatoris. 2. Helvetii
statuerunt quam[1] maximum numerum equorum et carrorum
cogere. 3. Totius Galliae Helvetii plurimum valuerunt.
4. Multas horas acriter pugnatum est neque quisquam
poterat videre hostem fugientem. 5. Viri summae
virtutis hostis decem milia passuum insecuti sunt.
6. Caesar populo Romano persuasit ut se consulem
crearet. 7. Victoria exercitus erat semper imperatori
gratissima. 8. Triduum iter fecerunt et Genavam,
in oppidum[2] hostium, pervenerunt. 9. Caesar
audivit Germanos bellum Gallis intulisse. 10.
Magno usui militibus Caesaris erat quod prioribus
proeliis sese exercuerant.
  
II. 1. One[3] of the king’s sons and many
of his men were captured. 2. There was no one
who wished[4] to appoint her queen. 3. The grain
supply was always a care (for a care) to Caesar, the
general. 4. I think that the camp is ten miles
distant. 5. We marched for three hours through
a very dense forest. 6. The plan [5]of making
war upon the allies was not pleasing to the king.
7. When he came to the hill he fortified it [6]by
a twelve-foot wall.
  
 [Footnote 1: What is
the force of *quam\ with superlatives?]*  
 [Footnote 2: *urbs\
or* oppidum\, appositive to a name of a town,  
 takes a preposition.]
  
 [Footnote 3: What construction
is used with numerals in preference  
 to the partitive genitive?]
  
 [Footnote 4: What mood?
(Cf. Sec. 390.)]
  
 [Footnote 5: Use the
gerund or gerundive.]
  
 [Footnote 6: Latin, *by
a wall of twelve feet.*]

**LESSON LXXVIII**

**REVIEW OF THE ABLATIVE** *453.* The relations of the ablative are, in
general, expressed in English by the prepositions
*with* (or *by*), *from* (or *by*),
and *in* (or *at*). The constructions
growing out of these meanings are
  
 I. Ablative rendered *with* (or *by*):   
 1. Cause (Sec. 102)  
 2. Means (Sec. 103)  
 3. Accompaniment (Sec.
104)  
 4. Manner (Sec. 105)  
 5. Measure of difference
(Sec. 317)  
 6. With a participle
(ablative absolute) (Sec. 381)  
 7. Description or quality
(Secs. 444, 445)  
 8. Specification (Sec.
398)
  
 II. Ablative rendered *from*
(or *by*):   
 1. Place from which (Secs.
179, 264)  
 2. Ablative of separation
(Sec. 180)  
 3. Personal agent with
a passive verb (Sec. 181)  
 4. Comparison without
*quam\ (Sec. 309)*

**Page 147**

III. Ablative rendered *in*
(or *at*):   
 1. Place at or in which
(Secs. 265, 266)  
 2. Time when or within
which (Sec. 275)
 *454.* EXERCISES
  
I. 1. Galli locis superioribus occupatis itinere
exercitum prohibere conantur. 2. Omnes oppidani
ex oppido egressi salutem fuga petere inceperunt.
3. Caesar docet se militum vitam sua salute habere
multo cariorem. 4. Cum celerius omnium opinione
pervenisset, hostes ad eum obsides miserunt 5.
Vicus in valle positus montibus altissimis undique
continetur. 6. Plurimum inter Gallos haec gens
et virtute et hominum numero valebat. 7. Secunda
vigilia nullo certo ordine neque imperio e castris
egressi sunt. 8. Duabus legionibus Genavae relictis,
proximo die cum reliquis domum profectus est. 9.
Erant itinera duo quibus itineribus Helvetii domo
exire possent. 10. Rex erat summa audacia et magna
apud populum potentia. 11. Galli timore servitutis
commoti bellum parabant. 12. Caesar monet legatos
ut contineant milites, ne studio pugnandi aut spe
praedae longius[1] progrediantur. 13. Bellum acerrimum
a Caesare in Gallos gestum est.
  
II. 1. The lieutenant after having seized the
mountain restrained his (men) from battle. 2.
All the Gauls differ from each other in laws. 3.
This tribe is much braver than the rest. 4. This
road is [2]ten miles shorter than that. 5. In
summer Caesar carried on war in Gaul, in winter he
returned to Italy. 6. At midnight the general
set out from the camp with three legions. 7.
I fear that you cannot protect[3] yourself from these
enemies. 8. [4]After this battle was finished peace
was made by all the Gauls.
  
 [Footnote 1: *longius\,
\_too far\_. (Cf. Sec. 305.)]*  
 [Footnote 2: Latin, *by
ten thousands of paces*.]
  
 [Footnote 3: *defendere\.]*  
 [Footnote 4: Ablative
absolute.]

**LESSON LXXIX**

**REVIEW OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE, THE INFINITIVE, AND THE SUBJUNCTIVE** *455.* The gerund is a verbal noun and is used
only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative
singular. The constructions of these cases are
in general the same as those of other nouns (Secs.
402, 406.1).
 *456.* The gerundive is a verbal adjective and
must be used instead of gerund + object, excepting
in the genitive and in the ablative without a preposition.
Even in these instances the gerundive construction
is more usual (Sec. 406.2).
 *457.* The infinitive is used:
  
 I. As in English.
 *a.* As subject or predicate
nominative (Sec. 216).
 *b.* To complete the
predicate with verbs of incomplete predication  
 (complementary infinitive)
(Sec. 215).
 *c.* As object with subject
accusative after verbs of *wishing,  
 commanding, forbidding*,
and the like (Sec. 213).

**Page 148**

II. In the principal sentence of
an indirect statement after verbs  
 of *saying* and *mental action*.
The subject is in the accusative  
 (Secs. 416, 418, 419).
 *458.* The subjunctive is used:
  
 1. To denote purpose (Secs. 349,
366, 372).
  
 2. To denote consequence or result
(Secs. 385, 386).
  
 3. In relative clauses of characteristic
or description (Sec. 390).
  
 4. In *cum\ clauses of time, cause,
and concession (Sec. 396).*  
 5. In indirect questions (Sec. 432).
 *459.* EXERCISES
  
I. 1. Caesar, cum pervenisset, milites hortabatur
ne consilium oppidi capiendi omitterent. 2. Rex,
castris prope oppidum positis, misit exploratores
qui cognoscerent ubi exercitus Romanus esset. 3.
Nemo relinquebatur qui arma ferre posset. 4.
Nuntii viderunt ingentem armorum multitudinem de muro
in fossani iactam esse. 5. Dux suos transire
flumen iussit. Transire autem hoc flumen erat
difficillimum. 6. Romani cum hanc calamitatem
moleste ferrant, tamen terga vertere recusaverunt.
7. Hoc rumore audito, tantus terror omnium animos
occupavit ut ne fortissimi quidem proelium committere
vellent. 8. Erant qui putarent tempus anni idoneum
non esse itineri faciendo. 9. Tam acriter ab
utraque parte pugnabatur ut multa milia hominum occiderentur.
10. Quid times? Timeo ne Romanis in animo
sit totam Galliam superare et nobis iniurias inferre.
  
II. 1. Do you not see who is standing on the
wall? 2. We hear that the plan of taking the
town has been given up. 3. Since the Germans thought
that the Romans could not cross the Rhine, Caesar ordered
a bridge to be made. 4. When the bridge was finished,
the savages were so terrified that they hid themselves.
5. They feared that Caesar would pursue them.
6. Caesar [1]asked the traders what the size of
the island was. 7. The traders advised him not
[2]to cross the sea. 8. He sent scouts [3]to
choose a place for a camp.
  
 [Footnote 1: *quaerere
ab\.]*  
 [Footnote 2: Not infinitive.]
  
 [Footnote 3: Use the
gerundive with *ad\.]*

**READING MATTER**

**INTRODUCTORY SUGGESTIONS** *How to Translate.\ You have already had considerable
practice in translating simple Latin, and have learned
that the guide to the meaning lies in the endings
of the words. If these are neglected, no skill
can make sense of the Latin. If they are carefully
noted and accurately translated, not many difficulties
remain. Observe the following suggestions:*   
 1. Read the Latin sentence through
to the end, noting endings of  
 nouns, adjectives, verbs, *etc*.
  
 2. Read it again and see if any of
the words you know are nominatives  
 or accusatives. This will often give
you what may be called the  
 backbone of the sentence; that is, subject,
verb, and object.

**Page 149**

3. Look up the words you do not know,
and determine their use in the  
 sentence from their endings.
  
 4. If you cannot yet translate the
sentence, put down the English  
 meanings of all the words *in the same
order as the Latin words*. You  
 will then generally see through the meaning
of the sentence.
  
 5. Be careful to
 *a.* Translate adjectives
with the nouns to which they belong.
 *b.* Translate together
prepositions and the nouns which they  
 govern.
 *c.* Translate adverbs
with the words that they modify.
 *d.* *Make sense.*
If you do not make sense, you have made a  
 mistake. One mistake
will spoil a whole sentence.
  
 6. When the sentence is correctly
translated, read the Latin over  
 again, and try to understand it as Latin,
without thinking of the  
 English translation.
 *The Parts of a Sentence.\ You will now meet somewhat
longer sentences than you have had before. To
assist in translating them, remember, first of all,
that every sentence conveys a meaning and either tells
us something, asks a question, or gives a command.
Every sentence must have a subject and a verb, and
the verb may always have an adverb, and, if transitive,
will have a direct object.*  
However long a sentence is, you will usually be able
to recognize its subject, verb, and object or predicate
complement without any difficulty. These will
give you the leading thought, and they must never
be lost sight of while making out the rest of the sentence.
The chief difficulty in translating arises from the
fact that instead of a single adjective, adverb, or
noun, we often have a phrase or a clause taking the
place of one of these; for Latin, like English, has
adjective, adverbial, and substantive clauses and
phrases. For example, in the sentence *The
idle boy does not study*, the word *idle* is
an adjective. In *The boy wasting his time
does not study*, the words *wasting his time*
form an adjective phrase modifying *boy*.
In the sentence *The boy who wastes his time does
not study*, the words *who wastes his time*
form an adjective clause modifying *boy*, and
the sentence is complex. These sentences would
show the same structure in Latin.
  
In translating, it is important to keep the parts
of a phrase and the parts of a clause together and
not let them become confused with the principal sentence.
To distinguish between the subordinate clauses and
the principal sentence is of the first importance,
and is not difficult if you remember that a clause
regularly contains a word that marks it as a clause
and that this word usually stands first. These
words join clauses to the words they depend on, and
are called *subordinate conjunctions*. They
are not very numerous, and you will soon learn to
recognize them. In Latin they are the equivalents
for such words as *when, while, since, because,
if, before, after, though, in order that, that*,
*etc*. Form the habit of memorizing the Latin
subordinate conjunctions as you meet them, and of
noting carefully the mood of the verb in the clauses
which they introduce.

**Page 150**

[Illustration: HERCULES]

**THE LABORS OF HERCULES**

Hercules, a Greek hero celebrated for his great strength, was pursued throughout his life by the hatred of Juno.  While yet an infant he strangled some serpents sent by the goddess to destroy him.  During his boyhood and youth he performed various marvelous feats of strength, and on reaching manhood he succeeded in delivering the Thebans from the oppression of the Minyae.  In a fit of madness, sent upon him by Juno, he slew his own children; and, on consulting the Delphic oracle as to how he should cleanse himself from this crime, he was ordered to submit himself for twelve years to Eurystheus, king of Tiryns, and to perform whatever tasks were appointed him.  Hercules obeyed the oracle, and during the twelve years of his servitude accomplished twelve extraordinary feats known as the Labors of Hercules.  His death was caused, unintentionally, by his wife Deiani’ra.  Hercules had shot with his poisoned arrows a centaur named Nessus, who had insulted Deianira.  Nessus, before he died, gave some of his blood to Deianira, and told her it would act as a charm to secure her husband’s love.  Some time after, Deianira, wishing to try the charm, soaked one of her husband’s garments in the blood, not knowing that it was poisoned.  Hercules put on the robe, and, after suffering terrible torments, died, or was carried off by his father Jupiter.  
 [Illustration: HERCULES ET SERPENTES]
 **LIII.[1] THE INFANT HERCULES AND THE SERPENTS**  
Di[2] grave supplicium summit de malis, sed ii qui
legibus[3] deorum parent, etiam post mortem curantur.
Illa vita dis[2] erat gratissima quae hominibus miseris
utilissima fuerat. Omnium autem praemiorum summum
erat immortalitas. Illud praemium Herculi datum
est.
  
Herculis pater fuit Iuppiter, mater Alcmena, et omnium
hominum validissimus fuisse dicitur. Sed Iuno,
regina deorum, eum, adhuc infantem, interficere studebat;
nam ei[1] et[2] Hercules et Alcmena erant invisi.
Itaque misit duas serpentis, utramque saevissimam,
quae media nocte domum[3] Alcmenae venerunt.
Ibi Hercules, cum fratre suo, non in lectulo sed in
scuto ingenti dormiebat. Iam audaces serpentes
adpropinquaverant, iam scutum movebant. Tum frater,
terrore commotus, magna voce matrem vocavit, sed Hercules
ipse, fortior quam frater, statim ingentis serpentis
manibus suis rapuit et interfecit.
  
 [Footnote 1: This number
refers to the lesson after which the  
 selection may be read.]
  
 [Footnote 2: *Di:\
and* di:s\ are from *deus\. Cf. Sec.
468.]*  
 [Footnote 3: *legibus\,
Sec. 501.14.]*  
 [Footnote 1: *ei\,
\_to her\_, referring to Juno.]*  
 [Footnote 2: *et ...
et\, \_both ... and\_.]*  
 [Footnote 3: *domum\,
Sec. 501.20.]*

**LIV.  HERCULES CONQUERS THE MINYAE**

**Page 151**

Hercules a puero[1] corpus suum gravissimis et difficillimis
laboribus exercebat et hoc modo vires[2] suas confirmavit.
Iam adulescens Thebis[3] habitabat. Ibi Creon
quidam erat rex. Minyae, gens validissima, erant
finitimi Thebanis, et, quia olim Thebanos vicerant,
quotannis legatos mittebant et vectigal postulabant.
Hercules autem constituit civis suos hoc vectigali
liberare et dixit regi, “Da mihi exercitum tuum
et ego hos superbos hostis superabo.” Hanc
condicionem rex non recusavit, et Hercules nuntios
in omnis partis dimisit et copias coegit.[4] Tum tempore
opportunissimo proelium cum Minyis commisit. Diu
pugnatum est, sed denique illi impetum Thebanorum sustinere
non potuerunt et terga verterunt fugamque ceperunt.
  
 [Footnote 1: *a puero\,
\_from boyhood\_.]*  
 [Footnote 2: *vires\,
from* vis\. Cf. Sec. 468.]
  
 [Footnote 3: *Thebis\,
Sec. 501.36.1.]*  
 [Footnote 4: *coegit\,
from* cogo\.]

**HE COMMITS A CRIME AND GOES TO THE DELPHIAN ORACLE TO SEEK EXPIATION**

Post hoc proelium Creon rex, tanta victoria laetus,
filiam suam Herculi in matrimonium dedit. Thebis
Hercules cum uxore sua diu vivebat et ab omnibus magnopere
amabatur; sed post multos annos subito [1]in furorem
incidit et ipse sua manu liberos suos interfecit.
Post breve tempus [2]ad sanitatem reductus tantum
scelus expiare cupiebat et constituit ad oraculum
Delphicum iter facere. Hoc autem oraculum erat
omnium clarissimum. Ibi sedebat femina quaedam
quae Pythia appellabatur. Ea consilium dabat
iis qui ad oraculum veniebant.
  
 [Footnote 1: *in furorem
incidit\, \_went mad\_.]*  
 [Footnote 2: *ad sanitatem
reductus\, lit. \_led back to sanity\_.   
 What in good English?]*  
 [Illustration: HERCULES LEONEM SUPERAT]
  
LV. HERCULES BECOMES SUBJECT TO EURYSTHEUS[1]
:   
 HE STRANGLES THE
NEME’AN LION
  
Itaque Hercules Pythiae totam rem demonstravit nec
scelus suum abdidit. Ubi iam Hercules finem fecit,
Pythia iussit eum ad urbem Tiryntha[2] discedere et
ibi regi Eurystheo sese committere. Quae[3] ubi
audivit, Hercules ad illam urbem statim contendit
et Eurystheo se in servitutem tradidit et dixit, “Quid
primum, O rex, me facere iubes?” Eurystheus,
qui perterrebatur vi et corpore ingenti Herculis et
eum occidi[4] studebat, ita respondit: “Audi,
Hercules! Multa mira[5] narrantur de leone saevissimo
qui hoc tempore in valle Nemaea omnia vastat.
Iubeo te, virorum omnium fortissimum, illo monstro
homines liberare.” Haec verba Herculi maxime
placuerunt. “Properabo,” inquit, “et
parebo imperio[6] tuo.” Tum in silvas in
quibus leo habitabat statim iter fecit. Mox feram
vidit et pluris impetus fecit; frustra tamen, quod
neque sagittis neque ullo alio telo monstrum vulnerare
potuit. Denique Hercules saevum leonem suis ingentibus
bracchiis rapuit et faucis eius omnibus viribus compressit.
Hoc modo brevi tempore eum interfecit. Tum corpus
leonis ad oppidum in umeris reportavit et pellem postea
pro[7] veste gerebat. Omnes autem quo eam regionem
incolebant, ubi famam de morte leonis ingentis acceperunt,
erant laetissimi et Herculem laudabant verbis amplissimis.

**Page 152**

[Footnote 1: *Eu-rys’theus\
(pronounced \_U-ris’thus\_) was king of  
 \_Ti’ryns\_, a Grecian
city, whose foundation goes back to prehistoric  
 times.]*  
 [Footnote 2: *Tiryntha\,
the acc. case of* Tiryns\, a Greek noun.]
  
 [Footnote 3: *Quae\,
obj. of* audivit\. It is placed first to make
a  
 close connection with the
preceding sentence. This is called a  
 connecting relative.]
  
 [Footnote 4: *occidi\,
pres. pass. infin.]*  
 [Footnote 5: *mira\,
\_marvelous things\_, the adj. being used as a  
 noun. Cf.* omnia\,
in the next line.]
  
 [Footnote 6: *imperio\,
Sec. 501.14.]*  
 [Footnote 7: *pro\,
\_for, instead of\_.]*

**LVI.  SLAYING THE LERNE’AN HYDRA**

Deinde Hercules ab Eurystheo iussus est Hydram occidere.
Itaque cum amico Iolao[1] contendit ad paludem Lernaeam
ubi Hydra incolebat. Hoc autem monstrum erat
serpens ingens quae novem capita habebat. Mox
is monstrum repperit et summo[2] cum periculo collum
eius sinistra manu rapuit et tenuit. Tum dextra
manu capita novem abscidere incepit, sed frustra laborabat,
quod quotiens hoc fecerat totiens alia nova capita
videbat. Quod[3] ubi vidit, statuit capita igni
cremare. Hoc modo octo capita delevit, sed extremum
caput vulnerari non potuit, quod erat immortale.
Itaque illud sub ingenti saxo Hercules posuit et ita
victoriam reportavit.
  
 [Footnote 1: *Iolao\,
abl. of \_I-o-la’us\_, the hero’s best friend.]*  
 [Footnote 2: Note the
emphatic position of this adjective.]
  
 [Footnote 3: *Quod
ubi\, \_when he saw this\_, another instance of the  
 connecting relative.
Cf. p. 199, l. 3.]*

**LVII.  THE ARCADIAN STAG AND THE ERYMANTHIAN BOAR**

Postquam Eurystheo mors Hydrae nuntiata est, summus
terror animum eius occupavit. Itaque iussit Herculem
capere et ad se reportare cervum quendam; nam minime
cupivit tantum virum in regno suo tenere. Hie
autem cervus dicebatur aurea cornua et pedes multo[1]
celeriores vento[2] habere. Primum Hercules vestigia
animalis petivit, deinde, ubi cervum ipsum vidit,
omnibus viribus currere incepit. Per plurimos
dies contendit nec noctu cessavit. Denique postquam
per totum annum cucurrerat—­ita dicitur—­cervum
iam defessum cepit et ad Eurystheum portavit.
  
Tum vero iussus est Hercules aprum quendam capere
qui illo tempore agros Erymanthios vastabat et homines
illius loci magnopere perterrebat. Hercules laete
negotium suscepit et in Arcadiam celeriter se recepit.
Ibi mox aprum repperit. Ille autem; simul atque
Herculem vidit, statim quam[3] celerrime fugit et
metu perterritus in fossam altam sese abdidit.
Hercules tamen summa cum difficultate eum extraxit,
nec aper ullo modo sese liberare potuit, et vivus
ad Eurystheum portatus est.

**Page 153**

[Footnote 1: *multo\,
Sec. 501.27.]*  
 [Footnote 2: *vento\,
Sec. 501.34.]*  
 [Footnote 3: *quam\.
What is the force of* quam\ with a  
 superlative?]
  
LVIII. HERCULES CLEANS THE AUGE’AN STABLES AND KILLS THE
STYMPHALIAN BIRDS  
Deinde Eurystheus Herculi hunc laborem multo graviorem
imperavit. Augeas[1] quidam, qui illo tempore
regnum Elidis[2] obtinebat, tria milia boum[3] habebat.
Hi[4] ingenti stabulo continebantur. Hoc stabulum,
quod per triginta annos non purgatum erat, Hercules
intra spatium unius diei purgare iussus est. llle
negotium alacriter suscepit, et primum labore gravissimo
maximam fossam fodit per quam fluminis aquam de montibus
ad murum stabuli duxit. Tum partem parvam muri
delevit et aquam in stabulum immisit. Hoc modo
finm operis fecit uno die facillime.
  
Post paucos dies Hercules ad oppidum Stymphalum iter
fecit; nam Eurystheus iusserat eum avis Stymphalides
occidere. Hae aves rostra ferrea habebant et
homines miseros devorabant. Ille, postquam ad
locum pervenit, lacum vidit in quo aves incolebant.
Nullo tamen modo Hercules avibus adpropinquare potuit;
lacus enim non ex aqua sed e limo constitit.[5] Denique
autem aves [6]de aliqua causa perterritae in auras
volaverunt et magna pars earum sagittis Herculis occisa
est.
  
 [Footnote 1: *Augeas\,
pronounced in English \_Aw-je’as\_.]*  
 [Footnote 2: *Elidis\,
gen. case of* Elis\, a district of Greece.]
  
 [Footnote 3: *boum\,
gen. plur. of* bo:s\. For construction see  
 Sec. 501.11.]
  
 [Footnote 4: *ingenti
stabulo\, abl. of means, but in our idiom we  
 should say \_in a huge stable\_.]*  
 [Footnote 5: *constitit\,
from* consto\.]
  
 [Footnote 6: *de aliqua
causa perterritae\, \_frightened for some  
 reason\_.]*  
 [Illustration: HERCULES ET TAURUS]
  
LIX. HERCULES CAPTURES THE CRETAN BULL AND CARRIES
HIM LIVING TO EURYSTHEUS
  
Tum Eurystheus iussit Herculem portare vivum ex insula
Creta taurum quendam saevissimum. Ille igitur
navem conscendit—­nam ventus erat idoneus—­atque
statim solvit. Postquam triduum navigavit, incolumis
insulae adpropinquavit. Deinde, postquam omnia
parata sunt, contendit ad eam regionem quam taurus
vexabat. Mox taurum vidit ac sine ullo metu cornua
eius corripuit. Tum ingenti labore monstrum ad
navem traxit atque cum hac praeda ex insula discessit.

**THE FLESH-EATING HORSES OF DIOME’DES**

Postquam ex insula Creta domum pervenit, Hercules
ab Eurystheo in Thraciam missus est. Ibi Diomedes
quidam, vir saevissimus, regnum obtinebat et omnis
a finibus suis prohibebat. Hercules iussus erat
equos Diomedis rapere et ad Eurystheum ducere.
Hi autem equi homines miserrimos devorabant de quibus
rex supplicium sumere cupiebat. Hercules ubi
pervenit, primum equos a rege postulavit, sed rex eos
dedere recusavit. Deinde ille ira commotus regem
occidit et corpus eius equis tradidit. Itaque
is qui antea multos necaverat, ipse eodem supplicio
necatus est. Et equi, nuper saevissima animalia,
postquam domini sui corpus devoraverunt, mansueti
erant.

**Page 154**

**LX.  THE BELT OF HIPPOL’YTE, QUEEN OF THE AMAZONS**

Gens Amazonum[1] dicitur[2] omnino ex mulieribus fuisse.
Hae cum viris proelium committere non verebantur.
Hippolyte, Amazonum regina, balteum habuit pulcherrimum.
Hunc balteum possidere filia Eurysthei vehementer
cupiebat. Itaque Eurystheus iussit Herculem impetum
in Amazones facere. Ille multis cum copiis navem
conscendit et paucis diebus in Amazonum finis pervenit,
ac balteum postulavit. Eum tradere ipsa Hipporyte
quidem cupivit; reliquis tamen Amazonibus[3] persuadere
non potuit. Postridie Hercules proelium commisit.
Multas horas utrimque quam fortissime pugnatum est
Denique tamen mulieres terga verterunt et fuga salutem
petierunt. Multae autem captae sunt, in quo numero
erat ipsa Hippolyte. Hercules postquam balteum
accepit, omnibus captivis libertatem dedit.
  
 [Footnote 1: A fabled
tribe of warlike women living in Asia Minor.]
  
 [Footnote 2: *omnino\,
etc., \_to have consisted entirely of women.\_]*  
 [Footnote 3: *Amazonibus\,
Sec. 501.14.]*  
 [Illustration: HERCULES ET CERBERUS]

**THE DESCENT TO HADES AND THE DOG CER’BERUS**

Iamque unus modo e duodecim laboribus relinquebatur
sed inter omnis hic erat difficillimus. Iussus
est enim canem Cerberum[4] ex Orco in lucem trahere.
Ex Orco autem nemo antea reverterat. Praeterea
Cerberus erat monstrum maxime horribile et tria capita
habebat. Hercules postquam imperia Eurysthei
accepit, statim profectus est et in Orcum descendit.
Ibi vero non sine summo periculo Cerberum manibus rapuit
et ingenti cum labore ex Orco in lucem et adurbem
Eurysthei traxit.
  
Sic duodecim labores illi[5] intra duodecim annos
confecti sunt. Demum post longam vitam Hercules
a deis receptus est et Iuppiter filio suo dedit immortalitatem.
  
 [Footnote 4: The dog
Cerberus guarded the gate of Orcus, the abode  
 of the dead.]
  
 [Footnote 5: *illi\,
\_those famous.\_]*  
 [Illustration: PUERI ROMANI]
  
P. CORNELIUS LENTULUS: THE STORY OF A ROMAN BOY[1]

**LXI.  PUBLIUS IS BORN NEAR POMPE’II**

P. Cornelius Lentulus,[2] adulescens Romanus, amplissima
familia[3] natus est; nam pater eius, Marcus, erat
dux peritissimus, cuius virtute[4] et consilio multae
victoriae reportatae erant; atque mater eius, lulia,
a clarissimis maioribus orta est. Non vero in
urbe sed ruri[5] Publius natus est, et cum matre habitabat
in villa quae in maris litore et sub radicibus magni
montis sita erat. Mons autem erat Vesuvius et
parva urbs Pompeii octo milia[6] passuum[7] aberat.
In Italia antiqua erant plurimae quidem villae et
pulchrae, sed inter has omnis nulla erat pulchrior
quam villa Marci Iuliaeque. Frons villae muro
a maris fluctibus muniebatur. Hinc mare et litora

**Page 155**

et insulae longe lateque conspici[8] ac saepe naves
longae et onerariae poterant. A tergo et ab utroque
latere agri feracissimi patebant. Undique erat
magna variorum florum copia et multa ingentium arborum
genera quae aestate[9] umbram defessis agricolis gratissimam
adferebant. Praeterea erant[10] in agris stabulisque
multa animalium genera, non solum equi et boves sed
etiam rarae aves. Etiam erat[10] magna piscina
plena piscium; nam Romani piscis diligenter colebant.
  
 [Footnote 1: This story
is fiction with certain historical facts in  
 Caesar’s career as a
setting. However, the events chronicled might  
 have happened, and no doubt
did happen to many a Roman youth.]
  
 [Footnote 2: A Roman
had three names, as, *Publius\ (given name),*  
Cornelius\ (name of the
*gens* or clan), *Lentulus\ (family name).]*  
 [Footnote 3: Abl. of
source, which is akin to the abl. of  
 separation (Sec. 501.32).]
  
 [Footnote 4: *virtute\,
Sec. 501.24.]*  
 [Footnote 5: *ruri\,
Sec. 501.36.1.]*  
 [Footnote 6: *milia\,
Sec. 501.21.]*  
 [Footnote 7: *passuum\,
Sec. 501.11.]*  
 [Footnote 8: *conspici\,
infin. with poterant, Sec. 215. Consult the  
 map of Italy for the approximate
location of the villa.]*  
 [Footnote 9: *aestate\,
Sec. 501.35.]*  
 [Footnote 10: How are
the forms of *sum\ translated when they  
 precede the subject?]*  
 [Illustration: CASA ROMANA]

**LXII.  HIS LIFE ON THE FARM**

Huius villae Davus, servus Marci, est vilicus[1] et
cum Lesbia uxore omnia curat. Vilicus et uxor
in casa humili, mediis in agris sita, habitant.
A prima luce usque ad vesperum se[2] gravibus laboribus
exercent ut omni res bene gerant.[3] Plurima enim sunt
officia Davi et Lesbiae. Vilicus servos regit
ne tardi sint[3]; mittit alios qui agros arent,[3]
alios qui hortos inrigent,[3] et opera in[4] totum
diem imponit. Lesbia autem omnibus vestimenta
parat, cibum coquit, panem facit.
  
Non longe ab horum casa et in summo colle situm surgebat
domicilium ipsius domini dominaeque amplissimum.
Ibi pluris annos[5] Publius cum matre vitam felicem
agebat; nam pater eius, Marcus, in terris longinquis
gravia rei publicae bella gerebat nec domum[6] reverti
poterat. Neque puero quidem molestum est ruri[7]
vivere. Eum multae res delectant. Magnopere
amat silvas, agros, equos, boves, gallinas, avis, reliquaque
animalia. Saepe pluris horas[8] ad mare sedet
quo[9] melius fluctus et navis spectet. Nec omnino
sine comitibus erat, quod Lydia, Davi filia, quae
erat eiusdem aetatis, cum eo adhuc infante ludebat,
inter quos cum annis amicitia crescebat. Lydia
nullum alium ducem deligebat et Publius ab puellae
latere raro discedebat. Itaque sub claro Italiae
sole Publius et Lydia, amici fidelissimi, per campos
collisque cotidie vagabantur. Modo in silva finitima
ludebant ubi Publius sagittis[10] celeribus avis deiciebat
et Lydia coronis variorum florum comas suas ornabat;
modo aquam et cibum portabant ad Davum servosque defessos
qui agros colebant: modo in casa parva aut horas
lactas in ludo consumebant aut auxilium dabant Lesbiae,
quae cibum viro et servis parabat vel alias res domesticas
agebat.

**Page 156**

[Footnote 1: The *vilicus\
was a slave who acted as overseer of a  
 farm. He directed the
farming operations and the sale of the  
 produce.]*  
 [Footnote 2: *se\,
reflexive pron., object of* exercent\.]
  
 [Footnote 3: For the
construction, see Sec. 501.40.]
  
 [Footnote 4: *in\,
\_for\_.]*  
 [Footnote 5: *annos\,
Sec. 501.21.]*  
 [Footnote 6: *domum\,
Sec. 501.20.]*  
 [Footnote 7: *ruri\,
Sec. 501.36.1.]*  
 [Footnote 8: *horas\,
cf.* annos\, line 17.]
  
 [Footnote 9: *quo ...
spectet\, Secs. 349, 350.]*  
 [Footnote 10: *sagittis\,
Sec. 501.24.]*  
LXIII. MARCUS LENTULUS, THE FATHER OF PUBLIUS, IS SHIPWRECKED :
JULIA RECEIVES A LETTER FROM HIM  
Iam Publius[1] decem annos habebat cum M. Cornelius
Lentulus, pater eius, qui quinque annos[2] grave bellum
in Asia gerebat, non sine gloria domum[3] revertebatur.
Namque multa secunda proelia fecerat, maximas hostium
copias deleverat, multas urbis populo[4] Romano inimicas
ceperat. Primum nuntius pervenit qui a Lentulo[5]
missus erat[6] ut profectionem suam nuntiaret.
Deinde pluris dies[7] reditum viri optimi mater filiusque
exspectabant et animis[8] sollicitis deos immortalis
frustra colebant. Tum demum has litteras summo
cum gaudio acceperunt:
  
[9]"Marcus Iuliae suac salutem dicit. Si vales,
bene est; ego valeo. Ex Graecia, quo[10] praeter
spem et opinionem hodie perveni, has litteras ad te
scribo. Namque navis nostra fracta est; nos autem—­[11]dis
est gratia—­incolumes sumus. Ex Asiae[12]
portu navem leni vento solvimus. Postquam[13]
altum mare tenuimus [14]nec iam ullae terrae apparuerunt,
caelum undique et undique fluctus, subito magna tempestas
coorta est et navem vehementissime adflixit.
Ventis fluctibusque adflictati[15] nec solem discernere
nec cursum tenere poteramus et omnia praesentem mortem
intentabant. Tris dies[16] et tris noctis[16]
sine remis velisque agimur. Quarto die[17] primum
terra visa est et violenter in saxa, quae non longe
a litore aberant, deiecti sumus. Tum vero maiora
pericula timebamus; sed nauta quidam, vir fortissimus,
ex nave in fluctus iratos desiluit [18]ut funem ad
litus portaret; quam rem summo labore vix effecit.
Ita omnes servati sumus. Gratias igitur et honorem
Neptuno debemus, qui deus nos e periculo eripuit.
Nunc Athenis[19] sum, quo confugi ut mihi paucas horas
ad quietem darem.[20] Quam primum autem aliam navem
conducam ut iter ad Italiam reliquum conficiam et domum[21]
ad meos caros revertar. Saluta nostrum Publium
amicissime et valetudinem tuam cura diligenter. [22]Kalendis
Martiis.”
  
 [Footnote 1: *was ten
years old*.]
  
 [Footnote 2: *annos\,
Sec. 501.21.]*  
 [Footnote 3: *domum\,
Sec. 501.20.]*  
 [Footnote 4: *populo\,
dat. with inimicas, cf. Sec. 501.16.]*

**Page 157**

[Footnote 5: *Lentulo\,
Sec. 501.33.]*  
 [Footnote 6: *ut ...
nuntiaret\, Sec. 501.40.]*  
 [Footnote 7: *dies\,
cf. annos, 1. 9.]*  
 [Footnote 8: *animis\,
abl. of manner. Do you see one in line 15?]*[Footnote 9:  This is the usual form for the beginning of a Latin letter.  First we have the greeting, and then the expression Si vales, *etc*.  The date of the letter is usually given at the end, and also the place of writing, if not previously mentioned in the letter.]  
 [Footnote 10: *quo\,
\_where\_.]*  
 [Footnote 11: *dis
est gratia\, \_thank God\_, in our idiom.]*  
 [Footnote 12: Asia refers
to the Roman province of that name in Asia  
 Minor.]
  
 [Footnote 13: *altum
mare tenuimus\, \_we were well out to sea.\_]*  
 [Footnote 14: *nec
iam\, \_and no longer\_.]*  
 [Footnote 15: *adflictati\,
perf. passive part. \_tossed about\_.]*  
 [Footnote 16: What construction?]
  
 [Footnote 17: *die\,
Sec. 501.35.]*  
 [Footnote 18: *ut ...
portaret\, Sec. 501.40.]*  
 [Footnote 19: *Athenis\,
Sec. 501.36.1.]*  
 [Footnote 20: *darem\,
cf.* portaret\, l. 6.]
  
 [Footnote 21: Why not
*ad domum\?]*  
 [Footnote 22: *Kalendis
Martiis\, \_the Calends\_ or \_first of March\_;  
 abl. of time, giving the date
of the letter.]*

**LXIV.  LENTULUS REACHES HOME :  PUBLIUS VISITS POMPEII WITH HIS FATHER**

Post paucos dies navis M. Corneli Lentuli portum Miseni[1]
petiit, qui portus non longe a Pompeiis situs est;
quo in portu classis Romana ponebatur et ad pugnas
navalis ornabatur. Ibi naves omnium generum conspici
poterant. Iamque incredibili celeritate navis
longa qua Lentulus vehebatur litori adpropinquavit;
nam non solum vento sed etiam remis impellebatur.
In alta puppe stabat gubernator et non procul aliqui
milites Romani cum armis splendidis, inter quos clarissimus
erat Lentulus. Deinde servi remis contendere
cessaverunt[2]; nautae velum contraxerunt et ancoras
iecerunt. Lentulus statim e navi egressus est
et[3] ad villam suam properavit. Eum Iulia, Publius,
totaque familia exceperunt. [4]Qui complexus, quanta
gaudia fuerunt!
  
Postridie eius diei Lentulus filio suo dixit, “Veni,
mi Publi, mecum. Pompeios iter hodie faciam.
Mater tua suadet[5] ut fructus et cibaria emam.
Namque pluris amicos ad cenam vocavimus et multis rebus[6]
egemus. Ea hortatur ut quam primum proficiscamur.”
“Libenter, mi pater,” inquit Publius.
“Tecum esse mihi semper est gratum; nec Pompeios
umquam vidi. Sine mora proficisci paratus sum.”
Tum celeriter currum conscenderunt et ad urbis muros
vecti sunt. Stabiana porta[7] urbem ingressi sunt.
Publius stratas vias miratur et saxa altiora quae in
medio disposita erant et altas orbitas quas rotae
inter haec saxa fecerant. Etiam strepitum miratur,
multitudinem, carros, fontis, domos, tabernas, forum[8]
cum statuis, templis, reliquisque aedificiis publicis.

**Page 158**

[Footnote 1: Misenum
had an excellent harbor, and under the emperor  
 Augustus became the chief
naval station of the Roman fleet. See map  
 of Italy.]
  
 [Footnote 2: Why is the
infinitive used with *cessaverunt\?]*  
 [Footnote 3: See Plate
I, Frontispiece.]
  
 [Footnote 4: Observe
that these words are exclamatory.]
  
 [Footnote 5: What construction
follows *suadeo\? Sec. 501.41.]*  
 [Footnote 6: *rebus\,
Sec. 501.32.]*[Footnote 7:  This is the abl. of the *way by which* motion takes place, sometimes called the abl. of route.  The construction comes under the general head of the abl. of means.  For the scene here described, see Plate II, p. 53, and notice especially the stepping-stones for crossing the street (*saxa quae in medio disposita erant\).]*  
 [Footnote 8: The forum
of Pompeii was surrounded by temples, public  
 halls, and markets of various
sorts. Locate Pompeii on the map.]

**LXV.  A DAY AT POMPEII**

Apud forum e curru descenderunt et Lentulus dixit,
“Hic sunt multa tabernarum genera, mi Publi.
Ecce, trans viam est popina! [1]Hoc genus tabernarum
cibaria vendit. Fructus quoque ante ianuam stant.
Ibi cibaria mea emam.” “Optime,”
respondit Publius. “At ubi, mi pater, crustula
emere possumus? Namque mater nobis imperavit [2]ut
haec quoque pararemus. Timeo ut[3] ista popina
vendat crustula.” “Bene dicis,”
inquit Lentulus. “At nonne vides illum fontem
a dextra ubi aqua per leonis caput fluit? In
illo ipso loco est taberna pistoris qui sine dubio
vendit crustula.”
  
Brevi tempore[4] omnia erant parata, iamque [5]quinta
hora erat. Deinde Lentulus et filius ad cauponam
properaverunt, quod fame[6] et siti[7] urgebantur.
Ibi sub arboris umbra sederunt et puero imperaverunt
ut sibi[8] cibum et vinum daret. Huic imperio[9]
puer celeriter paruit. Tum laeti se[10] ex labore
refecerunt.
  
Post prandium prefecti sunt ut alia urbis spectacula
viderent. Illo tempore fuerunt Pompeiis[11] multa
templa, duo theatra, thermae magnumque amphitheatrum,
quae omnia post paucos annos flammis atque incendiis
Vesuvi et terrae motu deleta sunt. Ante hanc calamitatem
autem homines [12]nihil de monte veriti sunt.
In amphitheatro quidem Publius morari cupivit ut spectacula
gladiatoria videret, quae in[13] illum ipsum diem
proscripta erant et iam [14]re vera inceperant.
Sed Lentulus dixit, “Morari, Publi, [15]vereor
ut possimus. Iam decima hora est et via est longa.
Tempus suadet ut quam primum domum revertamur.”
Itaque servo imperavit ut equos iungeret, et solis
occasu[16] ad villam pervenerunt.
  
 [Footnote 1: We say,
*this kind of shop*; Latin, *this kind of  
 shops*.]
  
 [Footnote 2: *ut ...
pararemus\, Sec. 501.41.]*  
 [Footnote 3: How is *ut\
translated after a verb of fearing? How*  
ne:\? Cf. Sec.
501.42.]

**Page 159**

[Footnote 4: *tempore\,
Sec. 501.35.]*  
 [Footnote 5: *quinta
hora\. The Romans numbered the hours of the day  
 consecutively from sunrise
to sunset, dividing the day, whether long  
 or short, into twelve equal
parts.]*  
 [Footnote 6: *fame\
shows a slight irregularity in that the abl.  
 ending -e is long.]*  
 [Footnote 7: *sitis\,
\_thirst\_, has -im in the acc. sing., -i in  
 the abl. sing., and no plural.]*[Footnote 8:  Observe that the reflexive pronoun *sibi\ does not here refer to the subject of the subordinate clause in which it stands, but to the subject of the main clause.  This so-called \_indirect\_ use of the reflexive is often found in object clauses of purpose.]*  
 [Footnote 9: What case?
Cf. Sec. 501.14.]
  
 [Footnote 10: *se\,
cf. p. 205, l. 7, and note.]*  
 [Footnote 11: *Pompeiis\,
Sec. 501.36.1.]*  
 [Footnote 12: *nihil
... veriti sunt\, \_had no fears of the  
 mountain\_.]*  
 [Footnote 13: *in\,
\_for\_.]*  
 [Footnote 14: *re vera\,
\_in fact\_.]*  
 [Footnote 15: *vereor
ut\, Sec. 501.42.]*  
 [Footnote 16: *occasu\,
Sec. 501.35.]*

**LXVI.  LENTULUS ENGAGES A TUTOR FOR HIS SON**

A primis annis quidem Iulia ipsa filium suum docuerat,
et Publius non solum [1]pure et Latine loqui poterat
sed etiam commode legebat et scribebat. Iam Ennium[2]
aliosque poetas legerat. Nunc vero Publius [3]duodecim
annos habebat; itaque ei pater bonum magistrum, [4]virum
omni doctrina et virtute ornatissimum, paravit, [5]qui
Graeca, musicam, aliasque artis doceret. [6]Namque
illis temporibus omnes fere gentes Graece loquebantur.
Cum Publio alii pueri, Lentuli amicorum filii,[7]
discebant. Nam saepe apud Romanos mos erat [8]non
in ludum filios mittere sed domi per magistrum docere.
Cotidie discipuli cum magistro in peristylo[9] Marci
domus sedebant. Omnes pueri bullam auream, originis
honestae signum, in collo gerebant, et omnes toga praetexta
amicti erant, [10]quod nondum sedecim annos[11] nati
sunt.
  
 [Footnote 1: *pure
... poterat\, freely, \_could speak Latin well\_.   
 What is the literal translation?]*  
 [Footnote 2: *Ennium\,
the father of Latin poetry.]*  
 [Footnote 3: *duodecim
... habebat\, cf. p. 206, l. 8, and note.]*  
 [Footnote 4: *virum\,
etc., \_a very well-educated and worthy man\_.   
 Observe the Latin equivalent.]*  
 [Footnote 5: *qui ...
doceret\, a relative clause of purpose. Cf.   
 Secs. 349, 350.]*  
 [Footnote 6: In Caesar’s
time Greek was spoken more widely in the  
 Roman world than any other
language.]
  
 [Footnote 7: *filii\,
in apposition with* pueri\.]

**Page 160**

[Footnote 8:  *non ... mittere\.  This infinitive clause is the subject of* erat\.  Cf.  Sec. 216.  The same construction is repeated in the next clause, *domi ... docere\.  The object of* docere\ is *filios\ understood.]*  
 [Footnote 9: The peristyle
was an open court surrounded by a  
 colonnade.]
  
 [Footnote 10: At the
age of sixteen a boy laid aside the *bulla*  
 and the *toga praetexta*
and assumed *toga virilis* or manly gown.]
[Footnote 11:  *annos\, Sec. 501.21.  The expression* nondum sedecim annos nati sunt\ means literally, *they were born not yet sixteen years*.  This is the usual expression for age.  What is the English equivalent?]  
 [Illustration: TABULA ET STILUS]

**SCENE IN SCHOOL :  AN EXERCISE IN COMPOSITION**

DISCIPULI. Salve, magister.   
MAGISTER. Vos quoque omnes, salvete. [1]Tabulasne
portavistis et  
 stilos?   
D. Portavimus.   
M. Iam fabulam Aesopi[2] discemus. Ego legam,
vos in tabulis scribite.   
 Et tu, Publi, da mihi e capsa[3] Aesopi
volumen.[4] Iam audite  
 omnes: *Vulpes et Uva*.   
Vulpes olim fame coacta uvam dependentem vidit.
Ad uvam saliebat,  
 sumere conans. Frustra diu conata,
tandem irata erat et salire  
 cessans dixit: “Illa uva est
acerba; acerbam uvam [5]nihil moror.”   
Omnia’ne scripsistis, pueri?   
D. Omnia, magister.
[Footnote 1:  Tablets were thin boards of wood smeared with wax.  The writing was done with a stylus, a pointed instrument like a pencil, made of bone or metal, with a knob at the other end.  The knob was used to smooth over the wax in making erasures and corrections.]  
 [Footnote 2: *Aesopi\,
the famous Greek to whom are ascribed most of  
 the fables current in the
ancient world.]*  
 [Footnote 3: A cylindrical
box for holding books and papers, shaped  
 like a hatbox.]
  
 [Footnote 4: Ancient
books were written on rolls made of papy’rus.]
  
 [Footnote 5: *nihil
moror\, \_I care nothing for\_.]*

**LXVII.  PUBLIUS GOES TO ROME TO FINISH HIS EDUCATION**

Iamque Publius, [1]quindecim annos natus, [2]primis
litterarum elementis confectis, Romam petere voluit
ut scholas grammaticorum et philosophorum frequentaret.
Et facillime patri[3] suo, qui ipse philosophiae studio
tenebatur, persuasit. Itaque [4]omnibus rebus
ad profectionem comparatis, pater filiusque equis
animosis vecti[5] ad magnam urbem profecti sunt.
Eos proficiscentis Iulia totaque familia votis precibusque
prosecutae sunt. Tum per loca[6] plana et collis
silvis vestitos viam ingressi sunt ad Nolam, quod
oppidum eos hospitio modico excepit. Nolae[7]
duas horas morati sunt, quod sol meridianus ardebat.
Tum recta via[8] circiter viginti milia[9] passuum[9]

**Page 161**

Capuam,[9] ad insignem Campaniae urbem, contenderunt.
Eo[10] multa nocte defessi pervenerunt. [11]Postridie
eius diei, somno et cibo recreati, Capua discesserunt
et [13]viam Appiam ingressi, quae Capuam tangit et
usque ad urbem Romam ducit, ante meridiem Sinuessam
pervenerunt, quod oppidum tangit mare. Inde prima
luce proficiscentes Formias[13] properaverunt, ubi
Cicero, orator clarissimus, qui forte apud villam suam
erat, eos benigne excepit. Hinc [14]itinere viginti
quinque milium passuum facto, Tarracinam, oppidum
in saxis altissimis situm, viderunt. Iamque non
longe aberant paludes magnae, quae multa milia passuum
undique patent. Per eas pedestris via est gravis
et in nave viatores vehuntur. Itaque [15]equis
relictis Lentulus et Publius navem conscenderunt, et,
una nocte in transitu consumpta, Forum Appi venerunt.
Tum brevi tempore Aricia eos excepit. Hoc oppidum,
in colle situm, ab urbe Roma sedecim milia passuum
abest. Inde declivis via usque ad latum campum
ducit ubi Roma stat. Quem ad locum ubi Publius
venit et Romam adhuc remotam, maximam totius orbis
terrarum urbem, conspexit, summa admiratione et gaudio
adfectus est. Sine mora descenderunt, et, medio
intervallo quam celerrime superato, urbem porta Capena
ingressi sunt.
  
 [Footnote 1: *quindecim\,
etc., cf. p. 210, l. 5, and note.]*  
 [Footnote 2: *primis
... confectis\, abl. abs. Cf. Sec. 501.28.]*  
 [Footnote 3: *patri\,
dat. with* persuasit\.]
  
 [Footnote 4: *omnibus
... comparatis\, cf. note 2.]*  
 [Footnote 5: *vecti\,
perf. pass. part. of* veho\.]
  
 [Footnote 6: What is
there peculiar about the gender of this word?]
  
 [Footnote 7: *Nolae\,
locative case, Sec. 501.36.2.]*  
 [Footnote 8: *via\,
cf.* porta\, p. 208, l. 7, and note.]
  
 [Footnote 9: What construction?]
  
 [Footnote 10: *Eo\,
adv. \_there\_.]*  
 [Footnote 11: *Postridie
eius diei\, \_on the next day\_.]*[Footnote 12:  *viam Appiam\, the most famous of all Roman roads, the great highway from Rome to Tarentum and Brundisium, with numerous branches.  Locate on the map the various towns that are mentioned in the lines that follow.]*  
 [Footnote 13: Formias\,
*Formiae*, one of the most beautiful spots  
 on this coast, and a favorite
site for the villas of rich Romans.]
  
 [Footnote 14: *itinere
... facto\, abl. abs. The gen.* milium\  
 modifies *itinere\.]*  
 [Footnote 15: *equis
relictis\. What construction? Point out a  
 similar one in the next line.]*  
 [Illustration: BULLA]

**LXVIII.  PUBLIUS PUTS ON THE TOGA VIRILIS**

**Page 162**

Publius iam totum annum Romae morabatur[1] multaque
urbis spectacula viderat et multos sibi[2] amicos
paraverat. Ei[3] omnes favebant; [4]de eo omnes
bene sperare poterant. Cotidie Publius scholas
philosophorum et grammaticorum tanto studio frequentabat
[5]ut aliis clarum exemplum praeberet. Saepe
erat cum patre in curia[6]; quae res effecit [7]ut
summos rei publicae viros et audiret et videret.
Ubi [8]sedecim annos natus est, bullam[9] auream et
togam praetextam more Romano deposuit atque virilem
togam sumpsit. Virilis autem toga erat omnino
alba, sed praetexta clavum purpureum in margine habebat.
[10]Deponere togam praetextam et sumere togam virilem
erat res gratissima puero Romano, quod postea vir
et civis Romanus habebatur.
  
[11]His rebus gestis Lentulus ad uxorem suam has litteras
scripsit:
  
[12]"Marcus Iuliae suae salutem dicit. Si vales,
bene est; ego valeo. Accepi tuas litteras.
Has nunc Roma per servum fidelissimum mitto ut de
Publio nostro quam celerrime scias. Nam hodie
ei togam virilem dedi. Ante lucem surrexi[13]
et primum bullam auream de collo eius removi.
Hac Laribus[14] consecrata et sacris factis, eum toga
virili vestivi. Interim plures amici cum multitudine
optimorum civium et honestorum clientium pervenerant
[15]qui Publium domo in forum deducerent. Ibi
in civitatem receptus est et nomen, Publius Cornelius
Lentulus, apud civis Romanos ascriptum est. Omnes
ei amicissimi fuerunt et magna[16] de eo praedicunt.
Sapientior enim aequalibus[17] est et magnum ingenium
habet. [18]Cura ut valeas.”
  
 [Footnote 1: *morabatur\,
translate as if pluperfect.]*  
 [Footnote 2: *sibi\,
\_for himself\_.]*  
 [Footnote 3: *Ei\,
why dat.?]*  
 [Footnote 4: *de ...
poterant\, in English, \_all regarded him as a  
 very promising youth;\_ but
what does the Latin say?]*  
 [Footnote 5: *ut ...
praeberet\, Sec. 501.43.]*  
 [Footnote 6: *curia\,
a famous building near the Roman Forum.]*  
 [Footnote 7: *ut ...
audiret et videret\, Sec. 501.44.]*  
 [Footnote 8: *sedecim,
etc.\, cf. p. 210, l. 5, and note.]*  
 [Footnote 9: *bullam\,
cf. p. 210, l. 3, and note 4.]*  
 [Footnote 10: These infinitive
clauses are the subject of *erat\.   
 Cf. Sec. 216.]*  
 [Footnote 11: *His
rebus gestis\, i.e. the assumption of the \_toga  
 virilis\_ and attendant ceremonies.]*  
 [Footnote 12: Compare
the beginning of this letter with the one on  
 page 206.]
  
 [Footnote 13: *surrexi\,
from* surgo\.]
  
 [Footnote 14: The Lares
were the spirits of the ancestors, and were  
 worshiped as household gods.
All that the house contained was  
 confided to their care, and
sacrifices were made to them daily.]
  
 [Footnote 15: *qui
... deducerent\, Sec. 350.]*

**Page 163**

[Footnote 16: *magna\,
\_great things\_, a neuter adj. used as a  
 noun.]*  
 [Footnote 17: *aequalibus\,
Sec. 501.34.]*  
 [Footnote 18: *Cura
ut valeas\, \_take good care of your health\_. How  
 does the Latin express this
idea?]*

**LXIX.  PUBLIUS JOINS CAESAR’S ARMY IN GAUL**

Publius iam adulescens postquam togam virilem sumpsit,
aliis rebus studere incepit et praesertim usu[1] armorum
se[2] diligenter exercuit. Magis magisque amavit
illas artis quae militarem animum delectant.
Iamque erant [3]qui ei cursum militarem praedicerent.
Nec sine causa, quod certe patris isigne exemplum
[4]ita multum trahebat. [5]Paucis ante annis C. Iulius
Caesar, ducum Romanorum maximus, consul creatus erat
et hoc tempore in Gallia bellum grave gerebat.
Atque in exercitu eius plures adulescentes militabant,
apud quos erat amicus quidam Publi. Ille Publium
crebris litteris vehementer hortabatur [6]ut iter in
Galliam faceret. Neque Publius recusavit, et,
multis amicis ad portam urbis prosequentibus, ad Caesaris
castra profectus est. Quarto die postquam iter
ingressus est, ad Alpis, montis altissimos, pervenit.
His summa difficultate superatis, tandem Gallorum
in finibus erat. Primo autem veritus est ut[7]
castris Romanis adpropinquare posset, quod Galli,
maximis copiis coactis, Romanos obsidebant et vias
omnis iam clauserant. His rebus commotus Publius
vestem Gallicam induit ne a Gallis caperetur, et ita
per hostium copias incolumis ad castra pervenire potuit.
Intra munitiones acceptus, a Caesare benigne exceptus
est. Imperator fortem adulescentem amplissimis
verbis laudavit et eum [8]tribunum militum creavit.
  
 [Footnote 1: Abl. of
means.]
  
 [Footnote 2: *se\,
reflexive object of* exercuit\.]
  
 [Footnote 3: *qui ...
praedicerent\, Sec. 501.45.]*  
 [Footnote 4: *ita multum
trahebat\, \_had a great influence in that  
 direction\_.]*  
 [Footnote 5: *Paucis
ante annis\, \_a few years before\_; in Latin,  
 \_before by a few years\_,* ante\
being an adverb and *annis\ abl. of  
 degree of difference.]*  
 [Footnote 6: *ut ...
faceret\, Sec. 501.41.]*  
 [Footnote 7: *ut\,
how translated here? See Sec. 501.42.]*  
 [Footnote 8: The *military
tribune* was a commissioned officer  
 nearly corresponding to our
rank of colonel. The tribunes were often  
 inexperienced men, so Caesar
did not allow them much responsibility.]
  
 [Illustration: IMPEDIMENTA]

**HOW THE ROMANS MARCHED AND CAMPED**

**Page 164**

Exercitus qui in hostium finibus bellum genit multis
pericuis circumdatus est. [1]Quae pericula ut vitaret,
Romani summam curam adhibere solebant. Adpropinquantees
copiis hostium agmen ita disponebant [2]ut imperator
ipse cum plaribus legionibus expeditis[3] primum agmen
duceret. Post eas copias impedimenta[4] totius
exercitus conlocabant. [5]Tum legiones quae proxime
conscriptae erant totum agmen claudebant. Equites
quoque in omnis partis dimittebantur qui loca explorarent;
et centuriones praemittebantur ut locum castris idoneum
deligerent. Locus habebatur idoneus castris [6]qui
facile defendi posset et prope aquam esset. Qua
de causa castra[7] in colle ab utraque parte arduo,
a fronte leniter declivi saepe ponebantur; vel locus
paludibus cinctus vel in fluminis ripis situs deligebatur.
Ad locum postquam exercitus pervenit, alii militum
[8]in armis erant, alii castra munire incipiebant.
Nam [9]quo tutiores ab hostibus milites essent, neve
incauti et imparati opprimerentur, castra fossa lata
et vallo alto muniebant. In castris portae quattuor
erant ut eruptio militum omnis in partis fieri posset.
In angulis castrorum erant turres de quibus tela in
hostis coniciebantur. [10]Talibus in castris qualia
descripsimus Publius a Caesare exceptus est.
  
 [Footnote 1: *Quae
pericula\, object of* vitarent\. It is placed  
 first to make a proper connection
with the preceding sentence.]
  
 [Footnote 2: *ut ...
duceret\, Sec. 501.43.]*  
 [Footnote 3: *expeditis\,
i.e. without baggage and ready for  
 action.]*[Footnote 4:  *impedimenta\.  Much of the baggage was carried in carts and on beasts of burden, as is shown above; but, besides this, each soldier (unless* expeditus\) carried a heavy pack.  See also picture, p. 159.]  
 [Footnote 5: The newest
legions were placed in the rear, because  
 they were the least reliable.]
  
 [Footnote 6: *qui ...
posset ... esset\, Sec. 501.45.]*  
 [Footnote 7: *castra\,
subject of* ponebantur\.]
  
 [Footnote 8: *in armis
erant\, \_stood under arms\_.]*  
 [Footnote 9: *quo ...
essent\. When is* quo\ used to introduce a  
 purpose clause? See Sec.
350.I.]
  
 [Footnote 10: *Talibus
in castris qualia\, \_in such a camp as\_.   
 It is important to remember
the correlatives* talis ... qualis\, *such ... as*.]
  
 [Illustration: CENTURIO]

**LXX.  THE RIVAL CENTURIONS**

**Page 165**

Illis in castris erant duo centuriones,[1] fortissimi
viri, T. Pullo et L. Vorenus, quorum neuter alteri
virtute[2] cedere volebat. Inter eos iam multos
annos infensum certamen gerebatur. Tum demum finis
controversiae hoc modo[3] factus est. Die tertio
postquam Publius pervenit, hostes, maioribus copiis
coactis, acerrimum impetum in castra fecerunt.
Tum Pullo, [4]cum Romani tardiores[5] viderentur, “Cur
dubitas,” inquit, “Vorene? Quam commodiorem
occasionem exspectas? Hic dies de virtute nostra
iudicabit.” Haec[6] cum dixisset, extra
munitiones processit et in eam hostium partem quae
cofertissima [7]videbatur inrupit. Neque Vorenus
quidem tum vallo[8] sese continet, sed Pullonem subsequitur.
Tum Pullo pilum in hostis immittit atque unum ex multitudine
procurrentem traicit. Hunc percussum et exanimatum
hostes scutis protegunt et in Pullonem omnes tela
coniciunt. Eius scutum transfigitur et telum
in balteo defigitur. Hic casus vaginam avertit
et dextram manum eius gladium educere conantis[9]
moratur. Eum ita impeditum hostes circumsistunt.
  
Tum vero [10]ei laboranti Vorenus, cum sit inimicus,
tamen auxilium dat. Ad hunc confestim [11]a Pullone
omnis multitudo se convertit. Gladio comminus
pugnat Vorenus, atque, uno interfecto, reliquos paulum
propellit. Sed instans cupidius[12] infelix, [13]pede
se fallente, concidit.
  
Huic rursus circumvento auxilium dat Pullo, atque
ambo incolumes, pluribus interfectis, summa cum laude
intra munitiones se recipiunt. Sic inimicorum
alter alteri auxilium dedit nec de eorum virtute quisquam
iudicare potuit.
[Footnote 1:  A centurion commanded a company of about sixty men.  He was a common soldier who had been promoted from the ranks for his courage and fighting qualities.  The centurions were the real leaders of the men in battle.  There were sixty of them in a legion.  The centurion in the picture (p. 216) has in his hand a staff with a crook at one end, the symbol of his authority.]  
 [Footnote 2: *virtute\,
Sec. 501.30.]*  
 [Footnote 3: Abl. of
manner.]
  
 [Footnote 4: *cum ...
viderentur\, Sec. 501.46.]*  
 [Footnote 5: *tardiores\,
\_too slow\_, a not infrequent translation  
 of the comparative degree.]*  
 [Footnote 6: *Haec\,
obj. of* dixisset\. It is placed before *cum\  
 to make a close connection
with the preceding sentence. What is the  
 construction of* dixisset\?]
  
 [Footnote 7: *videbatur,
inrupit\. Why is the imperfect used in one  
 case and the perfect in the
other? Cf. Sec. 190.]*  
 [Footnote 8: *vallo\,
abl. of means, but in English we should say  
 \_within the rampart\_.
Cf.* ingenti stabulo\, p. 201, l. 13, and  
 note.]
  
 [Footnote 9: *conantis\,
pres. part. agreeing with* eius\.]
  
 [Footnote 10: *ei laboranti\,
indir. obj. of dat.]*

**Page 166**

[Footnote 11: *a Pullone\,
\_from Pullo\_, abl. of separation.]*  
 [Footnote 12: *cupidius\,
\_too eagerly\_.]*  
 [Footnote 13: *pede
se fallente\, lit. \_the foot deceiving itself\_;  
 in our idiom, \_his foot slipping\_.]*

**LXXI.  THE ENEMY BESIEGING THE CAMP ARE REPULSED**

Cum iam sex horas pugnatum esset[1] ac non solum vires
sed etiam tela Romanos deficerent[1], atque hostes
acrius instarent,[1] et vallum scindere fossamque
complere incepissent,[1] Caesar, vir rei militaris
peritissimus, suis imperavit ut proelium paulisper
intermitterent,[2] et, signo dato, ex castris erumperent.[2]
[3]Quod iussi sunt faciunt, et subito ex omnibus portis
erumpunt. Atque tam celeriter milites concurrerunt
et tam propinqui erant hostes[4] ut spatium pila coniciendi[5]
non daretur. Itaque reiectis pilis [6]comminus
gladiis pugnatum est. Diu et audacter hostes
restiterunt et in extrema spe salutis tantam virtutem
praestiterunt ut a dextro cornu vehementer [7]multitudine
suorum aciem Romanam premerent. [8]Id imperator cum
animadvertisset, Publium adulescentem cum equitatu
misit qui laborantibus[9] auxilium daret. Eius
impetum sustinere non potuerunt hostes[10] et omnes
terga verterunt. Eos in fugam datos Publius subsecutus
est usque ad flumen Rhenum, quod ab eo loco quinque
milia passuum aberat. Ibi pauci salutem sibi
reppererunt. Omnibus reliquis interfectis, Publius
et equites in castra sese receperunt. De hac
calamitate finitimae gentes cum certiores factae essent,
ad Caesarem legatos miserunt et se suaque omnia dediderunt.
  
 [Footnote 1: *pugnatum
esset, deficerent, instarent, incepissent\.   
 These are all subjunctives
with* cum\. Cf. Sec. 501.46.]
  
 [Footnote 2: *intermitterent,
erumperent\. What use of the  
 subjunctive?]*  
 [Footnote 3: *Quod\,
etc., \_they do as ordered\_. The antecedent of*  
quod\ is *id\ understood,
which would be the object of* faciunt\.]
  
 [Footnote 4: *ut ...
daretur\. Is this a clause of purpose or of  
 result?]*  
 [Footnote 5: *coniciendi\,
Sec. 402.]*  
 [Footnote 6: *comminus
gladiis pugnatum est\, \_a hand-to-hand  
 conflict was waged with swords\_.]*  
 [Footnote 7: *multitudine
suorum\, \_by their numbers\_.* suorum\ is  
 used as a noun. What
is the literal translation of this expression?]
  
 [Footnote 8: *Id imperator.
Id\ is the obj. and* imperator\ the  
 subj. of *animadvertisset\.]*  
 [Footnote 9: *laborantibus\.
This participle agrees with* iis\  
 understood, the indir. obj.
of *daret; qui ... daret\ is a purpose  
 clause, Sec. 501.40.]*  
 [Footnote 10: *hostes\,
subj. of* potuerunt\.]

**LXXII.  PUBLIUS GOES TO GERMANY :  ITS GREAT FORESTS AND STRANGE ANIMALS**

**Page 167**

Inita aestate Caesar litteris certior fiebat et per
exploratores cognoscebat pluris civitates Galliae
novis rebus studere,[1] et contra populum Romanum
coniurare[1] obsidesque [2]inter se dare,[1] atque
cum his Germanos quosdam quoque sese coniuncturos
esse.[1] His litteris nuntiisque commotus Caesar constituit
quam celerrime in Gallos proficisci,[3] ut eos inopinantis
opprimeret, et Labienum legatum cum duabus legionibus
peditum et duobus milibus equitum in Germanos mittere.[3]
[4]Itaque re frumentaria comparata castra movit.
Ab utroque[5] res bene gesta est; nam Caesar tam celeriter
in hostium finis pervenit ut spatium [6]copias cogendi
non daretur[4]; et Labienus de Germanis tam grave
supplicium sumpsit ut nemo ex ea gente in reliquum
tempus Gallis auxilium dare auderet.[7]
  
Hoc iter in Germaniam Publius quoque fecit et, [8]cum
ibi moraretur, multa mirabilia vidit. Praesertim
vero ingentem silvam mirabatur, quae tantae magnitudinis
esse dicebatur [9]ut nemo eam transire posset, nec
quisquam sciret aut initium aut finem. Qua de
re plura cognoverat a milite quodam qui olim captus
a Germanis multos annos ibi incoluit. Ille[10]
de silva dicens, “Infinitae magnitudinis est
haec silva,” inquit; “nee quisquam est
[11]huius Germaniae [12]qui initium eius sciat aut
ad finem adierit. Nascuntur illic multa talia
animalium genera qualia reliquis in locis non inveniuntur.
Sunt boves qui unum[13] cornu habent; sunt etiam animalia
quae appellantur alces. Hae nullos crurum[14]
articulos habent. Itaque, si forte conciderunt,
sese erigere nullo modo possunt. Arbores habent
pro[15] cubilibus; ad eas se applicant atque ita reclinatae
quietem capiunt. Tertium est genus eorum qui
uri appellantur. Hi sunt paulo minores elephantis.[16]
Magna vis eorum est et magna velocitas. Neque
homini neque ferae parcunt.[17]”
  
 [Footnote 1: Observe
that all these infinitives are in indirect  
 statements after *certior
fiebat\, \_he was informed\_, and*  
cognoscebat\, *he learned*.
Cf. Sec. 501.48, 49.]
  
 [Footnote 2: *inter
se\, \_to each other\_.]*  
 [Footnote 3: *proficisci,
mittere\. These infinitives depend upon*  
constituit\.]
[Footnote 4:  Before beginning a campaign, food had to be provided.  Every fifteen days grain was distributed.  Each soldier received about two pecks.  This he carried in his pack, and this constituted his food, varied occasionally by what he could find by foraging.]  
 [Footnote 5: Abl. of
personal agent, Sec. 501.33.]
  
 [Footnote 6: *copias
cogendi\, Sec. 501.37.1.]*  
 [Footnote 7: *daretur,
auderet\, Sec. 501.43.* auderet\ is not from *audio\.]*  
 [Footnote 8: *cum ...
moraretur\, Sec. 501.46.]*  
 [Footnote 9: *ut ...
posset, ... sciret\, Sec. 501.43.]*  
 [Footnote 10: *Ille\,
subj. of* inquit\.]

**Page 168**

[Footnote 11: *huius
Germaniae\, \_of this part of Germany\_.]*  
 [Footnote 12: *qui
... sciat ... adierit\, Sec. 501.45.]*  
 [Footnote 13: *unum\,
\_only one\_.]*  
 [Footnote 14: *crurum\,
from* crus\.]
  
 [Footnote 15: *pro\,
\_for, in place of\_.]*  
 [Footnote 16: *elephantis\,
Sec. 501.34.]*  
 [Footnote 17: *parcunt\.
What case is used with this verb?]*  
 [Illustration: VINEA]

**LXXIII.  THE STORMING OF A CITY**

Publius pluris dies in Germania moratus[1] in Galliam
rediit, et ad Caesaris castra se contulit. Ille
quia moleste ferebat Gallos[2] eius regionis obsides
dare recusavisse et exercitui frumentum praebere noluisse,
constituit eis[3] bellum inferre. Agris vastatis,
vicis incensis, pervenit ad oppidum validissimum quod
et natura et arte munitum erat. Cingebatur muro
viginti quinque pedes[4] alto. A lateribus duositum,
praerupto fastigio ad planitiem vergegat; a quarto
tantum[5] latere aditus erat facilis. Hoc oppidum
oppugnare, [6]cum opus esset difficillimum, tamen
constituit Caesar. Et castris munitis Publio
negotium dedit ut res [7]ad oppugnandum necessarias
pararet.
  
Romanorum autem oppugnatio est haec.[8] Primum turres
aedificantur quibus milites in summum murum evadere
possint[9]; vineae[10] fiunt quibus tecti milites
ad murum succedant; plutei[11] parantur post quos
milites tormenta[12] administrent; sunt quoque arietes
qui murum et portas discutiant. His omnibus rebus
comparatis, deinde [13]agger ab ea parte ubi aditus
est facillimus exstruitur et cum vineis ad ipsum oppidum
agitur. Tum turris in aggere promovetur; arietibus
qui sub vineis conlocati erant murus et portae discutiuntur;
ballistis, catapultis, reliquisque tormentis lapides
et tela in oppidum coniciuntur. Postremo cum
iam turris et agger altitudinem muri adaequant et
arietes moenia perfregerunt,[14] signo dato milites
inruunt et oppidum expugnant.
  
 [Footnote 1: *moratus\.
Is this part. active or passive in meaning?]*  
 [Footnote 2: *Gallos\,
subj. acc. of the infins.* recusavisse\ and *noluisse\. The indirect
statement depends upon* moleste ferebat\.]
  
 [Footnote 3: *eis\,
Sec. 501.15.]*  
 [Footnote 4: *pedes\,
Sec. 501.21.]*  
 [Footnote 5: *tantum\,
adv. \_only\_.]*  
 [Footnote 6: *cum ...
esset\, a clause of concession, Sec. 501.46.]*  
 [Footnote 7: *ad oppugnandum\,
a gerund expressing purpose.]*  
 [Footnote 8: *haec\,
\_as follows\_.]*  
 [Footnote 9: *possint\,
subjv. of purpose. Three similar  
 constructions follow.]*

**Page 169**

[Footnote 10:  *vineae\.  These* vineae\ were wooden sheds, open in front and rear, used to protect men who were working to take a fortification.  They were about eight feet high, of like width, and double that length, covered with raw hides to protect them from being set on fire, and moved on wheels or rollers.]  
 [Footnote 11: *plutei\,
large screens or shields with small wheels  
 attached to them. These
were used to protect besiegers while moving  
 up to a city or while serving
the engines of war.]*[Footnote 12:  *tormenta\.  The engines of war were chiefly the catapult for shooting great arrows, and the ballista, for hurling large stones.  They had a range of about two thousand feet and were very effective.]*[Footnote 13:  The agger\, or mound, was of chief importance in a siege.  It was begun just out of reach of the missiles of the enemy, and then gradually extended towards the point to be attacked.  At the same time its height gradually increased until on a level with the top of the wall, or even higher.  It was made of earth and timber, and had covered galleries running through it for the use of the besiegers.  Over or beside the *agger* a tower was moved up to the wall, often with a battering-ram (*aries*) in the lowest story. (See picture, p. 221.)]  
 [Footnote 14: *perfregerunt\,
from* perfringo\.]
  
 [Illustration: BALLISTA]
  
 [Illustration: TURRES, ARIETES, VINEA]

**LXXIV.  THE CITY IS TAKEN :  THE CAPTIVES ARE QUESTIONED**

Omnibus rebus necessariis ad oppugnandum a Publio
comparatis, deliberatur in concilio quod consilium
[1]oppidi expugnandi ineant.[2] Tum unus[3] ex centurionibus,
vir rei militaris peritissimus, “Ego suadeo,”
inquit, “ut ab ea parte, ubi aditus sit[5] facillimus,
aggerem exstruamus[4] et turrim promoveamus[6] atque
ariete admoto simul murum discutere conemur.[5]”
[6]Hoc consilium cum omnibus placeret, Caesar concilium
dimisit. Deinde milites hortatus ut priores victorias
memoria[7] tenerent, iussit aggerem exstrui, turrim
et arietem admoveri. Neque oppidanis[8] consilium
defuit. Alii ignem et omne genus telorum de muro
in turrim coniecerunt, alii ingentia saxa in vineas
et arietem devolverunt. Diu utrimque acerrime
pugnatum est. Ne vulnerati quidem pedem rettulerunt.
Tandem, [9]de tertia vigilia, Publius, quem Caesar
illi operi[10] praefecerat, nuntiavit partem[11] muri
ictibus arietis labefactam concidisse. Qua re
audita Caesar signum dat; milites inruunt et magna
cum caede hostium oppidum capiunt.
  
Postridie eius diei, hoc oppido expugnato, [12]captivorum
qui nobilissimi sunt ad imperatorem ante praetorium[13]
adducuntur. Ipse, lorica aurata et paludamento
purpureo insignis, captivos per interpretem in hunc
modum interrogat:[14] Vos qui estis[15]?
  
INTERPRES. Rogat imperator qui sitis.

**Page 170**

CAPTIVI. Filii regis sumus.
  
INTERPRES. Dicunt se filios esse regis.
  
IMPERATOR. Cur mihi tantas iniurias intulistis?
  
INTERPRES. Rogat cur sibi tantas iniurias intuleritis.
  
CAPTIVI. Iniurias ei non intulimus sed pro patria
bellum gessimus. Semper voluimus Romanis esse
amici, sed Romani sine causa nos domo patriaque expellere
conati sunt.
  
INTERPRES. [16]Negant se iniurias tibi intulisse,
sed pro patria bellum gessisse. [17]Semper se voluisse
amicos Romanis esse, sed Romanos sine causa se domo
patriaque expellere conatos esse.
  
IMPERATOR. [18]Manebitisne in reliquum tempus in fide,
hac rebellione condonata?
  
Tum vero captivi multis cum lacrimis iuraverunt se
in fide mansuros esse, et Caesar eos incolumis domum
dimisit.
  
 [Footnote 1: *oppidi
expugnandi\. Is this a gerund or a gerundive  
 construction? Cf.
Sec. 501.37.]*  
 [Footnote 2: *ineant\.
Sec. 501.50.]*  
 [Footnote 3: *unus\.
subj. of* inquit\.]
[Footnote 4:  *sit\.  This is a so-called subjunctive by attraction, which means that the clause beginning with* ubi\ stands in such close connection with the subjv. clause beginning with *ut\, that its verb is attracted into the same mood.]*  
 [Footnote 5: All these
verbs are in the same construction.]
  
 [Footnote 6: *Hoc consilium\,
subj. of* placeret\. For the order  
 cf. *Haec cum\, etc., p.
215, l. 22, and note;* Id imperator cum\,  
 p. 217, l. 8.]
  
 [Footnote 7: *memoria\,
abl. of means.]*  
 [Footnote 8: *oppidanis\,
Sec. 501.15.]*  
 [Footnote 9: Between
twelve and three o’clock in the morning.
The  
 night was divided into four
watches.]
  
 [Footnote 10: *operi\,
Sec. 501.15.]*  
 [Footnote 11: *partem\,
subj. acc. of* concidisse\.]
  
 [Footnote 12: *captivorum
... sunt\, \_the noblest of the captives\_.]*  
 [Footnote 13: The general’s
headquarters.]
  
 [Footnote 14: Study carefully
these direct questions, indirect  
 questions, and indirect statements.]
  
 [Footnote 15: See Plate
III, p. 148.]
  
 [Footnote 16: *Negant\,
etc., \_they say that they have not\_, etc.*  
Negant\ is equivalent
to *dicunt non\, and the negative modifies*  
intulisse\, but not the
remainder of the indirect statement.]
  
 [Footnote 17: *Semper\,
etc., \_that they have always\_, etc.]*  
 [Footnote 18: *Manebitisne
in fide\, \_will you remain loyal?\_]*  
LXXV. CIVIL WAR BREAKS OUT BETWEEN CAESAR AND POMPEY
THE BATTLE OF PHARSALIA  
Ne confecto[1] quidem bello Gallico, [2]bellum civile
inter Caesarem et Pompeium exortum est. Nam Pompeius,
qui summum imperium petebat, senatui persuaserat ut
Caesarem rei publicae hostem[3] iudicaret et exercitum
eius dimitti iuberet. Quibus cognitis rebus Caesar
exercitum suum dimittere recusavit, atque, hortatus
milites ut ducem totiens victorem ab inimicorum iniuriis
defenderent, imperavit ut se Romam sequerentur.
Summa cum alacritate milites paruerunt, et transito
Rubicone[4] initium belli civilis factum est.

**Page 171**

Italiae urbes quidem omnes fere [5]rebus Caesaris
favebant et eum benigne exceperunt. Qua re commotus
Pompeius ante Caesaris adventum Roma excessit et Brundisium[6]
pervenit, inde [7]paucis post diebus cum omnibus copiis
ad Epirum mare transiit. Eum Caesar cum septem
legionibus et quingentis equitibus secutus est, et
insignis inter Caesaris comitatum erat Publius.
  
Pluribus levioribus proeliis factis, tandem copiae
adversae ad Pharsalum[8] in Thessalia sitam castra
posuerunt. Cum Pompei exercitus esset bis tantus
quantus Caesaris, tamen erant multi qui veteranas
legiones quae Gallos et Germanos superaverant vehementer
timebant. Quos[9] [10]ante proelium commissum
Labienus[11] legatus, qui ab Caesare nuper defecerat,
ita adlocutus est: “[12]Nolite existimare
hunc esse exercitum veteranorum militum. Omnibus
interfui proeliis[13] neque temere incognitam rem
pronuntio. Perexigua pars illius exercitus qui
Gallos superavit adhuc superest. Magna pars occisa
est, multi domum discesserunt, multi sunt relicti
in Italia. Hae copiae quas videtis in [14]citeriore
Gallia nuper conscriptae sunt.” Haec[15]
cum dixisset, iuravit se nisi victorem in castra non
reversurum esse. [16]Hoc idem Pompeius et omnes reliqui
iuraverunt, et magna spe et laetitia, sicut certam
ad victoriam, copiae e castris exierunt.
  
Item Caesar, animo[17] ad dimicandum paratus, exercitum
suum eduxit et septem cohortibus [18]praesidio castris
relictis copias triplici acie instruxit. Tum,
militibus studio pugnae ardentibus, tuba signum dedit.
Milites procurrerunt et pilis missis gladios strinxerunt.
Neque vero virtus hostibus defuit. Nam et tela
missa sustinuerunt et impetum gladiorum exceperunt
et ordines conservaverunt. Utrimque diu et acriter
pugnatum est nec quisquam pedem rettulit. Tum
equites Pompei aciem Caesaris circumire conati sunt.
Quod[19] ubi Caesar animadvertit, tertiam aciem,[20]
quae ad id tempus quieta fuerat, procurrere iussit.
Tum vero integrorum impetum[21] defessi hostes sustinere
non potuerunt et omnes terga verterunt. Sed Pompeius
de fortunis suis desperans se in castra equo contulit,
inde mox cum paucis equitibus effugit.
  
 [Footnote 1: With *ne:
... quidem\ the emphatic word stands between  
 the two.]*[Footnote 2:  The Civil War was caused by the jealousy and rivalry between Caesar and Pompey.  It resulted in the defeat and subsequent death of Pompey and the elevation of Caesar to the lordship of the Roman world.]  
 [Footnote 3: *hostem\,
predicate accusative, Sec. 501.22.]*[Footnote 4:  The Rubicon was a small stream in northern Italy that marked the boundary of Caesar’s province.  By crossing it with an armed force Caesar declared war upon Pompey and the existing government.  Caesar crossed the Rubicon early in the year 49 B.C.]  
 [Footnote 5: *rebus
Caesaris favebant\, \_favored Caesar’s side\_.
In  
 what case is* rebus\?]

**Page 172**

[Footnote 6: *Brundisium\,
a famous port in southern Italy whence  
 ships sailed for Greece and
the East. See map.]*  
 [Footnote 7: *paucis
post diebus\, \_a few days later\_; literally,  
 \_afterguards by a few days\_.
Cf.* paucis ante annis\, p. 213, l. 12,  
 and note.]
  
 [Footnote 8: The battle
of Pharsalia was fought on August 9, 48 B.C.   
 In importance it ranks as
one of the great battles of the world.]
  
 [Footnote 9: *Quos\,
obj. of* adlocutus est\.]
  
 [Footnote 10: *ante
proelium commissum\, \_before the beginning of  
 the battle\_.]*[Footnote 11:  *Labienus\, Caesar’s most faithful and skillful lieutenant in the Gallic War.  On the outbreak of the Civil War, in 49 B.C., he deserted Caesar and joined Pompey.  His defection caused the greatest joy among the Pompeian party; but he disappointed the expectations of his new friends, and never accomplished anything of importance.  He fought against his old commander in several battles and was slain at the battle of Munda in Spain, 45 B.C.]*  
 [Footnote 12: Nolite
existimare\, *don’t think*.]
  
 [Footnote 13: *proeliis\,
Sec. 501.15.]*  
 [Footnote 14: *citeriore
Gallia\. This name is applied to Cisalpine  
 Gaul, or Gaul south of the
Alps.]*  
 [Footnote 15: *Haec\,
obj. of* dixisset\.]
  
 [Footnote 16: *Hoc
idem\, obj. of* iuraverunt\.]
  
 [Footnote 17: *animo\,
Sec. 501.30.]*  
 [Footnote 18: *praesidio
castris\, Sec. 501.17.]*  
 [Footnote 19: *Quod\,
obj. of* animadvertit\.]
  
 [Footnote 20: *aciem\,
subj. of* procurrere\.]
  
 [Footnote 21: *impetum\,
obj. of* sustinere\.]
  
 [Illustration: SIGNIFER]

**LXXVI.  THE TRIUMPH OF CAESAR**

Pompeio amicisque eius superatis atque omnibus hostibus
ubique victis, Caesar imperator Romam rediit et [1]extra
moenia urbis in campo Martio castra posuit. Tum
vero amplissimis honoribus adfectus est. Dictator
creatus est, et ei triumphus a senatu est decretus.
[2]Quo die de Gallis triumphum egit, tanta multitudo
hominum in urbem undique confluxit [3]ut omnia loca
essent conferta. Templa patebant, arae fumabant,
columnae sertis ornatae erant. [4]Cum vero pompa urbem
intraret, quantus hominum fremitus ortus est!
Primum per portam ingressi sunt senatus et magistratus.
Secuti sunt tibicines, signiferi, pedites laurea coronati
canentes: “Ecce Caesar nunc triumphat, qui
subegit Galliam,” et “Mille, mille, mille,
mille Gallos trucidavimus.” Multi praedam
captarum urbium portabant, arma, omnia belli instrumenta.
Secuti sunt equites, animosis atque splendidissime
ornatis equis vecti, inter quos Publius adulescens
fortissimus habebatur. Adducebantur tauri, arietes,
[5]qui dis immortalibus immolarentur. Ita longo
agmine progrediens exercitus [6]sacra via per forum
in Capitolium perrexit.

**Page 173**

Imperator ipse cum urbem intraret, undique laeto clamore
multitudinis salutatus est. Stabat in curru aureo
quem quattuor albi equi vehebant. Indutus [7]toga
picta, altera manu habenas et lauream tenebat, altera
eburneum sceptrum. Post eum servus in curru stans
auream coronam super caput eius tenebat. Ante
currum miserrimi captivi, reges principesque superatarum
gentium, catenis vincti, progrediebantur; et viginti
quattuor lictores[8] laureatas fascis ferentes et signiferi
currum Caesaris comitabantur. Concludit agmen
multitudo captivorum, qui, in servitutem redacti,[9]
demisso vultu, vinctis[10] bracchiis, sequuntur; quibuscum
veniunt longissimo ordine milites, etiam hi praedam
vel insignia militaria ferentes.
  
 [Illustration: LICTORES CUM FASCIBUS]
  
Caesar cum Capitolium ascendisset, in templo Iovi
Capitolino sacra fecit. Simul[11] captivorum
qui nobilissimi erant, abducti in carcerem,[12] interfecti
sunt. Sacris factis Caesar de Capitolio descendit
et in foro miitibus suis honores militaris dedit eisque
pecuniam ex belli praeda distribuit.
  
His omnibus rebus confectis, Publius Caesarem valere[13]
iussit et quam celerrime ad villam contendit ut patrem
matremque salutaret.
  
[14]De rebus gestis P. Corneli Lentuli hactenus.
  
 [Footnote 1: A victorious
general with his army was not allowed to  
 enter the city until the day
of his triumph. A triumph was the  
 greatest of all military honors.]
  
 [Footnote 2: *Quo die\,
\_on the day that\_, abl. of time.]*  
 [Footnote 3: *ut ...
essent\, Sec. 501.43.]*  
 [Footnote 4: *Cum ...
intraret\, Sec. 501.46.]*  
 [Footnote 5: *qui ...
immolarentur\, Sec. 501.40.]*[Footnote 6:  The Sacred Way was a noted street running along one side of the Forum to the base of the Capitoline Hill, on whose summit stood the magnificent temple of Jupiter Capitolinus.  This route was always followed by triumphal processions.]  
 [Footnote 7: The *toga
picta\ worn by a general in his triumph was a  
 splendid robe of Tyrian purple
covered with golden stars. See Plate  
 IV, p. 213.]*[Footnote 8:  The lictors were a guard of honor that attended the higher magistrates and made a way for them through the streets.  On their shoulders they carried the *fasces*, a bundle of rods with an ax in the middle, symbolizing the power of the law.]  
 [Footnote 9: *demisso
vultu\, \_with downcast countenance\_.]*  
 [Footnote 10: *vinctis\,
from* vincio\.]
  
 [Footnote 11: *Simul\,
etc., \_At the same time those of the captives  
 who were the noblest.\_]*  
 [Footnote 12: The prison
was a gloomy dungeon on the lower slopes of  
 the Capitoline Hill.]
  
 [Footnote 13: *valere
iussit\, \_bade farewell to\_.]*

**Page 174**

[Footnote 14: This sentence
marks the end of the story.]

**APPENDIX I**

DECLENSIONS, CONJUGATIONS, NUMERALS, ETC.

**NOUNS**

*460.* Nouns are inflected in five declensions,
distinguished by the final letter of the stem and
by the termination of the genitive singular.
  
FIRST DECLENSION—­A-stems, Gen. Sing. -ae
  
SECOND DECLENSION—­O-stems, Gen. Sing. -i
  
THIRD DECLENSION—­Consonant stems and I-stems,
Gen. Sing. -is
  
FOURTH DECLENSION—­U-stems, Gen. Sing. -u:s
  
FIFTH DECLENSION—­E-stems, Gen. Sing. -e:i
or -ei
 *461.* FIRST DECLENSION. *A*-STEMS
  
 domina, *lady* STEM domina-
BASE domin-
SINGULAR PLURAL
TERMINATIONS TERMINATIONS
Nom. domina -a dominae -ae
Gen. dominae -ae domina:rum -a:rum
Dat. dominae -ae domini:s -i:s
Acc. dominam -am domina:s -a:s
Abl. domina: -a: domini:s -i:s
 *a.* *Dea\ and* filia\
have the termination -a:bus in the dative  
 and ablative plural.
 *462.* SECOND DECLENSION. *O*-STEMS
 *a.* MASCULINES IN -us
  
 dominus, *master* STEM domino-
BASE domin-
SINGULAR PLURAL
TERMINATIONS TERMINATIONS
Nom. dominus -us domini: -i:
Gen. domini: -i: domino:rum -o:rum
Dat. domino: -o: domini:s -i:s
Acc. dominum -um domino:s -o:s
Abl. domino: -o: domini:s -i:s
  
 1. Nouns in -us of the second declension
have the termination -e in  
 the vocative singular, as *domine\.*  
 2. Proper names in -ius, and *filius\,
end in -i: in the vocative  
 singular, and the accent rests on the
penult, as* Vergi’li:, fi:li:\.
 *b.* NEUTERS IN -um
  
 pi:lum, *spear* STEM
pi:lo- BASE pi:l-
SINGULAR PLURAL
TERMINATIONS TERMINATIONS
Nom. pi:lum -um pi:la -a
Gen. pi:li: -i: pi:lo:rum -o:rum
Dat. pi:lo: -o: pi:li:s -i:s
Acc. pi:lum -um pi:la -a
Abl. pi:lo: -o: pi:li:s -i:s
  
1. Masculines in -ius and neuters
in -ium end in -i: in the  
genitive singular, *not* in -ii:, and the accent
rests on the penult.
 *c.* MASCULINES IN -er AND
-ir
puer, *boy* ager, *field* vir, *man*
STEMS puero- agro- viro-
BASES puer- agr- vir-
SINGULAR TERMINATIONS
Nom. puer ager vir —­
Gen. pueri: agri: viri: -i:
Dat. puero: agro: viro: -o:
Acc. puerum agrum virum -um
PLURAL
Nom. pueri: agri: viri: -i:
Gen. puero:rum agro:rum viro:rum -o:rum
Dat. pueri:s agri:s viri:s -i:s
Acc. puero:s agro:s viro:s -o:s
Abl. pueri:s agri:s viri:s -i:s
 *463.* THIRD DECLENSION.

**CLASSIFICATION**

I. Consonant Stems
  
 1. Stems that add -s to the base
to form the nominative  
 singular: masculines
and feminines only.
  
 2. Stems that add no termination
in the nominitive singular:  *a.* masculines
and feminines; *b.* neuters.
  
II. *I*-Stems.
  
 Masculines, feminines, and neuters.
 *464.* I. CONSONANT STEMS
  
1. *Nouns that add -s to the base to form the nominative
singular: masculines and feminines only*  
 pri:nceps,
mi:les, m., lapis, m.,  
 m.,
*chief* *soldier* *stone*  
 BASES |  
 OR | pri:ncip- mi:lit-
lapid-  
 STEMS |
SINGULAR TERMINATIONS
Nom. pri:nceps mi:les lapis -s
Gen. pri:ncipis mi:litis lapidis -is
Dat. pri:ncipi: mi:liti: lapidi: -i:
Acc. pri:ncipem mi:litem lapidem -em
Abl. pri:ncipe mi:lite lapide -e
PLURAL
Nom. pri:ncipe:s mi:lite:s lapide:s -e:s
Gen. pri:ncipum mi:litum lapidum -um
Dat. pri:ncipibus mi:litibus lapidibus -ibus
Acc. pri:ncipe:s mi:lite:s lapide:s -e:s
Abl. pri:ncipibus mi:litibus lapidibus -ibus
  
 re:x,
m., iu:dex, m., virtu:s, f., *king* *judge* *virtue*  
 BASES |  
 OR | re:g- iu:dic-
virtu:t-  
 STEMS |
SINGULAR TERMINATIONS
Nom. re:x iu:dex virtu:s -s
Gen. re:gis iu:dicis virtu:tis -is
Dat. re:gi: iu:dici: virtu:ti: -i:
Acc. re:gem iu:dicem virtu:tem -em
Abl. re:ge iu:dice virtu:te -e
PLURAL
Nom. re:ge:s iu:dice:s virtu:te:s -e:s
Gen. re:gum iu:dicum virtu:tum -um
Dat. re:gibus iu:dicibus virtu:tibus -ibus
Acc. re:ge:s iu:dice:s virtu:te:s -es
Abl. re:gibus iu:dicibus virtu:tibus -ibus
  
NOTE. For consonant changes in the nominative
singular, cf. Sec. 233.3.
  
 2. *Nouns that have no termination in
the nominative singular  
a.* MASCULINES AND FEMININES
  
 co:nsul,
m., legio:, f., o:rdo:, pater, m., *consul* *legion* m., *row* *father*  
 BASES |  
 OR | consul- legio:n-
o:rdin- patr-  
 STEMS |

**Page 176**

SINGULAR TERMINATIONS
Nom. co:nsul legio: o:rdo: pater —­
Gen. co:nsulis legio:nis o:rdinis patris -is
Dat. co:nsuli: legio:ni: o:rdini: patri: -i:
Acc. co:nsulem legio:nem o:rdinem patrem -em
Abl. co:nsule legio:ne o:rdine patre -e
PLURAL
Nom. co:nsule:s legio:ne:s o:rdine:s patre:s -e:s
Gen. co:nsulum legio:num o:rdinum patrum -um
Dat. co:nsulibus legio:nibus o:rdinibus patribus -ibus
Acc. co:nsule:s legio:ne:s o:rdine:s patre:s -e:s
Abl. co:nsulibus legio:nibus o:rdinibus patribus -ibus
  
NOTE. For vowel and consonant changes in the
nominative singular, cf. Sec. 236.1-3.
 *b.* NEUTERS  
 flu:men,
tempus, opus, caput,  
 n.,
*river* n., *time* n., *work*
n., *head*  
 BASES |  
 OR | flu:min- tempor-
oper- capit-  
 STEMS |
SINGULAR TERMINATIONS
Nom. flu:men tempus opus caput —­
Gen. flu:minis temporis operis capitis -is
Dat. flu:mini: tempori: operi: capiti: -i:
Acc. flu:men tempus opus caput —­
Abl. flu:mine tempore opere capite -e
PLURAL
Nom. flu:mina tempora opera capita -a
Gen. flu:minum temporum operum capitum -um
Dat. flu:minibus temporibus operibus capitibus -ibus
Acc. flu:mina tempora opera capita -a
Abl. flu:minibus temporibus operibus capitibus -ibus
  
NOTE. For vowel and consonant changes in the
nominative singular, cf. Sec. 238.2, 3.
 *465.* II. *I*-STEMS
 *a.* MASCULINES AND FEMININES
caede:s, f., hostis, urbs, f., clie:ns, m.,
*slaughter* m., *enemy* *city* *retainer*
STEMS caedi- hosti- urbi- clienti-
BASES caed- host- urb- client-
  
SINGULAR
TERMINATIONS  
Nom. caede:s hostis urbs clie:ns
-s, -is, *or*
-e:s  
Gen. caedis hostis urbis clientis
-is  
Dat. caedi: hosti: urbi:
clienti: -i:   
Acc. caedem hostem urbem clientem
-em (-im)  
Abl. caede hoste urbe cliente
-e (-i:)
PLURAL
Nom. caede:s hoste:s urbe:s cliente:s -e:s
Gen. caedium hostium urbium clientium -ium
Dat. caedibus hostibus urbibus clientibus -ibus
Acc. caedi:s, hosti:s, urbi:s, clienti:s, -i:s, -e:s
-e:s -e:s -e:s -e:s
Abl. caedibus hostibus urbibus clientibus -ibus
  
1. *Avis\,* civis\, *finis\,*ignis\, *navis\, have the abl. sing.  
in -i: or -e.*

**Page 177**

2. *Turris\ has accusative* turrim\
and ablative *turri:\ or* turre\.
 *b.* NEUTERS
i:nsigne, n., animal, n., calcar,
*decoration* *animal* n., *spur*
STEMS i:nsigni- anima:li- calca:ri-
BASES i:nsign- anima:l- calca:r-
SINGULAR TERMINATIONS
Nom. i:nsigne animal calcar -e *or* —­
Gen. i:nsignis anima:lis calca:ris -is
Dat. i:nsigni: anima:li: calca:ri: -i:
Acc. i:nsigne animal calcar -e *or* —­
Abl. i:nsigni: anima:li: calca:ri: -i:
PLURAL
Nom. i:nsignia anima:lia calca:ria -ia
Gen. i:nsignium anima:lium calca:rium -ium
Dat. i:nsignibus anima:libus calca:ribus -ibus
Acc. i:nsignia anima:lia calca:ria -ia
Abl. i:nsignibus anima:libus calca:ribus -ibus
 *466.* THE FOURTH DECLENSION. *U*-STEMS
adventus, m., cornu:, n.,
*arrival* *horn*
STEMS adventu- cornu-
BASES advent- corn-
TERMINATIONS
SINGULAR MASC. NEUT.
Nom. adventus cornu: -us -u:
Gen. adventu:s cornu:s -u:s -u:s
Dat. adventui: (u:) cornu: -ui: (u:) -u:
Acc. adventum cornu: -um -u:
Abl. adventu: cornu: -u: -u:
PLURAL
Nom. adventu:s cornua -u:s -ua
Gen. adventuum cornuum -uum -uum
Dat. adventibus cornibus -ibus -ibus
Acc. adventu:s cornua -u:s -ua
Abl. adventibus cornibus -ibus -ibus
 *467.* THE FIFTH DECLENSION. *E*-STEMS
die:s, m., *day* re:s, f., *thing*
STEMS die:- re:-
BASES di- r-
SINGULAR TERMINATIONS
Nom. die:s re:s -e:s
Gen. die:i: rei: -e:i: *or* -ei:
Dat. die:i: rei: -e:i: *or* -ei:
Acc. diem rem -em
Abl. die: re: -e:
PLURAL
Nom. die:s re:s -e:s
Gen. die:rum re:rum -e:rum
Dat. die:bus re:bus -e:bus
Acc. die:s re:s -e:s
Abl. die:bus re:bus -e:bus
 *468.* SPECIAL PARADIGMS
deus, domus, f., vi:s, f., iter,
m., *god* *house* *strength* n., *way*
STEMS deo- domu- vi:- and iter- and
vi:ri- itiner-
BASES de- dom- v- and iter- and
vi:r- itiner-
SINGULAR
Nom. deus domus vi:s iter
Gen. dei: domu:s vi:s (rare) itineris
PLURAL
Nom. dei:, di: domu:s vi:re:s itinera
Gen. deo:rum, deum domuum, -o:rum vi:rium itinerum
Dat. dei:s, di:s domibus vi:ribus itineribus
Acc. deo:s domo:s, -u:s vi:ri:s, -e:s itinera
Abl. dei:s, di:s domibus vi:ribus itineribus
 *a.* The vocative singular
of *deus\ is like the nominative.  
b.* The locative of *domus\
is* domi:\.

**ADJECTIVES**

*469.* FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS. *O*-
AND *A*-STEMS
 *a.* ADJECTIVES IN -us
  
bonus, *good*  
STEMS bono- m. and n., bona- f.   
BASE bon-
SINGULAR
MASC. FEM. NEUT.
Nom. bonus bona bonum
Gen. boni: bonae boni:
Dat. bono: bonae bono:
Acc. bonum bonam bonum
Abl. bono: bona: bono:
PLURAL
Nom. boni: bonae bona
Gen. bono:rum bona:rum bono:rum
Dat. boni:s boni:s boni:s
Acc. bono:s bona:s bona
Abl. boni:s boni:s boni:s
 *b.* ADJECTIVES IN -er
  
li:ber, *free*  
STEMS li:bero- m. and n., li:bera:- f.   
BASE li:ber-
SINGULAR
MASC. FEM. NEUT.
Nom. li:ber li:bera li:berum
Gen. li:beri: li:berae li:beri:
Dat. li:bero: li:berae li:bero:
Acc. li:berum li:beram li:berum
Abl. li:bero: li:bera: li:bero:
PLURAL
Nom. li:beri: li:berae li:bera
Gen. li:bero:rum li:bera:rum li:bero:rum
Dat. li:beri:s li:beri:s li:beri:s
Acc. li:bero:s li:bera:s li:bera
Abl. li:beri:s li:beri:s li:beri:s
  
pulcher, *pretty*  
STEMS pulchro- m. and n., pulchra:- f.   
BASE pulchr-
SINGULAR
MASC. FEM. NEUT.
Nom. pulcher pulchra pulchrum
Gen. pulchri: pulchrae pulchri:
Dat. pulchro: pulchrae pulchro:
Acc. pulchrum pulchram pulchrum
Abl. pulchro: pulchra: pulchro:
PLURAL
Nom. pulchri: pulchrae pulchra
Gen. pulchro:rum pulchra:rum pulchro:rum
Dat. pulchri:s pulchri:s pulchri:s
Acc. pulchro:s pulchra:s pulchra
Abl. pulchri:s pulchri:s pulchri:s
 *470.* THE NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES
  
alius, *another*  
STEMS alio- m. and n., alia:- f.   
BASE ali-
SINGULAR PLURAL
MASC. FEM. NEUT. MASC. FEM. NEUT.
Nom. alius alia aliud alii: aliae alia
Gen. ali:us ali:us ali:us alio:rum alia:rum alio:rum
Dat. alii: alii: alii: alii:s alii:s alii:s
Acc. alium aliam aliud alio:s alia:s alia
Abl. alio: alia: alio: alii:s alii:s alii:s
  
u:nus, *one, only*  
STEMS u:no- m. and n., u:na:- f.   
BASE u:n-

**Page 179**

MASC. FEM. NEUT. MASC. FEM. NEUT.
Nom. u:nus u:na u:num u:ni: u:nae u:na
Gen. u:ni:us u:ni:us u:ni:us u:no:rum u:na:rum u:no:rum
Dat. u:ni: u:ni: u:ni: u:ni:s u:ni:s u:ni:s
Acc. u:num u:nam u:num u:no:s u:na:s u:na
Abl. u:no: u:na: u:no: u:ni:s u:ni:s u:ni:s
 *a.* For the complete list see Sec. 108.
 *471.* ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION. *I*-STEMS
  
 I. THREE ENDINGS
  
a:cer, a:cris, a:cre, *keen,
eager*  
STEM a:cri- BASE a:cr-
SINGULAR PLURAL
MASC. FEM. NEUT. MASC. FEM. NEUT.
Nom. a:cer a:cris a:cre a:cre:s a:cre:s a:cria
Gen. a:cris a:cris a:cris a:crium a:crium a:crium
Dat. a:cri: a:cri: a:cri: a:cribus a:cribus a:cribus
Acc. a:crem a:crem a:cre a:cri:s, a:cri:s, a:cria
-e:s -e:s
Abl. a:cri: a:cri: a:cri: a:cribus a:cribus a:cribus
  
II. TWO ENDINGS
  
omnis, omne, *every, all*  
STEM omni- BASE omn-
SINGULAR PLURAL
MASC. AND FEM. NEUT. MASC. AND FEM. NEUT.
Nom. omnis omne omne:s omnia
Gen. omnis omnis omnium omnium
Dat. omni: omni: omnibus omnibus
Acc. omnem omne omni:s, -e:s omnia
Abl. omni: omni: omnibus omnibus
  
 III. ONE ENDING
  
 pa:r,
*equal*  
 STEM
pari- BASE par-
SINGULAR PLURAL
MASC. AND FEM. NEUT. MASC. AND FEM. NEUT.
Nom. pa:r pa:r pare:s paria
Gen. paris paris parium parium
Dat. pari: pari: paribus paribus
Acc. parem pa:r pari:s, -e:s paria
Abl. pari: pari: paribus paribus
  
 1. Observe that all i-stem adjectives
have -i: in the ablative  
 singular.
  
 [Transcriber’s Note:   
 This sentence appears to be a footnote,
but there is no footnote tag  
 on the page.]
 *472.* PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLES
  
 ama:ns,
*loving*  
 STEM
amanti- BASE amant-
SINGULAR PLURAL
MASC. AND FEM. NEUT. MASC. AND FEM. NEUT.
Nom. ama:ns ama:ns amante:s amantia
Gen. amantis amantis amantium amantium
Dat. amanti: amanti: amantibus amantibus
Acc. amantem ama:ns amanti:s, -e:s amantia
Abl. amante, -i: amante, -i: amantibus amantibus
  
 ie:ns,
*going*  
 STEM
ienti-, eunti- BASE ient-, eunt-
Nom. ie:ns ie:ns eunte:s euntia
Gen. euntis euntis euntium euntium
Dat. eunti: eunti: euntibus euntibus
Acc. euntem ie:ns eunti:s, -e:s euntia
Abl. eunte, -i: eunte, -i: euntibus euntibus
 *473.* REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

**Page 180**

POSITIVE COMPARATIVE SUPERLATIVE MASC.  MASC.  AND FEM.  NEUT.  MASC.  FEM.  NEUT. altus (alto-) altior altius altissimus -a -um li:ber (li:bero-) li:berior li:berius li:berrimus -a -um pulcher (pulchro-) pulchrior pulchrius pulcherrimus -a -um auda:x (auda:ci-) auda:cior auda:cius auda:cissimus -a -um brevis (brevi-) brevior brevius brevissimus -a -um a:cer (a:cri-) a:crior a:crius a:cerrimus -a -um *474.* DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES
  
 altior,
*higher*
SINGULAR PLURAL
MASC. AND FEM. NEUT. MASC. AND FEM. NEUT.
*Nom.* altior altius altio:re:s altio:ra
*Gen.* altio:ris altio:ris altio:rum altio:rum
*Dat.* altio:ri: altio:ri: altio:ribus altio:ribus
*Acc.* altio:rem altius altio:re:s altio:ra
*Abl.* altio:re altio:re altio:ribus altio:ribus
  
 plu:s,
*moreNom.* ——­ plu:s plu:re:s plu:ra *Gen.* ——­ plu:ris plu:rium plu:rium *Dat.* ——­ ——­ plu:ribus plu:ribus *Acc.* ——­ plu:s plu:ri:s (-e:s) plu:ra *Abl.* ——­ plu:re plu:ribus plu:ribus *475.* IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES
POSITIVE COMPARATIVE SUPERLATIVE
bonus, -a, -um, melior, melius, optimus, -a, -um,
*good* *better* *best*
malus, -a, -um, peior, peius, pessimus, -a, -um,
*bad* *worse* *worst*
magnus, -a, -um, maior, maius, maximus, -a, -um,
*great* *greater* *greatest*
multus, -a, -um, ——­, plu:s, *more* plu:rimus, -a, -um,
*much* *most*
parvus, -a, -um, minor, minus, minimus, -a, -um,\_
*small* *smaller* *smallest
senex, senis, senior maximus na:tu:*old\_
iuvenis, -e, iu:nior minimus na:tu:
*young*
vetus, veteris, vetustior, -ius veterrimus, -a, -um
*old*
facilis, -e, facilior, -ius facillimus, -a, -um
*easy*
difficilis, -e, difficilior, -ius difficillimus, -a, -um
*difficult*
similis, -e, similior, -ius simillimus, -a, -um
*similar*
dissimilis, -e, dissimilior, -ius dissimillimus, -a, -um
*dissimilar*
humilis, -e, *low* humilior, -ius humillimus, -a, -um
gracilis, -e, gracilior, -ius gracillimus, -a, -um
*slender*
exterus, *outward* exterior, extre:mus, extimus, *476.* REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS
POSITIVE COMPARATIVE SUPERLATIVE ca:re:  (ca:rus), *dearly* ca:rius ca:rissime:  misere:  (miser), *wretchedly* miserius miserrime:  a:criter (a:cer), *sharply* a:crius a:cerrime:  facile (facilis), *easily* facilius facillime:  *477.* IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS
POSITIVE COMPARATIVE SUPERLATIVE diu:, *long, a long time* diu:tius diu:tissime:  bene (bonus), *well* melius, *better* optime:, *best* male (malus), *ill* peius, *worse* pessime:, *worst* magnopere, *greatly* magis, *more* maxime:, *most* multum (multus), *much* plu:s, *more* plu:rimum, *most* parum, *little* minus, *less* minime:, *least* saepe, *often* saepi:us saepissime:  *478.* NUMERALS
  
The cardinal numerals are indeclinable excepting *u:nus\,*duo\, *tre:s\, the hundreds above one hundred,
and* mi:lle\ used as a noun. The ordinals
are declined like *bonus, -a, -um\.*
CARDINALS ORDINALS
(*How many*) (*In what order*)
1, u:nus, -a, -um, *one* pri:mus, -a, -um *first*
2, duo, duae, duo *two* secundus (*or* alter) *second*
3, tre:s, tria *three*, tertius *third*,
4, quattuor *etc*. qua:rtus *etc*.
5, qui:nque qui:ntus
6, sex sextus
7, septem septimus
8, octo: octa:vus
9, novem no:nus
10, decem decimus
11, u:ndecim u:ndecimus
12, duodecim duodecimus
13, tredecim (decem (et) tre:s) tertius decimus
14, quattuordecim qua:rtus decimus
15, qui:ndecim qui:ntus decimus *479.* Declension of *duo\, \_two\_,* tre:s\,
*three*, and *mi:lle\, \_a thousand\_.*
MASC. FEM. NEUT. M. AND F. NEUT. SING. PLUR.
N. duo duae duo tre:s tri:a mi:lle mi:lia
G. duo:rum dua:rum duo:rum trium trium mi:lle mi:lium
D. duo:bus dua:bus duo:bus tribus tribus mi:lle mi:libus
A. duo:s dua:s duo tri:s tria mi:lle mi:lia
*or* duo dua:s duo *or* tre:s tria
A. duo:bus dua:bus duo:bus tribus tribus mi:lle mi:libus
  
NOTE. *Mi:lle\ is used in the plural as a noun with
a modifying genitive, and is occasionally so used
in the nominative and accusative singular. For
the declension of* u:nus\ cf. Sec. 470.

**PRONOUNS**

*480.* PERSONAL
  
ego, *I*
tu:, *you* sui:, *of himself,  
etc.*  
SING. PLUR. SING.
PLUR. SING. PLUR.   
Nom. ego no:s tu: vo:s
——­ ——­  
Gen. mei: nostrum, -tri: tui:
vestrum, -tri: sui: sui:   
Dat. mihi no:bi:s tibi vo:bi:s
sibi sibi  
Acc. me: no:s te: vo:s
se:, se:,  
se:se:
se:se:   
Abl. me: no:bi:s te: vo:bi:s
se:, se:,  
se:se:
se:se:

**Page 183**

Note that *sui:\ is always reflexive.  
481.* DEMONSTRATIVE
  
Demonstratives belong to the first and second declensions,
but have the pronominal endings -i:us or -ius and
-i: in the gen. and dat. sing.
  
ipse, *self*
SINGULAR PLURAL
MASC. FEM. NEUT. MASC. FEM. NEUT.
Nom. ipse ipsa ipsum ipsi: ipsae ipsa
Gen. ipsi:’us ipsi:’us ipsi:’us ipso:rum ipsa:rum ipso:rum
Dat. ipsi: ipsi: ipsi: ipsi:s ipsi:s ipsi:s
Acc. ipsum ipsam ipsum ipso:s ipsa:s ipsa
Abl. ipso: ipsa: ipso: ipsi:s ipsi:s ipsi:s
  
 hic, *this*
(here), *he*
Nom. hic haec hoc hi: hae haec
Gen. huius huius huius ho:rum ha:rum ho:rum
Dat. huic huic huic hi:s hi:s hi:s
Acc. hunc hanc hoc ho:s ha:s haec
Abl. ho:c ha:c ho:c hi:s hi:s hi:s
  
 iste, *this,
that* (of yours), *he*
Nom. iste ista istud isti: istae ista
Gen. isti:’us isti:’us isti:’us isto:rum ista:rum isto:rum
Dat. isti: isti: isti: isti:s isti:s isti:s
Acc. istum istam istud isto:s ista:s ista
Abl. isto: ista: isto: isti:s isti:s isti:s
  
 ille, *that*
(yonder), *he*
Nom. ille illa illud illi: illae illa
Gen. illi:’us illi:’us illi:’us illo:rum illa:rum illo:rum
Dat. illi: illi: illi: illi:s illi:s illi:s
Acc. illum illam illud illo:s illa:s illa
Abl. illo: illa: illo: illi:s illi:s illi:s
  
 is, *this,
that, he*
Nom. is ea id ii:, ei: eae ea
Gen. eius eius eius eo:rum ea:rum eo:rum
Dat. ei: ei: ei: ii:s, ei:s ii:s, ei:s ii:s, ei:s
Acc. eum eam id eo:s ea:s ea
Abl. eo: ea: eo: ii:s, ei:s ii:s, ei:s ii:s, ei:s
  
i:dem, *the same*  
Nom. i:dem e’adem idem
ii:’dem eae’dem e’adem  
ei:’dem  
Gen. eius’dem eius’dem eius’dem
eo:run’dem ea:run’dem eo:run’dem  
Dat. ei:’dem ei:’dem ei:’dem
ii:s’dem ii:s’dem ii:s’dem  
ei:s’dem
ei:s’dem ei:s’dem  
Acc. eun’dem ean’dem idem
eo:s’dem ea:s’dem e’adem  
Abl. eo:’dem ea:’dem eo:’dem
ii:s’dem ii:s’dem ii:s’dem  
ei:s’dem
ei:s’dem ei:s’dem
  
NOTE. In the plural of *is\ and* i:dem\
the forms with two i’s are preferred, the two
i’s being pronounced as one.
 *482.* RELATIVE
  
 qui:,
*who, which, that*

**Page 184**

SINGULAR PLURAL
MASC. FEM. NEUT. MASC. FEM. NEUT.
Nom. qui: quae quod qui: quae quae
Gen. cuius cuius cuius quo:rum qua:rum quo:rum
Dat. cui cui cui quibus quibus quibus
Acc. quem quam quod quo:s qua:s quae
Abl. quo: qua: quo: quibus quibus quibus
 *483.* INTERROGATIVE
  
 quis,
substantive, *who, what*
SINGULAR PLURAL
MASC. & FEM. NEUT. MASC. FEM. NEUT.
Nom. quis quid qui quae quae
Gen. cuius cuius quo:rum qua:rum quo:rum
Dat. cui cui quibus quibus quibus
Acc. quem quid quo:s qua:s quae
Abl. quo: quo: quibus quibus quibus
  
The interrogative adjective *qui:, quae, quod\,
is declined like the relative.  
484.* INDEFINITES
 *quis\ and* qui:\, as declined above,[1] are
used also as indefinites (*some, any*).
The other indefinites are compounds of *quis\ and*qui:\.
  
 quisque,
*each*
SUBSTANTIVE ADJECTIVE
MASC. & FEM. NEUT. MASC. FEM. NEUT.
Nom. quisque quidque quisque quaeque quodque
Gen. cuius’que cuius’que cuius’que cuius’que cuius’que
Dat. cuique cuique cuique cuique cuique
Acc. quemque quidque quemque quamque quodque
Abl. quo:que quo:que quo:que qua:que quo:que
  
 [Footnote 1: *qua\
is generally used instead of* quae\ in the  
 feminine nominative singular
and in the neuter nominative and  
 accusative plural.]
 *485.* qui:dam, *a certain one, a certain*  
Observe that in the neuter singular the adjective
has *quoddam\ and the substantive* quiddam\.
SINGULAR
MASC. FEM. NEUT.
Nom. qui:dam quaedam quoddam, quiddam (*subst.*)
Gen. cuius’dam cuius’dam cuius’dam
Dat. cuidam cuidam cuidam
Acc. quendam quandam quoddam, quiddam (*subst.*)
Abl. quo:dam qua:dam quo:dam
  
 PLURAL  
 Nom. qui:dam quaedam quaedam  
 Gen. quo:run’dam qua:run’dam
quo:run’dam  
 Dat. quibus’dam quibus’dam
quibus’dam  
 Acc. quo:sdam qua:sdam quaedam  
 Abl. quibus’dam quibus’dam
quibus’dam
 *486.* *quisquam\, substantive, \_any one\_ (at
all)*
MASC. AND FEM. NEUT.
Nom. quisquam quicquam (quidquam)
Gen. cuius’quam cuius’quam
Dat. cuiquam cuiquam
Acc. quemquam quicquam (quidquam)
Abl. quo:quam quo:quam
 *487.* *aliquis\, substantive, \_some one\_.*aliqui:\, adjective, *some*

**Page 185**

SINGULAR
SUBSTANTIVE ADJECTIVE
MASC. AND FEM. NEUT. MASC. FEM. NEUT.
Nom. aliquis aliquid aliqui: aliqua aliquod
Gen. alicu’ius alicu’ius alicu’ius alicu’ius alicu’ius
Dat. alicui alicui alicui alicui alicui
Acc. aliquem aliquid aliquem aliquam aliquod
Abl. aliquo: aliquo: aliquo: aliqua: aliquo:
  
 PLURAL
FOR BOTH SUBSTANTIVE AND ADJECTIVE  
 MASC.
FEM. NEUT.   
 Nom. aliqui: aliquae aliqua  
 Gen. aliquo:’rum aliqua:’rum
aliquo:’rum  
 Dat. ali’quibus ali’quibus
ali’quibus  
 Acc. aliquo:s aliqua:s aliqua  
 Abl. ali’quibus ali’quibus
ali’quibus
*a.* *quis\ (*qui:\), *any one, any*, is the least definite (Sec. 297.b). *aliquis\ (*aliqui:\), *some one, some*, is more definite than *quis\.* quisquam\, *any one* (at all), and its adjective *u:llus\, \_any\_, occur mostly with a negative, expressed or implied, and in clauses of comparison.*

**REGULAR VERBS**

\_488.\_ FIRST CONJUGATION. \_A\_-VERBS. \_AMO:\_
  
 PRINCIPAL PARTS amo:, ama:re, ama:vi:,
ama:tus  
 PRES. STEM ama:- PERF. STEM
ama:v- PART. STEM ama:t-
  
 ACTIVE PASSIVE  
 INDICATIVE  
 PRESENT *I love, am loving,* *I
am loved*, *etc*. *do love*, *etc*.  
 amo: ama:mus amor
ama:mur  
 ama:s ama:tis ama:ris,
-re ama:mini:   
 amat amant ama:tur
amantur
  
 IMPERFECT *I loved, was loving*, *I
was loved*, *etc*. *did love*, *etc*.  
 ama:bam ama:ba:mus ama:bar
ama:ba:mur  
 ama:ba:s ama:ba:tis ama:ba:ris,
-re ama:ba:mini:   
 ama:bat ama:bant ama:ba:tur
ama:bantur
FUTURE *I shall love*, *etc*. *I shall be loved*, *etc*. ama:bo:  ama:bimus ama:bor ama:bimur ama:bis ama:bitis ama:beris, -re ama:bimini:  ama:bit ama:bunt ama:bitur ama:buntur  
 PERFECT *I have loved, loved,* *I
have been (was) loved*, *etc*. *did love*, *etc*.  
 ama:vi ama:vimus ama:tus,
{sum ama:ti:, {sumus  
 ama:visti: ama:vistis -a,
-um {es -ae, -a {estis  
 ama:vit ama:ve:runt, -re
{est {sunt

**Page 186**

PLUPERFECT *I had loved*, *etc*. *I had been loved*, *etc*. ama:veram ama:vera:mus ama:tus, {eram ama:ti:, {era:mus ama:vera:s ama:vera:tis -a, -um {era:s -ae, -a {era:tis ama:verat ama:verant {erat {erantFUTURE PERFECT *I shall have loved*, *etc*. *I shall have been loved*, *etc*. ama:vero:  ama:verimus ama:tus, {ero:  ama:ti:, {erimus ama:veris ama:veritis -a, -um {eris -ae, -a {eritis ama:verit ama:verint {erit {eruntSUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT amem ame:mus amer ame:mur ame:s ame:tis ame:ris, -re ame:mini:  amet ament ame:tur amenturIMPERFECT ama:rem ama:remus ama:rer ama:re:mur ama:re:s ama:re:tis ama:re:ris, -re ama:re:mini:  ama:ret ama:rent ama:re:tur ama:renturPERFECT ama:verim ama:verimus ama:tus, {sim ama:ti:, {si:mus ama:veris ama:veritis -a, -um {si:s -ae, -a {si:tis ama:verit ama:verint {sit {sintPLUPERFECT ama:vissem ama:visse:mus ama:tus, {essem ama:ti:, {esse:mus ama:visse:s ama:visse:tis -a, -um {esse:s -ae, -a {esse:tis ama:visset ama:vissent {esset {essentIMPERATIVE PRESENT ama:, *love thou* ama:re, *be thou loved* ama:te, *love ye* ama:mini:, *be ye loved*FUTURE ama:to:, *thou shalt love* ama:tor, *thou shalt be loved* ama:to:, *he shall love* ama:tor, *he shall be loved* ama:to:te, *you shall love* ——­ amanto:, *they shall love* amantor, *they shall be loved*  
INFINITIVE  
Pres. ama:re, *to love* ama:ri:, *to
be loved*  
Perf. ama:visse, ama:tus, -a, -um
esse, *to have loved* *to have
been loved*  
Fut. ama:tu:rus, -a, -um [[ama:tum i:ri:]],
*to be about to be  
esse,* to be\_
loved\_ *about to love*  
PARTICIPLES  
Pres. ama:ns, -antis, Pres. ——­ *loving*  
Fut. ama:tu:rus, -a, -um, Gerundive[1] amandus,
-a, -um, *to be*  
about to love\_
loved\_  
Perf. ——­ Perf.
ama:tus, -a, -um, *having
been loved, loved*GERUND  
Nom. ——­  
Gen. amandi:, *of loving*  
Dat. amando:, *for loving*  
Acc. amandum, *loving*  
Abl. amando:, *by loving*  
SUPINE (Active Voice)  
Acc. [[ama:tum]], *to love*  
Abl. [[ama:tu:]], *to love, in the loving*

**Page 187**

[Footnote 1: Sometimes
called the future passive participle.]
 *489.* SECOND CONJUGATION. *E:*-VERBS. *MONEO:*  
 PRINCIPAL PARTS moneo:, mone:re, monui:,
monitus  
 PRES. STEM mone:- PERF. STEM
monu- PART. STEM monit-
ACTIVE PASSIVE INDICATIVE PRESENT *I advise*, *etc*., *I am advised,* *etc*. moneo:  mone:mus moneor mone:mur mone:s mone:tis mone:ris, -re mone:mini:  monet monent mone:tur monenturIMPERFECT *I was advising*, *etc*., *I was advised*, *etc*. mone:bam mone:ba:mus mone:bar mone:ba:mur mone:ba:s mone:ba:tis mone:ba:ris, -re mone:ba:mini:  mone:bat mone:bant mone:ba:tur mone:ba:nturFUTURE *I shall advise*, *etc*., *I shall be advised*, *etc*. mone:bo:  mone:bimus mone:bor mone:bimur mone:bis mone:bitis mone:beris, -re mone:bimini:  mone:bit mone:bunt mone:bitur mone:buntur  
 PERFECT *I have advised,* *I
have been (was) advised*, *etc*. *I advised*, *etc*.  
 monui: monuimus
{sum {sumus  
 monuisti: monuistis monitus,
{es moniti:, {estis  
 monuit monue:runt, -re -a, -um
{est -ae, -a {sunt
  
 PLUPERFECT *I had advised*, *etc*.,
*I had been advised*, *etc*.
monueram monuera:mus {eram {era:mus
monuera:s monuera:tis monitus, {eras moniti:, {eratis
monuerat monuerant -a, -um {erat -ae, -a {erant
  
 FUTURE PERFECT *I shall have advised*, *I
shall have been advised*, *etc*. *etc*.  
 monuero: monuerimus
{ero: {erimus  
 monueris monueri:tis monitus,
{eris moniti:, {eritis  
 monuerit monueri:nt -a, -um
{erit -ae, -a {erunt
SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT moneam monea:mus monear monea:mur monea:s monea:tis monea:ris, -re monea:mini:  moneat moneant monea:tur moneanturIMPERFECT mone:rem mone:re:mus mone:rer mone:re:mur mone:re:s mone:re:tis mone:re:ris, -re mone:re:mini:  mone:ret mone:rent mone:re:tur mone:renturPERFECT monuerim monuerimus {sim {si:mus monueris monueritis monitus, {si:s moniti:, {si:tis monuerit monuerint -a, -um {sit -ae, -a {sintPLUPERFECT monuissem monuisse:mus

**Page 188**

{essem {esse:mus monuisse:s monuisse:tis monitus, {esse:s moniti:, {esse:tis monuisset monuissent -a, -um {esset -ae, -a {essentIMPERATIVE PRESENT mone:, *advise thou* mone:re, *be thou advised* mone:te, *advise ye* mone:mini:, *be ye advised*  
FUTURE  
mone:to:, *thou shall* mone:tor, *thou
shalt be advised  
advise*  
mone:to:, *he shall advise* mone:tor, *he
shall be advised*  
mone:to:te, *you shall advise* ——­  
monento:, *they shall* monentor, *they
shall be advised  
advise*  
INFINITIVE  
Pres. mone:re, *to advise* mone:ri:, *to
be advised*  
Perf. monuisse, *to have* monitus, -a,
-um esse, *advised* *to have
been advised*  
Fut. monitu:rus, -a, -um [[monitum i:ri:]],  
esse, *to be* *to be about
to be advised  
about to advise*  
PARTICIPLES  
Pres. mone:ns, -entis, Pres. ——­ *advising*  
Fut. monitu:rus, -a, -um, Ger. monendus, -a,
-um, *about to advise* *to
be advised*  
Perf. ——­ Perf.
monitus, -a, -um, *having
been advised, advised*GERUND  
Nom. ——­  
Gen. monendi:, *of advising*  
Dat. monendo:, *for advising*  
Acc. monendum, *advising*  
Abl. monendo:, *by advising*  
SUPINE (Active Voice)  
Acc. [[monitum]], *to advise*  
Abl. [[monitu:]], *to advise, in the advising  
490.* THIRD CONJUGATION. *E*-VERBS. *REGO:*  
 PRINCIPAL PARTS rego:, regere, rexi:,
re:ctus  
 PRES. STEM rege- PERF. STEM
re:x- PART. STEM re:ct-
ACTIVE PASSIVE INDICATIVE PRESENT *I rule*, *etc*. *I am ruled*, *etc*. rego:  regimus re’gor re’gimur regis regitis re’geris, -re regi’mini:  regit regunt re’gitur regun’turIMPERFECT *I was ruling*, *etc*. *I was ruled*, *etc*. rege:bam rege:ba:mus rege:’bar rege:ba:’mur rege:ba:s rege:ba:tis rege:ba:’ris, -re rege:ba:’mini:  rege:bat rege:bant rege:ba:’tur rege:ban’turFUTURE *I shall rule*, *etc*. *I shall be ruled*, *etc*. regam rege:mus re’gar rege:’mur rege:s rege:tis rege:’ris, -re rege:’mini:  reget regent rege:’tur regen’turPERFECT *I have ruled*, *etc*. *I have been ruled*, *etc*. re:xi:  re:ximus {sum

**Page 189**

{sumus re:xisti:  re:xistis re:ctus, {es re:cti:, {estis re:xit re:xe:runt, -re -a, -um {est -ae, -a {suntPLUPERFECT *I had ruled*, *etc*. *I had been ruled*, *etc*. re:xeram re:xera:mus {eram {era:mus re:xera:s re:xera:tis re:ctus, {eras re:cti:, {era:tis re:xerat re:xerant -a, -um {erat -ae, -a {erantFUTURE PERFECT *I shall have ruled*, *etc*. *I shall have been ruled*, *etc*. re:xero:  re:xerimus {ero:  {erimus re:xeris re:xeritis re:ctus, {eris re:cti:, {eritis re:xerit re:xerint -a, -um {erit -ae, -a {eruntSUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT regam rega:mus regar rega:mur rega:s rega:tis rega:ris, -re rega:mini:  regat regant rega:tur reganturIMPERFECT regerem regere:mus regerer regere:mur regere:s regere:tis regere:ris, -re regere:mini:  regeret regerent regere:tur regerenturPERFECT re:xerim re:xerimus {sim {si:mus re:xeris re:xeritis re:ctus, {si:s re:cti, {si:tis re:xerit re:xerint -a, -um {sit -ae, -a {sintPLUPERFECT re:xissem re:xisse:mus {essem {esse:mus re:xisse:s re:xisse:tis re:ctus, {esse:s re:cti, {esse:tis re:xisset re:xissent -a, -um {esset -ae, -a {essentIMPERATIVE PRESENT rege, *rule thou* regere, *be thou ruled* regite, *rule ye* regimini:, *be ye ruled*FUTURE regito:, *thou shalt rule* regitor, *thou shalt be ruled* regito:  *he shall rule* regitor, *he shall be ruled* regito:te, *ye shall rule* ——­ regunto:, *they shall rule* reguntor, *they shall be ruled*  
INFINITIVE  
Pres. regere, *to rule* regi:, *to
be ruled*  
Perf. re:xisse, *to have* re:ctus, -a,
-um esse, *ruled* *to have
been ruled*  
Fut. re:ctu:rus, -a, -um [[re:ctum i:ri:]],  
esse, *to be* *to be about
to be ruled  
about to rule*  
PARTICIPLES  
Pres. rege:ns, -entis, Pres. ——­ *ruling*  
Fut. re:ctu:rus, -a, -um, Ger. regendus, -a,
-um, *to be ruled  
about to rule*  
Perf. ——­ Perf.
re:ctus, -a, -um, *having
been ruled, ruled*GERUND  
Nom. ——­  
Gen. regendi:, *of ruling*  
Dat. regendo:, *for ruling*  
Acc. regendum, *ruling*  
Abl. regendo:, *by ruling*

**Page 190**

SUPINE (Active Voice)  
Acc. [[re:ctum]], *to rule*  
Abl. [[re:ctu:]], *to rule, in the ruling  
491.* FOURTH CONJUGATION. *I:*-VERBS. *AUDIO:*  
 PRINCIPAL PARTS audio:, audi:re, audi:vi:,
audi:tus  
 PRES. STEM audi:- PERF. STEM
audi:v- PART. STEM audi:t-
ACTIVE PASSIVE INDICATIVE PRESENT *I hear*, *etc*. *I am heard*, *etc*. audio:  audi:mus au’dior audi:’mur audi:s audi:tis audi:’ris, -re audi:’mini:  audit audiunt audi:’tur audiun’turIMPERFECT *I was hearing*, *etc*. *I was heard*, *etc*. audie:bam audie:ba:mus audie:’bar audie:ba:’mur audie:ba:s audie:ba:tis audie:ba:’ris, -re audie:ba:’mini:  audie:bat audie:bant audie:ba:’tur audie:ban’turFUTURE *I shall hear*, *etc*. *I shall be heard*, *etc*. audiam audie:mus au’diar audie:’mur audie:s audie:tis audie:’ris, -re audie:’mini:  audiet audient audie:’tur audien’turPERFECT *I have heard*, *etc*. *I have been heard*, *etc*. audi:vi:  audi:vimus {sum {sumus audi:visti:  audi:vistis audi:tus, {es audi:ti:, {estis audi:vit audi:ve:runt, -re -a, -um {est -ae, -a {suntPLUPERFECT *I had heard*, *etc*. *I had been heard*, *etc*. audi:veram audi:vera:mus {eram {era:mus audi:vera:s audi:vera:tis audi:tus, {eras audi:ti:, {era:tis audi:verat audi:verant -a, -um {erat -ae, -a {erantFUTURE PERFECT *I shall have heard*, *etc*. *I shall have been heard*, *etc*. audi:vero:  audi:verimus {ero:  {erimus audi:veris audi:veritis audi:tus, {eris audi:ti:, {eritis audi:verit audi:verint -a, -um {erit -ae, -a {eruntSUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT audiam audia:mus audiar audia:mur audia:s audia:tis audia:ris, -re audia:mini:  audiat audiant audia:tur audianturIMPERFECT audi:rem audi:re:mus audi:rer audi:re:mur audi:re:s audi:re:tis audi:re:ris, -re audi:re:mini:  audi:ret audi:rent audi:re:tur audi:renturPERFECT audi:verim audi:verimus {sim {si:mus audi:veris audi:veritis audi:tus, {si:s audi:ti, {si:tis audi:verit audi:verint -a, -um {sit -ae, -a {sint

**Page 191**

PLUPERFECT audi:vissem audi:visse:mus {essem {esse:mus audi:visse:s audi:visse:tis audi:tus, {esse:s audi:ti, {esse:tis audi:visset audi:vissent -a, -um {esset -ae, -a {essentIMPERATIVE PRESENT PRESENT audi:, *hear thou* audi:re, *be thou heard* audi:te, *hear ye* audi:mini:, *be ye heard*FUTURE audi:to:, *thou shalt hear* audi:tor, *thou shalt be heard* audi:to:  *he shall hear* audi:tor, *he shall be heard* audi:to:te, *ye shall hear* ——­ audunto:, *they shall hear* audiuntor, *they shall be heard*  
INFINITIVE  
Pres. audi:re, *to hear* audi:ri:,
*to be heard*  
Perf. audi:visse, audi:tus, -a, -um
esse, *to have heard* *to have
been heard*  
Fut. audi:tu:rus, -a, -um [[audi:tum i:ri:]],  
esse, *to be* *to be
about to be heard  
about to hear*  
PARTICIPLES  
Pres. audie:ns, -entis, Pres. ——­ *hearing*  
Fut. audi:tu:rus, -a, -um, Ger. audiendus,
-a, -um, *about to hear* *to
be heard*  
Perf. ——­
Perf. audi:tus, -a, -um, *having
been heard, heard*GERUND  
Nom. ——­  
Gen. audiendi:, *of hearing*  
Dat. audiendo:, *for hearing*  
Acc. audiendum, *hearing*  
Abl. audiendo:, *by hearing*  
SUPINE (Active Voice)  
Acc. [[audi:tum]], *to hear*  
Abl. [[audi:tu]], *to hear, in the hearing  
492.* THIRD CONJUGATION. VERBS IN \_-IO:\_.
*CAPIO:*  
 PRINCIPAL PARTS capio:, capere, ce:pi:,
captus  
 PRES. STEM cape- PERF. STEM
ce:p- PART. STEM capt-
ACTIVE PASSIVE INDICATIVE PRESENT capio:  capimus ca’pior ca’pimur capis capitis ca’peris, -re capi’mini:  capit capiunt ca’pitur capiun’turIMPERFECT capie:bam capiebamus capie:’bar capie:ba:’mur capie:bas capie:ba:tis capie:ba’ris, -re capie:ba:’mini:  capie:bat capie:bant capie:ba:’tur capieban’turFUTURE capiam capie:mus ca’piar capie:’mur capie:s capie:tis capie:’ris, -re capie:’mini:  capiet capient capie:’tur capien’tur  
 PERFECT  
 ce:pi:, ce:pisti:, ce:pit, *etc*.
captus, -a, -um sum, es, est, *etc*.

**Page 192**

PLUPERFECT
ce:peram, ce:pera:s, ce:perat, captus, -a, -um eram, era:s, erat,
*etc*. *etc*.
FUTURE PERFECT
ce:pero:, ce:peris, ce:perit, captus, -a, -um ero:, eris, erit,
*etc*. *etc*.
  
 SUBJUNCTIVE  
 PRESENT  
 capiam, capia:s, capiat, capiar,
-ia:ris, -re, -ia:tur, *etc*. *etc*.   
 IMPERFECT  
 caperem, capere:s, caperet, caperer,
-ere:ris, -re, -ere:tur, *etc*.
*etc*.   
 PERFECT  
 ce:perim, ce:peris, ce:perit, captus,
-a, -um sim, si:s, sit, *etc*.
*etc*.   
 PLUPERFECT  
 ce:pissem, ce:pisse:s, captus,
-a, -um essem, esse:s,  
 ce:pisset, *etc*.
esset, *etc*.
  
 IMPERATIVE  
 PRESENT  
 2d Pers. cape capite capere
capimini:
FUTURE
2d Pers. capito: capito:te capitor ——­
3rd Pers. capito: capiunto: capitor capiuntor
INFINITIVE  
Pres. capere capi:   
Perf. ce:pisse captus, -a, -um esse  
Fut. captu:rus, -a, -um [[captum i:ri:]]  
  
                  esse
PARTICIPLES
Pres. capie:ns, -ientis Pres. ——­
Fut. captu:rus, -a, -um Ger. capiendus, -a, -um
Perf. ——­ Perf. captus, -a, -um
  
GERUND  
Gen. capiendi: *etc*.
  
SUPINE (Active Voice)  
Acc. [[captum]]  
Abl. [[captu:]]
 *493.* DEPONENT VERBS
  
 [Transcriber’s Note:   
 Asterisks in this section are from the
original text ("marked with a  
 star").]
  
 PRINCIPAL PARTS
  
 I. hortor, horta:ri:, horta:tus
sum, *urge*  
 II. vereor, vere:ri:, veritus sum,
*fear*  
 III. sequor, sequi:, secu:tus sum, *follow*  
 IV. partior, parti:ri:, parti:tus
sum, *share, divide*  
NOTE. In addition to the passive conjugation,
deponent verbs use certain forms from the active.
These are marked with a star. Deponent -io:
verbs of the third conjugation are inflected like
the passive of capio:.
INDICATIVE
Pres. hortor vereor sequor partior
horta:ris, -re vere:ris, -re sequeris, -re parti:ris, -re
horta:tur vere:tur sequitur parti:tur
horta:mur vere:mur sequimur parti:mur
horta:mini: vere:mini: sequimini: parti:mini:
hortantur verentur sequuntur partiuntur
Impf. horta:bar vere:bar seque:bar partie:bar
Fut. horta:bor vere:bor sequar partiar
Perf. horta:tus sum veritus sum secu:tus sum parti:tus sum
Plup. horta:tus eram veritus eram secu:tus eram parti:tus eramSUBJUNCTIVE  
Pres. horter verear sequar partiar  
Impf. horta:rer vere:rer sequerer parti:rer  
Perf. horta:tus sim veritus sim secu:tus sim parti:tus sim  
Plup. horta:tus essem veritus essem secu:tus essem parti:tus essem
IMPERATIVE
Pres. horta:re vere:re sequere parti:re
Fut. horta:tor vere:tor sequitor parti:tor
INFINITIVE
Pres. horta:ri: vere:ri: sequi: parti:ri:
Perf. horta:tus esse veritus esse secu:tus esse parti:tus esse
Fut. horta:tu:rus veritu:rus secu:tu:rus parti:tu:rus
esse esse esse esse
PARTICIPLES
Pres. horta:ns vere:ns seque:ns partie:ns
Fut. horta:turus veritu:rus secu:tu:rus parti:tu:rus
Perf. horta:tus veritus secu:tus parti:tus
Ger. hortandus verendus sequendus partiendus
GERUND
hortandi:, *etc*. verendi:, *etc*.
sequendi:, *etc*. partiendi:, *etc*.
SUPINE
[[horta:tus, -tu:]] [[veritum, -tu:]]
[[secu:tum, -tu:]] [[parti:tum, -tu:]]

**IRREGULAR VERBS**

*494.* sum, *am, be*  
 PRINCIPAL PARTS sum, esse, fui:, futu:rus  
 PRES. STEM es- PERF. STEM
fu- PART. STEM fut-
INDICATIVE PRESENT SINGULAR PLURAL sum, *I am* sumus, *we are* es, *thou art* estis, *you are* est, *he (she, it) is* sunt, *they are*IMPERFECT eram, *I was* era:mus, *we were* era:s, *thou wast* era:tis, *you were* erat, *he was* erant, *they were*FUTURE ero:, *I shall be* erimus, *we shall be* eris, *thou wilt be* eritis, *you will be* erit, *he will be* erunt, *they will be*  
 PERFECT  
 fui:, *I have been, was*
fuimus, *we have been, were*  
 fuisti:, *thou hast been, wast*
fuistis, *you have been, were*  
 fuit, *he has been, was*
fue:runt, fue:re, *they have been,  
  
 were*PLUPERFECT fueram, *I had been* fuera:mus, *we had been* fuera:s, *thou hadst been* fuera:tis, *you had been* fuerat, *he had been* fuerant, *they had been*FUTURE PERFECT fuero:, *I shall have been* fuerimus, *we shall have been* fueris, *thou wilt have been* fueritis, *you*

***Page 194***

*will have been* fuerit, *he will have been* fuerint, *they will have been*SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT IMPERFECT SINGULAR PLURAL SINGULAR PLURAL sim si:mus essem esse:mus si:s si:tis esse:s esse:tis sit sint esset essentPERFECT PLUPERFECT fuerim fuerimus fuissem fuisse:mus fueris fueritis fuisse:s fuisse:tis fuerit fuerint fuisset fuissentIMPERATIVE PRESENT 2d Pers.  Sing. es, *be thou* 2d Pers.  Plur. este, *be ye* FUTURE 2d Pers.  Sing. esto:, *thou shalt be* 3d Pers.  Sing. esto:, *he shall be* 2d Pers.  Plur. esto:te, *ye shall be* 3d Pers.  Plur. sunto:, *they shall be*  
 INFINITIVE  
 Pres. esse, *to be*  
 Perf. fuisse, *to have been*  
 Fut. futu:rus, -a, -um esse or fore,
*to be about to be*  
PARTICIPLE  
futu:rus, -a, -um, *about to be  
495.* possum, *be able, can*  
PRINCIPAL PARTS possum, posse, potui:,
——­
INDICATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE
SINGULAR PLURAL SINGULAR PLURAL
Pres. possum pos’sumus possim possi:’mus
potes potes’tis possi:s possi:’tis
potest possunt possit possint
Impf. poteram potera:mus possem posse:’mus
Fut. potero: poterimus ——­ ——­
Perf. potui: potuimus potuerim potuerimus
Plup. potueram potuera:mus potuissem potuisse:mus
F. P. potuero: potuerimus ——­ ——­
  
INFINITIVE  
Pres. posse  
Perf. potuisse
  
PARTICIPLE  
Pres. potens, *gen.* -entis, (adjective) *powerful  
496.* pro:sum, *benefit*  
PRINCIPAL PARTS pro:sum, pro:desse,
pro:fui:, pro:futu:rus  
PRES. STEM pro:des- PERF. STEM pro:fu-
PART. STEM pro:fut-
INDICATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE
SINGULAR PLURAL SINGULAR PLURAL
Pres. pro:sum pro:’sumus pro:sim pro:si:’mus
pro:des pro:des’tis pro:si:s pro:si:’tis
pro:dest pro:sunt pro:sit pro:sint
Impf. pro:deram pro:dera:mus pro:dessem prodesse:’mus
Fut. pro:dero: pro:derimus ——­ ——­
Perf. pro:fui: pro:fuimus pro:fuerim pro:fuerimus
Plup. pro:fueram pro:fuera:mus pro:fuissem pro:fuisse:mus
F. P. pro:fuero: pro:fuerimus ——­ ——­
  
IMPERATIVE  
Pres. 2d Pers. pro:des, pro:deste  
Fut. 2d Pers. pro:desto:, pro:desto:te
  
 INFINITIVE  
 Pres. pro:desse  
 Perf. pro:fuisse  
 Fut. pro:futu:rus, -a, -um esse
  
 FUTURE PARTICIPLE pro:futu:rus, -a, -um
 *497.* [ volo:, no:lo:, ma:lo:]

**Page 195**

PRINCIPAL PARTS:  volo:, velle, volui:, ——­, *be willing, will, wish* no:lo:, no:lle, no:lui:, ——­, *be unwilling, will not* ma:lo:, ma:lle, ma:lui:, ——­, *be more willing, prefer  
No:lo:\ and* ma:lo:\ are compounds of *volo:\.*No:lo:\ is for *ne\ (\_not\_) +* volo:\, and
*ma:lo:\ for* ma:\ (from *magis\, \_more\_) +*volo:\. The second person *vi:s\ is from
a different root.*
INDICATIVE
SINGULAR
Pres. volo: no:lo: ma:lo:
vi:s no:n vis ma:vi:s
vult no:n vult ma:vult
PLURAL volumus no:lumus ma:lumus vultis no:n vultis ma:vul’tis volunt no:lunt ma:lunt
Impf. vole:bam no:le:bam ma:le:bam
Fut. volam, vole:s, no:lam, no:le:s, ma:lam, ma:le:s,
*etc*. *etc*. *etc*.
Perf. volui: no:lui: ma:lui:
Plup. volueram no:lueram ma:lueram
F. P. voluero: no:luero: ma:luero:
SUBJUNCTIVE
SINGULAR
Pres. velim no:lim ma:lim
veli:s no:li:s ma:li:s
velit no:lit ma:lit
PLURAL veli:’mus no:li:’mus ma:li:’mus veli:’tis no:li:’tis ma:li:’tis velint no:lint ma:lint
Impf. vellem no:llem ma:llem
Perf. voluerim no:luerim ma:luerim
Plup. voluissem no:luissem ma:luissem
  
IMPERATIVE  
Pres. no:li:   
no:li:te  
Fut. no:li:to:, *etc*.
INFINITIVE
Pres. velle no:lle ma:lle
Perf. voluisse no:luisse ma:luisse
  
PARTICIPLE  
Pres. vole:ns, -entis no:le:ns, -entis ——­
 *498.* fero:, *bear, carry, endure*  
 PRINCIPAL PARTS fero:, ferre, tuli:, la:tus  
 PRES. STEM fer- PERF. STEM
tul- PART. STEM la:t-
INDICATIVE
ACTIVE PASSIVE
Pres. fero: ferimus feror ferimur
fers ferti:s ferris, -re ferimimi:
fert ferunt fertur feruntur
Impf. fere:bam fere:bar
Fut. feram, fere:s, *etc*. ferar, fere:ris, *etc*.
Perf. tuli: la:tus, -a, -um sum
Plup. tuleram la:tus, -a, -um eram
F. P. tulero: la:tus, -a, -um ero:
SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres. feram, fera:s, *etc*. ferar, fera:ris, *etc*.
Impf. ferrem ferrer
Perf. tulerim la:tus, -a, -um sim
Plup. tulissem la:tus, -a, -um essem
  
 IMPERATIVE  
 Pres. 2d Pers. fer ferte ferre
ferimini:   
 Fut. 2d Pers. ferto: ferto:te
fertor  
 3d Pers.
ferto: ferunto fertor feruntor

**Page 196**

INFINITIVE
Pres. ferre ferri:
Perf. tulisse la:tus, -a, -um esse
Fut. la:tu:rus, -a, -um esse ——­
PARTICIPLES
Pres. fere:ns, -entis Pres. ——­
Fut. la:tu:rus, -a, -um Ger. ferendus, -a, -um
Perf. ——­ Perf. la:tus, -a, -um
  
 GERUND  
 Gen. ferendi:   
 Dat. ferendo:   
 Acc. ferendum  
 Abl. ferendo:
  
 SUPINE (Active Voice)  
 Acc. [[la:tum]]  
 Abl. [[la:tu:]]
 *499.* eo:, *go*  
 PRINCIPAL PARTS eo:, i:re, ii: (i:vi:),
itum (n. perf. part.)  
 PRES. STEM i:-  
 PERF. STEM i:- or i:v-  
 PART. STEM it-
  
INDICATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE
IMPERATIVE  
SING. PLUR.   
Pres. eo: i:mus eam 2d
Pers. i: i:te  
i:s i:tis  
it eunt  
Impf. i:bam i:rem  
Fut. i:bo: ——­
2d Pers. i:to: i:to:te  
3d Pers.
i:to: eunto:   
Perf. ii: (i:vi:) ierim (i:verim)  
Plup. ieram (i:veram) i:ssem (i:vissem)  
F. P. iero: (i:vero:)
INFINITIVE  
Pres. i:re  
Perf. i:sse (i:visse)  
Fut. itu:rus, -a, -um essePARTICIPLES  
Pres. ie:ns, *gen.* euntis (Sec. 472)  
Fut. itu:rus, -a, -um  
Ger. eundum  
 GERUND  
 Gen. eundi:   
 Dat. eundo:   
 Acc. eundum  
 Abl. eundo:
  
 SUPINE  
 Acc. [[itum]]  
 Abl. [[itu:]]
 *a.* The verb *eo:\
is used impersonally in the third person  
 singular of the passive, as*i:tur\, *itum est\, \_etc.\_  
b.* In the perfect system
the forms with *v\ are very rare.  
500.* *fi:o:\, passive of* facio:\; *be
made, become, happen*  
PRINCIPAL PARTS fi:o:, fieri:, factus
sum
INDICATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE IMPERATIVE
Pres. fi:o: ——­ fi:am 2d Pers. fi: fi:te
fi:s ——­
fit fi:unt
Impf. fi:e:bam fierem
Fut. fi:am ——­
INDICATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE  
Perf. factus, -a, -um sum factus, -a, -um sim  
Plup. factus, -a, -um eram factus, -a, -um essem  
F. P. factus, -a, -um ero: INFINITIVE PARTICIPLES  
Pres. fieri:  Perf. factus, -a, -um  
Perf. factus, -a, -um esse Ger. faciendus, -a, -um  
Fut. [[factum i:ri:]]  
 [Illustration: CASTRA MURO FOSSAQUE
MUNIUNTUR]

**APPENDIX II**

*501.* RULES OF SYNTAX
  
NOTE. The rules of syntax are here classified
and numbered consecutively. The number of the
text section in which the rule appears is given at
the end of each.
 *Nominative Case*

**Page 197**

*1.* The subject of a finite verb
is in the nominative and answers the  
 question Who? or What? Sec. 36.
 *Agreement  
2.* A finite verb must always be
in the same person and number as its  
 subject. Sec. 28.
 *3.* A predicate noun agrees in case
with the subject of the verb.   
 Sec. 76.
 *4.* An appositive agrees in case
with the noun which it explains.   
 Sec. 81.
 *5.* Adjectives agree with their
nouns in gender, number, and case.   
 Sec. 65.
 *6.* A predicate adjective completing
a complementary infinitive  
 agrees in gender, number, and case with
the subject of the main verb.   
 Sec. 215.a.
 *7.* A relative pronoun must agree
with its antecedent in gender and  
 number; but its case is determined by
the way it is used in its own  
 clause. Sec. 224.
 *Prepositions  
8.* A noun governed by a preposition
must be in the accusative or  
 ablative case. Sec. 52.
 *Genitive Case  
9.* The word denoting the owner
or possessor of something is in the  
 genitive and answers the question Whose?
Sec. 38.
 *10.* The possessive genitive often
stands in the predicate,  
 especially after the forms of *sum\,
and is then called the \_predicate  
 genitive\_. Sec. 409.  
11.* Words denoting a part are often
used with the genitive of the  
 whole, known as *the partitive genitive*.
Sec. 331.
 *12.* Numerical descriptions of measure
are expressed by the genitive  
 with a modifying adjective. Sec.
443.
 *Dative Case  
13.* The indirect object of a verb
is in the dative. Sec. 45.
 *14.* The dative of the indirect
object is used with the intransitive  
 verbs *credo\,* faveo\, *noceo\,*pareo\, *persuadeo\,* resisto\, *studeo\, and others of like meaning.
Sec. 154.15.* Some verbs compounded with *ad\,* ante\, *con\,* de\, *in\,* inter\, *ob\,* post\, *prae\,* pro\, *sub\,* super\, admit the dative of the indirect object.  Transitive compounds may take both an accusative and a dative.  Sec. 426.*16.* The dative is used with adjectives to denote the object toward which the given quality is directed.  Such are, especially, those meaning *near*, also *fit, friendly, pleasing, like*, and their opposites.  Sec. 143. *17.* The dative is used to denote
the *purpose* or *end for which*;  
 often with another dative denoting *the
person or thing affected*.   
 Sec. 437.
 *Accusative Case  
18.* The direct object of a transitive
verb is in the accusative and  
 answers the question Whom? or What?
Sec. 37.

**Page 198**

*19.* The subject of the infinitive
is in the accusative. Sec. 214.
 *20.* The *place to which* is
expressed by *ad\ or* in\ with the  
 accusative. Before names of towns,
small islands, *domus\, and* rus\  
 the preposition is omitted. Secs.
263, 266.
 *21.* *Duration of time* and
*extent of space* are expressed by the  
 accusative. Sec. 336.
 *22.* Verbs of *making, choosing,
calling, showing*, and the like, may  
 take a *predicate accusative* along
with the direct object. With the  
 passive voice the two accusatives become
nominatives. Sec. 392.
 *Ablative Case  
23.* *Cause* is denoted by
the ablative without a preposition. This  
 answers the question Because of what?
Sec. 102.
 *24.* *Means* is denoted by
the ablative without a preposition. This  
 answers the question By means of what?
or With what? Sec. 103.
 *25.* *Accompaniment* is denoted
by the ablative with *cum\. This  
 answers the question With whom? Sec.
104.  
26.* The ablative with *cum\ is
used to denote the manner of an  
 action.* Cum\ may be omitted, if an
adjective is used with the  
 ablative. This answers the question
How? or In what manner? Sec. 105.
 *27.* With comparatives and words
implying comparison the ablative is  
 used to denote the *measure of difference*.
Sec. 317.
 *28.* The ablative of a noun or pronoun
with a present or perfect  
 participle in agreement is used to express
attendant circumstance.   
 This is called the *ablative absolute*.
Sec. 381.
 *29.* 1. Descriptions of physical
characteristics are expressed by the  
 ablative with a modifying
adjective. Sec. 444.
  
 2. Descriptions involving
neither numerical statements nor physical  
 characteristics may be expressed
by either the genitive or the  
 ablative with a modifying
adjective. Sec. 445.
 *30.* The ablative is used to denote
*in what respect* something is  
 true. Sec. 398.
*31.* The *place from which* is expressed by *a\ or* ab\, *de:\,* e:\ or *ex\ with the separative ablative.  This answers the question Whence?  Before names of towns, small islands,* domus\, and *rus\ the preposition is omitted.  Secs. 264, 266.*  
 \_32.\_ Words expressing separation or deprivation
require an ablative  
 to complete their meaning. This is
called the \_ablative of  
 separation\_. Sec. 180.
 *33.* The word expressing the person
from whom an action starts, when  
 not the subject, is put in the ablative
with the preposition *a\ or*  
ab\. This is called the *ablative
of the personal agent*. Sec. 181.
 *34.* The comparative degree, if
*quam\ is omitted, is followed by the  
 separative ablative. Sec. 309.*

**Page 199**

*35.* The *time when or within
which* anything happens is expressed by  
 the ablative without a preposition.
Sec. 275.
 *36.* 1. The *place at or
in which* is expressed by the ablative with *in\. This answers
the question Where? Before names of towns, small  
 islands, and* rus\ the
preposition is omitted. Secs. 265, 266.
  
 2. Names of towns and
small islands, if singular and of the first or  
 second declension, and the
word *domus\ express the \_place in which\_  
 by the locative. Sec.
268.  
Gerund and Gerundive  
37.* 1. The gerund is a verbal
noun and is used only in the genitive,  
 dative, accusative, and ablative
singular. The constructions of  
 these cases are in general
the same as those of other nouns. Sec.  
 406.1.
2.  The gerundive is a verbal adjective and must be used instead of gerund + object, excepting in the genitive and in the ablative without a preposition.  Even in these instances the gerundive construction is more usual.  Sec. 406.2. *38.* The accusative of the gerund
or gerundive with *ad\, or the  
 genitive with* causa\, is used to express
purpose. Sec. 407.
 *Moods and Tenses of Verbs  
39.* Primary tenses are followed
by primary tenses, and secondary by  
 secondary. Sec. 358.
 *40.* The subjunctive is used in
a dependent clause to express the *purpose* of the action in the principal
clause. Sec. 349.
*41.* *A substantive clause of purpose* with the subjunctive is used as object with verbs of *commanding, urging, asking, persuading*, or *advising*, where in English we should usually have the infinitive.  Sec. 366. *42.* Verbs of *fearing* are
followed by a substantive clause of  
 purpose introduced by *ut\ (\_that not\_)
or* ne:\ (*that* or *lest*).   
 Sec. 372.
 *43.* *Consecutive clauses of result*
are introduced by *ut\ or* ut  
 non\, and have the verb in the subjunctive.
Sec. 385.
 *44.* *Object clauses of result*
with *ut\ or* ut non\ are found after  
 verbs of effecting or bringing about.
Sec. 386.
 *45.* A relative clause with the
subjunctive is often used to describe  
 an antecedent. This is called the
*subjunctive of characteristic or  
 description*. Sec. 390.
 *46.* The conjunction *cum\ means
\_when, since\_, or \_although\_. It is  
 followed by the subjunctive unless it
means \_when\_ and its clause  
 fixes the time at which the main action
took place. Sec. 396.  
47.* When a direct statement becomes
indirect, the principal verb is  
 changed to the infinitive, and its subject
nominative becomes subject  
 accusative of the infinitive. Sec.
416.

**Page 200**

*48.* The accusative-with-infinitive
construction in indirect  
 statements is found after verbs of *saying,
telling, knowing,  
 thinking*, and *perceiving*.
Sec. 419.
*49.* A present indicative of a direct statement becomes present infinitive of the indirect, a past indicative becomes perfect infinitive, and a future indicative becomes future infinitive.  Sec. 418. *50.* In an *indirect question*
the verb is in the subjunctive and its  
 tense is determined by the law for tense
sequence. Sec. 432.
  
 [Illustration: DOMINA]

**APPENDIX III**

**REVIEWS[1]**  
 [Footnote 1: It is suggested
that each of these reviews be assigned  
 for a written test.]
  
 [Transcriber’s Note:   
 In this Review section, the lists of English
words for translation may  
 not be in the same order as in the original.]

**I. REVIEW OF VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR THROUGH LESSON VIII**

*502.* Give the English of the following words:[1]
NOUNS
agricola *gallina\
ancilla iniuria*aqua\ *insula\*casa\ *luna\*causa\ *nauta\
cena* pecunia\
*corona\ puella*dea\ *pugna\
domina* sagitta\
fabula *silva\*fera\ *terra\*filia\ *tuba\*fortuna\ *via\*fuga\ *victoria\*ADJECTIVES alta\ *magna\* bona\ *mala\* clara\ *nova\* grata\ *parva\* lata\ *pulchra\* longa\ *sola\*
VERBS
amat necat\
*dat\* nuntiat\
*est\* parat\
habitat *portat\*laborat\ *pugnat\*laudat\ *sunt\
narrat* vocat\
PREPOSITIONS *a:\ or* ab\ *ad\* cum\ *de\* e:\ or *ex\* in\PRONOUNS *mea\* tua\ *quis\* cuius\ *cui\* quem\ *quid\*ADVERBS cur\ *deinde\* non\ *ubi\*  
 CONJUNCTIONS  
 et\  
 quia *quod\*  
 INTERROGATIVE  
 PARTICLE  
 /-ne\
  
 [Footnote 1: Proper nouns
and proper adjectives are not repeated in  
 the reviews. Words used
in Cassar’s “Gallic War” are in heavy
type.]
 *503.* Give the Latin of the following words:[1]
  
Underline the words you do not remember. Do not
look up a single word till you have gone through the
entire list. Then drill on the words you have
underlined.

**Page 201**

*flight* *wide*
story tells
*new* *money*
lives (verb) *callsaway from* *withwho* *yourwhy* *then, in the next placeforest* *daughterwreath* *to whomdeep, high* *fortune*
dinner *famousout from* *labors* (verb)
*my* *killswhere* *nottrumpet* *in*
lady, mistress *andwhom* *sailorisland* farmer
*goddess* *whatwild beast* *waypraises* (verb) *badalone* loves
*pleasing* *prettyprepares* *waterare* *greatto* *isbecause* *announcesarrow* *injury, wrongcottage* *battle* (noun)
*gives* *small*
girl *fights* (verb)
*good* maid
*carries* *down fromchicken* *longvictory* *causeland* *whose*  
 [Footnote 1: The translations
of words used in Caesar are in  
 italics.]
 *504.* Review Questions. How many syllables
has a Latin word? How are words divided into
syllables? What is the ultima? the penult? the
antepenult? When is a syllable short? When
is a syllable long? What is the law of Latin
accent? Define the subject of a sentence; the
predicate; the object; the copula. What is inflection?
declension? conjugation? What is the ending of
the verb in the third person singular, and what in
the plural? What does the form of a noun show?
Name the Latin cases. What case is used for the
subject? the direct object? the possessor? What
relation is expressed by the dative case? Give
the rule for the indirect object. How are questions
answered in Latin? What is a predicate adjective?
an attributive adjective? What is meant by agreement?
Give the rule for the agreement of the adjective.
What are the three relations expressed by the ablative?
What can you say of the position of the possessive
pronoun? the modifying genitive? the adjective?
What is the base? What is grammatical gender?
What is the rule for gender in the first declension?
What are the general principles of Latin word order?
 *505.* Fill out the following summary of the
first declension:

**Page 202**

THE FIRST OR A-DECLENSION  
 1. Ending in the nominative singular  
 2. Rule for gender  
 3. Case terminations  
 a. Singular  
 b. Plural  
 4. Irregular nouns

**II.  REVIEW OF LESSONS IX-XVII**

*506.* Give the English of the following words:
NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION
*agri cultura\* galea\
*constantia\* inopia\
*copia\* lacrima\
*diligentia\* lorica\
*fama\* patria\
femina *praeda\*NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION ager\ *liberi\* amicus\ magister *arma\ (plural)* murus\ *auxilium\* numerus\ *bellum\* oppidanus\ *carrus\* oppidum\ *castrum\* pilum\ *cibus\* populus\ *consilium\* praemium\ *domicilium\* proelium\  
 dominus *puer\*  
equus\ *scutum\* filius\ *servus\  
 fluvius* studium\ *frumentum\* telum\ *gladius\* vicus\ *legatus\* vir\ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS *aeger, aegra, aegrum\* alius, alia, aliud\ *alter, altera, alterum\* armatus, -a, -um\ *creber, crebra, crebrum\* durus, -a, -um\ *finitimus, -a, -um\* infirmus, -a, -um\ *legionarius, -a, -um\* liber, libera, liberum\ *maturus, -a, -um\* meus, -a, -um\ *miser, misera, miserum\* multus, -a, -um\ *neuter, neutra, neutrum\* noster, nostra, nostrum\ *nullus, -a, -um\* pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum\ *solus, -a, -um\* suus, -a, -um\ *totus, -a, -um\* tuus, -a, -um\ *ullus, -a, -um\* unus, -a, -um\ *uter, utra, utrum\  
 validus, -a, -um*  
vester, vestra, vestrum\  
 VERBS  
 arat *curat\*  
desiderat\ *maturat\*  
properat\
  
 DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN *is, ea, id\*CONJUNCTIONS *an\* -que\ *sed\*  
 ADVERBS  
 iam\  
 quo *saepe\*  
 PREPOSITION *apud\  
507.* Give the Latin of the following words:
*sword* *shield* (noun)
*corselet* *wholeman* *ityour* (plural) *aid* (noun)
*hasten* *legionarybut* *weakamong* *armstear* (noun) master (of school)
*village* *friend*
strong *neighboringlong for* *sickand* (enclitic) *lieutenantoften* *fieldwant* (noun) *report, rumorwhich* (of two) *abodecare for* *boy  
508.* Review Questions. How many declensions
are there? What three things must be known about
a noun before it can be declined? What three
cases of neuter nouns are always alike, and in what
do they end in the plural? What two plural cases
are always alike? When is the vocative singular
not like the nominative? What is a predicate noun?
With what does it agree? What is an appositive?
Give the rule for the agreement of an appositive.
How can we tell whether a noun in -er is declined like
*puer\ or like* ager\? Decline *bonus\,*liber\, *pulcher\. How can we tell whether
an adjective in -er is declined like* liber\ or
like *pulcher\? Why must we say* nauta bonus\
and not *nauta bona\? Name the Latin possessive
pronouns. How are they declined? With what
does the possessive pronoun agree? When do we
use* tuus\ and when *vester\? Why is* suus\
called a *reflexive* possessive? What is
the non-reflexive possessive of the third person?
When are possessives omitted? What four uses
of the ablative case are covered by the relations expressed
in English by *with*? Give an illustration
in Latin of the *ablative of manner*; of the
*ablative of cause*; of the *ablative of means*;
of the *ablative of accompaniment*. What
ablative regularly has *cum\? What ablative
sometimes has* cum\? What uses of the ablative
never have *cum\? Name the nine pronominal
adjectives, with their meanings. Decline* alius\,
*nullus\. Decline* is\. What does *is\
mean as a demonstrative adjective or pronoun?
What other important use has it?  
509.* Fill out the following summary of the
second declension:

**Page 204**

THE SECOND OR O-DECLENSION  
 1. Endings in the nominative  
 2. Rule for gender  
 3. Case terminations of nouns in
-us  
 a.
Singular  
 b.
Plural  
 a. The vocative
singular of nouns in -us  
 4. Case terminations of nouns in
-um  
 a.
Singular  
 b.
Plural  
 5. Peculiarities of nouns in -er
and -ir  
 6. Peculiarities of nouns in -ius
and -ium

**III.  REVIEW OF LESSONS XVIII-XXVI**

*510.* Give the English of the following words:
NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION *disciplina\ regina* forma\ superbia *poena\* tristitia\ *potentia\*  
 NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION  
 ludus  
 ornamentum\  
 sacrum *socius\*  
verbum\
ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS *amicus\ iratus* antiquus\ *laetus\* finitimus\ *molestus\* gratus\ *perpetuus\* idoneus\ *proximus\* inimicus\ *septem\* interfectus\ *superbus\*  
 ADVERBS  
 hodie  
 ibi\ *maxime\  
 mox*  
nunc\ *nuper\*  
 CONJUNCTIONS *etiam\*  
non solum ... sed etiam\
  
 PERSONAL PRONOUN *ego\*  
 VERBS  
 CONJ. I  
 volo, -are
CONJ.  II *deleo, -ere\* noceo, -ere\ *doceo, -ere\* pareo, -ere\ *faveo, -ere\* persuadeo, -ere\ *habeo, -ere\ sedeo, -ere* iubeo, -ere\ *studeo, -ere\* moneo, -ere\ *video, -ere\* moveo, -ere\CONJ.  III *ago, -ere\* fugio, -ere\ *capio, -ere\* iacio, -ere\ *credo, -ere\* mitto, -ere\ *dico, -ere\ rapio, -ere* duco, -ere\ *rego, -ere\* facio, -ere\ *resisto, -ere\*CONJ.  IV audio, -ire\ *munio, -ire\* reperio, -ire\ *venio, -ire\*  
 IRREGULAR VERB  
 sum, esse\
 *511.* Give the Latin of the following words.
In the case of verbs always give the first form and
the present infinitive.
*ancient* *powercome* *make, doresist* *injuresee* *nowbe* *annoying*
fly *leadI* *moveproud* soon
*word* *gladsadness* *punishmentfind* *believerule* (verb) *advisebe eager for* *especially, most of allnot only ... but also* angry
*seven* *beauty  
512.* Review Questions. What is conjugation?
Name two important differences between conjugation
in Latin and in English. What is tense?
What is mood? What are the Latin moods? When
do we use the indicative mood? Name the six tenses
of the indicative. What are personal endings?
Name those you have had. Inflect sum in the three
tenses you have learned. How many regular conjugations
are there? How are they distinguished? How
is the present stem found? What tenses are formed
from the present stem? What is the tense sign
of the imperfect? What is the meaning of the
imperfect? What is the tense sign of the future
in the first two conjugations? in the last two?
Before what letters is a final long vowel of the stem
shortened? What are the three possible translations
of a present, as of pugno? Inflect aro, sedeo,
mitto, facio, and venio, in the present, imperfect,
and future active. What forms of -io verbs of
the third conjugation are like audio? what like rego?
Give the rule for the dative with adjectives.
Name the special intransitive verbs that govern the
dative. What does the imperative mood express?
How is the present active imperative formed in the
singular? in the plural? What three verbs have
a shortened present active imperative? Give the
present active imperative of porto, deleo, ago, facio,
munio.

**IV.  REVIEW OF LESSONS XXVII-XXXVI**

*513.* Give the English of the following words:
NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION *ala\* cura\ *mora\* porta\ *provincia\* vita\  
 NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION *animus\* navigium\  
 aurum oraculum *bracchium\* periculum\ *deus\* ventus\ *locus\* vinum\  
 monstrum
ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS *adversus\* dubius\ attentus *maximus\* carus\ perfidus *commotus\* plenus\ *defessus\ saevus* dexter\ *sinister\*ADVERBS antea\ *ita\* celeriter\ *longe\* denique\

**Page 206**

*semper\* diu\ *subito\* frustra\ *tamen\* graviter\ *tum\*CONJUNCTIONS autem\ *si\* ubi\PREPOSITIONS *de\* per\ *pro\* sine\
VERBS
CONJ. I
*adpropinquo\* servo\
*navigo\* sto\
*occupo\* supero\
*postulo\* tempto\
*recuso\* vasto\
*reporto\* vulnero\
CONJ.  II *contineo\* egeo\ *prohibeo\* respondeo\ *teneo\*CONJ.  III discedo\ *gero\* interficio\  
 IRREGULAR VERB *absum\  
514.* Translate the following words. Give
the genitive and the gender of the nouns and the principal
parts of the verbs.
*be away* *heavilywind* monster
*through* *approachif* *nevertheless*
savage *placewound* (verb) *be without, lackwine* *moveddelay* gold
faithless *restrain, keep fromright* *withoutseize* *holdquickly* *suddenlybefore, in behalf of* *dearbattle* *alwaysdown from* or *concerning* *godmoreover* *hold in, keepgreatest* *afar*
oracle *thus, so, as followsdanger* *arm* (noun)
*lay waste* *whengate* *in vaindoubtful* *standopposite, adverse* *bring back, windemand* *before, previouslyfinally* *depart, go away*
attentive *provincethen, at that time* *care, troubleweary* *killovercome, conquer* *reply* (verb)
*conquer* *wingboat, ship* *mind, heartsail* (verb) *left* (adj.)
*life* *bear, carry onsave* *tryfull* *for a long timerefuse  
515.* Give the principal parts and meaning of
the following verbs:

**Page 207**

*sum\* faveo\ *do\* noceo\ *teneo\* dico\ *iubeo\* pareo\ *ago\* duco\ *mitto\* facio\ *munio\* persuadeo\ *moveo\* sedeo\ *credo\* studeo\ *rapio\* fugio\ *reperio\* venio\ *deleo\* iacio\ *resisto\* video\ *audio\* absum\ *moneo\* egeo\ *capio\* gero\ *doceo\* sto\ *rego\*  
\_516.\_ Review Questions. What are the personal
endings in the passive voice? What is the letter
-r sometimes called? What are the distinguishing
vowels of the four conjugations? What forms constitute
the principal parts? What are the three different
conjugation stems? How may they be found?
What are the tenses of the indicative? of the infinitive?
What tense of the imperative have you learned?
What forms are built on the present stem? on the perfect
stem? on the participial stem? What are the endings
of the perfect active indicative? What is the
tense sign of the pluperfect active? of the future
perfect active? How is the present active infinitive
formed? the present passive infinitive? How is
the present active imperative formed? the present passive
imperative? How is the perfect active infinitive
formed? the perfect passive infinitive? How is
the future active infinitive formed? What is
a participle? How are participles in -us declined?
Give the rule for the agreement of the participle.
How are the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect
passive indicative formed? Conjugate the verb
sum\ in all moods and tenses as far as you have
learned it (Sec. 494). What is meant by the separative
ablative? How is the place *from which* expressed
in Latin? Give the rule for the ablative of separation;
for the ablative of the personal agent. How can
we distinguish between the ablative of means and the
ablative of the personal agent? What is the perfect
definite? the perfect indefinite? What is the
difference in meaning between the perfect indefinite
and the imperfect? What two cases in Latin may
be governed by a preposition? Name the prepositions
that govern the ablative. What does the preposition
*in\ mean when it governs the ablative? the accusative?
What are the three interrogatives used to introduce
\_yes\_-and-\_no\_ questions? Explain the force of
each. What words are sometimes used for \_yes\_
and \_no?\_ What are the different meanings and uses
of ubi?*

**V. REVIEW OF LESSONS XXXVII-XLIV**

*517.* Give the English of the following words:
  
NOUNS  
FIRST DECLENSION SECOND DECLENSION *ripa\* barbari\ *captivus\*  
castellum\ *impedimentum\*

**Page 208**

THIRD DECLENSION
*animal\* homo\ *ordo\*arbor\ *hostis\* pater\
*avis\* ignis\ *pedes\*caedes\ *imperator\* pes\
*calamitas\* insigne\ pons
calcar *iter\* princeps\
*caput\ iudex* rex\
*civis\* labor\ *salus\*cliens\ *lapis\* sanguis\
*collis\* legio\ *soror\*consul\ *mare\ tempus*dens\ *mater\* terror\
*dux\* mensis\ *turris\*eques\ *miles\* urbs\
*finis\* mons\ *victor\*flumen\ *navis\* virtus\
fons *opus\* vis\
*frater\* orator\
ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS *barbarus\* dexter\ *sinister\* summus\PREPOSITIONS *in\ with the abl.* in\ with the acc. *trans\*  
 ADVERBS  
 cotidie\ *numquam\*  
CONJUNCTIONS *nec, neque\*  
nec ... nec\, or *neque ... neque\*  
VERBS  
CONJ. I CONJ. III *cesso\* accipio\ *oppugno\* peto\ *confirmo\* vinco\ *veto\* incipio\ *pono\*  
vivo\
 *518.* Translate the following words. Give
the genitive and the gender of the nouns and the principal
parts of the verbs:
*forbid* *in* *rank, row* *judge* *brother* *defeat, disaster* *force* *fire* *across* *tree* *savages* *foot soldier* *horseman* *receive* *never* *general* *mountain* *highest* *manliness, courage* *fountain* *leader* *orator* *put, place* *neither ... nor* *time* *and not* *savage, barbarous* *left* *sister* *tooth* *seek* *soldier* *captive* *month* *hindrance, baggage* *city* *captive* *victor* *hindrance, baggage* *daily* *man-of-war* *live* (verb) *conquer* *redoubt, fort* *consul* *sea* *mother* *tower* *retainer* *drill* (verb) *citizen* *legion* *head* *terror* *safety* *into, to* *assail, storm* *right* (adj.) *begin* *stone* *march* *blood* *decoration*

**Page 209**

*labor* (noun) *bridge* *king* *bird* *spur* *cease* *chief* *man* *slaughter* *river* *strengthen* *work* (noun) *foot* *and* *enemy* *ship* *animal* *bank* *father  
519.* Review Questions. Give the conjugation
of *possum\. What is an infinitive? What
three uses has the Latin infinitive that are like the
English? What is the case of the subject of the
infinitive? What is meant by a complementary
infinitive? In the sentence \_The bad boy cannot
be happy\_, what is the case of \_happy\_? Give the
rule. Decline* qui\. Give the rule for
the agreement of the relative. What are the two
uses of the interrogative? Decline *quis\.
What is the base of a noun? How is the stem formed
from the base? Are the stem and the base ever
the same? How many declensions of nouns are there?
Name them. What are the two chief divisions of
the third declension? How are the consonant stems
classified? Explain the formation of* lapis\
from the stem lapid-, *miles\ from milit-,* rex\
from reg-. What nouns have i-stems? What
peculiarities of form do i-stems have,—­masc.,
fem., and neut.? Name the five nouns that have
-i and -e in the abl. Decline *turris\.
Give the rules for gender in the third declension.
Decline* miles\, *lapis\,* rex\, *virtus\,*consul\, *legio\,* homo\, *pater\,* flumen\,
*opus\,* tempus\, *caput\,* caedes\, *urbs\,*hostis\, *mare\,* animal\, *vis\,* iter\.
 *520.* Fill out the following scheme:
  
 {
{ Masculine  
 {
GENDER { Feminine  
 {
ENDINGS { Neuter  
 {  
 THE THIRD {
{ I. CONSONANT { *a*. Masc. and fem.   
 DECLENSION {
{ STEMS { *b*. Neuters  
 {
CASE {  
 {
TERMINATIONS {  
 {
{  
 {
{ II. *I*-STEMS { *a*.
Masc. and fem.  
 {
{ { *b*. Neuters  
 {  
 {
IRREGULAR NOUNS

**VI.  REVIEW OF LESSONS XLV-LII**

*521.* Give the English of the following words:
  
 NOUNS  
 FIRST DECLENSION *amicitia\*  
hora\ *littera\*

**Page 210**

SECOND DECLENSION *annus\* supplicium\, *modus\* supplicium dare\ *nuntius\* supplicium sumere de\ *oculus\* tergum\, *regnum\* tergum vertere\ *signum\* vestigium\
THIRD DECLENSION
*aestas\* nox\
*corpus\* pars\
*hiems\* pax\
*libertas\ rus*lux\, *sol\*prima lux\ *vox\*nomen\ *vulnus\*FOURTH DECLENSION adventus\ *impetus\* cornu\ *lacus\* domus\ *manus\* equitatus\ *metus\* exercitus\ *portus\* fluctus\  
FIFTH DECLENSION *acies\* res\, *dies\* res gestae\ *fides\,* res adversae\ *in fidem venire\* res secundae\ *res publica\*  
spes\
  
INDECLINABLE NOUN *nihil\*
ADJECTIVES
FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS
*densus\* pristinus\
*invisus\* publicus\
*mirus\* secundus\
*pauci\* tantus\
*primus\* verus\
THIRD DECLENSION *acer, acris, acre\* gravis, grave\ *brevis, breve\* incolumis, incolume\ *difficilis, difficile\* omnis, omne\ *facilis, facile\* par, par\ *fortis, forte\* velox, velox\  
 PRONOUNS  
 PERSONAL *ego\*  
nos\ *sui\*  
tu\ *vos\*DEMONSTRATIVE *hic\* idem\ *ille\* iste\  
 INTENSIVE *ipse\*INDEFINITE *aliquis, aliqui\* quidam\ *quis, qui\* quisquam\ *quisque\*
ADVERBS
ne: ... quidem\ *quoque\
olim* satis\
*paene\* vero\
  
 CONJUNCTIONS *itaque\*  
nisi\
PREPOSITIONS *ante\* post\ *propter\*
VERBS
CONJ. I CONJ. II
conloco\ *debeo\*convoco\ *exerceo\*cremo\ *maneo\*demonstro\ *placeo\*mando\ *sustineo\*  
 CONJ. III
CONJ. IV  
 committo\,
*desilio\*  
committere
proelium\ *decido\*  
eripio\ *sumo\,*  
sumere supplicium
de\ *traduco\*  
verto\
 *522.* Translate the following words. Give
the genitive and the gender of the nouns and the principal
parts of the verbs.

**Page 211**

*if not, unless* *adversity* *on account of* *former, old-time* *public* *all, every* *commonwealth* *any one* (at all) *leap down, dismount* *this* (of mine) *unharmed* *heavy, serious* *lead across* *hateful, detested* *remain* *true* *call together* *burn* *friendship* *snatch from* *footprint, trace* *letter* *each* *punishment* *fear* (noun) *inflict punishment on* *hope* *behind, after* *therefore* *suffer punishment* *so great* *liberty* *equal* *sun* *in truth, indeed* *sustain* *that* (yonder) *take up, assume* *a certain* *hour* *fall down* *reign, realm* *owe, ought* *messenger* *measure, mode* *part, direction* *eye* *body* *name* *harbor* *wave, billow* *faith, protection* *thing, matter* *of himself* *exploits* *also, too* *republic* *sufficiently* *prosperity* *you* (plur.) *burn* *peace* *that* (of yours) *back* *before* *turn the back, retreat* *light* *night* *daybreak* *hand, force* *winter* *lake* *attack* *day* *line of battle* *commit, intrust* *army* *a few only* *drill, train* *sharp, eager* *join battle* *we* *house, home* *turn* *midday* *you* (sing.) *wonderful* *I* *brave* *signal* *almost* *summer* *the same* *cavalry* *some, any* *wound* *if any one* *horn, wing* *self, very* *country* *not even* *second, favorable* *easy* *formerly, once* *dense* *short* *point out, explain* *voice* *difficult* *arrival* *first* *come under the protection of* *arrange, station* *nothing* *please* *swift* *year  
523.* Review Questions. By what declensions
are Latin adjectives declined? What can you say

**Page 212**

about the stem of adjectives of the third declension?
Into what classes are these adjectives divided?
How can you tell to which of the classes an adjective
belongs? Decline *acer, omnis, par\. What
are the nominative endings and genders of nouns of
the fourth or u-declension? What nouns are feminine
by exception? Decline* adventus, lacus, cornu,
domus\. Give the rules for the ordinary expression
of the *place to which*, the *place from which*,
the *place in which*. What special rules
apply to names of towns, small islands, and *rus\?
What is the locative case? What words have a locative
case? What is the form of the locative case?
Translate \_Galba lives at home, Galba lives at Rome,
Galba lives at Pompeii\_. What is the rule for
gender in the fifth or* e:\-declension? Decline
*dies\,* res\. When is the long *e:\ shortened?
What can you say about the plural of the fifth declension?
Decline* tuba\, *servus\,* pilum\, *ager\,*puer\, *miles\,* consul\, *flumen\,* caedes\,
*animal\. How is the \_time when\_ expressed?
Name the classes of pronouns and define each class.
Decline* ego, tu, is\. What are the reflexives
of the first and second persons? What is the
reflexive of the third person? Decline it.
Translate *I see myself, he sees himself, he sees
him*. Decline *ipse\. How is* ipse\
used? Decline *idem\. Decline* hic\,
*iste\,* ille\. Explain the use of these
words. Name and translate the commoner indefinite
pronouns. Decline *aliquis\,* quisquam\,
*quidam\,* quisque\.

**VII.  REVIEW OF LESSONS LIII-LX**

*524.* Give the English of the following words:
  
 NOUNS  
 FIRST DECLENSION *aquila\* fossa\
SECOND DECLENSION *aedificium\* negotium\ *captivus\* spatium\ *concilium\* vallum\ *imperium\*THIRD DECLENSION agmen\ *mors\* celeritas\ *mulier\* civitas\ *multitudo\* clamor\ *munitio\* cohors\ *nemo\* difficultas\ *obses\* explorator\ *opinio\* gens\ *regio\* latitudo\ *rumor\* longitudo\ *scelus\* magnitudo\ *servitus\* mens\ *timor\* mercator\ *valles\* mille\  
 FOURTH DECLENSIONS *aditus\* passus\ *commeatus\*  
 FIFTH DECLENSION *res frumentaria\*
ADJECTIVES
FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS
*aequus\* pessimus\
*bini\* plurimus\
*ducenti\* posterus\
*duo\* primus\
*exterus\ reliquus*inferus\ *secundus\*maximus\ *singuli\*medius\ *superus\*minimus\ *tardus\*opportunus\ *terni\*optimus\ *unus\*

**Page 213**

THIRD DECLENSION  
 alacer, alacris, alacre\ *audax, audax\*  
celer, celeris, celere\ *citerior, citerius\*  
difficilis, difficile\ *dissimilis, dissimile\*  
facilis, facile\  
 gracilis, gracile *humilis, humile\*  
ingens, ingens\ *interior, interius\*  
lenis, lene\ *maior, maius\*  
melior, melius\ *minor, minus\*  
nobilis, nobile\ *peior, peius\  
 ——­,*plus\ *prior, prius\*  
recens, recens\ *similis, simile\*  
tres, tria\ *ulterior, ulterius\*ADVERBS *acriter\* optime\ *audacter\* parum\ *bene\* paulo\ *facile\* plurimum\ *fere\* prope\ *fortiter\* propius\ *magis\* proxime\ *magnopere\* quam\ *maxime\* statim\ *melius\* tam\ *minime\* undique\ *multum\*CONJUNCTIONS atque, ac\ *qua de causa\* aut\ *quam ob rem\* aut ... aut\ *simul atque or\* et ... et\ *simul ac* nam\\PREPOSITIONS *circum\* contra\ *inter\* ob\ *trans\*
VERBS
CONJ. I CONJ. II
conor\ *obtineo\*hortor\ *perterreo\*moror\ *valeo\*vexo\ *vereor\*
CONJ. III
abdo\ *patior\*cado\ premo
*cognosco\* proficiscor\
*consequor\* progredior\
*contendo\* quaero\
*cupio\* recipio\
*curro\* relinquo\
*dedo\* revertor\
*defendo\* sequor\
egredior statuo
*incendo\ subsequor*incolo\ *suscipio\*insequor\ *trado\*occido\ *traho\*  
 CONJ. IV  
 orior\ pervenio\
 *525.* Translate the following words. Give
the genitive and the gender of the nouns and the principal
parts of the verbs:
*on account of* *width* *nearly* *scout* *keenly, sharply* *cohort* *thousand* *tribe, nation* *two* *business* *opportune* *by a little* *remaining* *somewhat* *above* (adj.) *crime* *next* *difficult* *grain supply* *equal* *pace* *move forward, advance* *shout* (noun) *further* *from all sides* *multitude* *against* *woman* *around* *desire* (verb) *three* *give over, surrender* *line of*

***Page 214***

*march* *kill* *manor* *overtake* *region* *hasten, strive* *fortification* *hide* *eagle* *one* *almost* *first* *boldly* *second, favorable* *bravely* *two hundred* *across* *former* *between, among* *inner* *hither* (adj.) *middle* *so* *low* *less* *outward* *more* *three by three* *most* *provisions* *worst* *speed* *difficulty* *ditch* *hostage* *wherefore* or *therefore* *death* *length* *command, power* *for this reason* *captive* *fear* (noun) *or* *return* *and* *inquire* *arrive* *set out* *attempt, try* *move out, disembark* *fear* (verb) *leave* *worse* *abandon* *greater, larger* *be strong* *two by two* *receive, recover* *least* (adv.) *terrify, frighten* *opinion, expectation* *dwell* *defend* *state, citizenship* *approach, entrance* *valley* *trader* *slavery* *magnitude, size* *greatly* *council, assembly* *best of all* (adv.) *space, room* *better* (adv.) *either ... or* *well* (adv.) *rise, arise* *very much* *suffer, allow* *much* *press hard* *unlike* *fall* *like* (adj.) *surrender* *slow* *set fire to* *very greatly, exceedingly* *possess, hold* *building* *delay* (verb) *mind* (noun) *nearest* (adv.) *easily* *nearer* (adv.) *easy* *better* (adj.) *recent* *well known, noble* *huge, great* *rampart* *bold* *mild, gentle* *immediately* *swift* *as soon as* *eager* *for* *low* (adj.) *than* *slender* *best* (adj.) *one by one* *greatest* *no one* *follow close* *least* (adv.) *encourage* *little* (adv.) *annoy, ravage* *learn, know* *hide* *drag* *follow* *undertake*

**Page 215**

*pursue* *run* *both ... and* *fix, decide  
526.* Review Questions. What is meant by
comparison? In what two ways may adjectives be
compared? Compare *clarus, brevis, velox\, and
explain the formation of the comparative and the superlative.
What are the adverbs used in comparison? Compare*brevis\ by adverbs. Decline the comparative
of *velox\. How are adjectives in -er compared?
Compare* acer\, *pulcher\,* liber\. What
are possible translations for the comparative and
superlative? Name the six adjectives that form
the superlative in -limus. Translate in two ways
*Nothing is brighter than the sun*. Give
the rule for the ablative with comparatives. Compare
*bonus, magnus, malus, multus, parvus, exterus, inferus,
posterus, superus\. Decline* plus\. Compare
*citerior, interior, propior, ulterior\. Translate
\_That route to Italy is much shorter\_. Give the
rule for the expression of measure of difference.
Name five words that are especially common in this
construction. How are adverbs usually formed
from adjectives of the first and second declensions?
from adjectives of the third declension? Compare
the adverbs* care\, *libere\,* fortiter\,
*audacter\. What cases of adjectives are sometimes
used as adverbs? What are the adverbs from* facilis\?
*multus? primus? plurimus\?* bonus\? *magnus\?*parvus\? Compare *prope\,* saepe\, *magnopere\.
How are numerals classified? Give the first twenty
cardinals. Decline* unus, duo, tres, mille\.
How are the hundreds declined? What is meant
by the partitive genitive? Give the rule for the
partitive genitive. What sort of words are commonly
used with this construction? What construction
is used with *quidam\ and cardinal numbers excepting*mille\? Give the first twenty ordinals.
How are they declined? How are the distributives
declined? Give the rule for the expression of
duration of time and extent of space. What is
the difference between the ablative of time and the
accusative of time? What is a deponent verb?
Give the synopsis of one. What form always has
a passive meaning? Conjugate *amo\,* moneo\,
*rego\,* capio\, *audio\, in the active and
passive.*

**VIII.  REVIEW OF LESSONS LXI-LXIX**

*527.* Review the vocabularies of the first seventeen
lessons. See Secs. 502, 503, 506, 507.
 *528.* Review Questions. Name the tenses
of the subjunctive. What time is denoted by these
tenses? What are the mood signs of the present
subjunctive? How may the imperfect subjunctive
be formed? How do the perfect subjunctive and
the future perfect indicative active differ in form?
How is the pluperfect subjunctive active formed?
Inflect the subjunctive active and passive of *curo\,*deleo\, *vinco\,* rapio\, *munio\.
Inflect the subjunctive tenses of* sum\; of *possum\.*

***Page 216***

What are the tenses of the participles in the active?
What in the passive? Give the active and passive
participles of amo\, *moneo\,* rego\, *capio\,*audio\. Decline *regens\. What participles
do deponent verbs have? What is the difference
in meaning between the perfect participle of a deponent
verb and of one not deponent? Give the participles
of* vereor\. How should participles usually
be translated? Conjugate *volo\,* nolo\,
*malo\,* fio\.
  
What is the difference between the indicative and
subjunctive in their fundamental ideas? How is
purpose usually expressed in English? How is
it expressed in Latin? By what words is a Latin
purpose clause introduced? When should *quo\
be used? What is meant by sequence of tenses?
Name the primary tenses of the indicative and of the
subjunctive; the secondary tenses. What Latin
verbs are regularly followed by substantive clauses
of purpose? What construction follows* iubeo\?
What construction follows verbs of *fearing*?
How is consequence or result expressed in Latin?
How is a result clause introduced? What words
are often found in the principal clause foreshadowing
the coming of a result clause? How may negative
purpose be distinguished from negative result?
What is meant by the subjunctive of characteristic
or description? How are such clauses introduced?
Explain the ablative absolute. Why is the ablative
absolute of such frequent occurrence in Latin?
Explain the predicate accusative. After what verbs
are two accusatives commonly found? What do these
accusatives become when the verb is passive?
  
 [Illustration: IMPERATOR MILITES
HORTATUR]

**SPECIAL VOCABULARIES**

The words in heavy type are used in Caesar’s
“Gallic War.”
  
[Transcriber’s Note:
  
Each chapter’s Special Vocabulary was included
with its chapter text in addition to its original
location here. Details are given in the Transcriber’s
Note at the beginning of the text. In the printed
book, the vocabularies for Lesson IV and Lesson V
appeared on the same page; the Footnote about *conjunctions*
was shared by the two lists.]

**LESSON IV, Sec. 39**

NOUNS  
 dea, *goddess* (deity)  
 Dia:’na, *Diana  
fera\, \_a wild beast\_ (fierce)  
 La:to:’na, \_Latona\_*  
sagit’ta\, *arrow*  
 VERBS *est\, \_he (she, it) is\_; sunt, \_they
are\_*  
necat\, *he (she, it) kills, is
killing, does kill*  
 CONJUNCTION[A] *et\, \_and\_*  
 PRONOUNS *quis\, interrog. pronoun, nom. sing.,
\_who?\_*  
cuius\ (pronounced *c[oo]i’y[oo]s*,
two syllables), interrog.  
 pronoun, gen. sing., *whose?*  
 [Footnote A: A *conjunction*
is a word which connects words, parts  
 of sentences, or sentences.]

**Page 217**

**LESSON V, Sec. 47**  
 NOUNS *coro:’na\, \_wreath, garland,
crown\_  
 fa:’bula, \_story\_ (fable)*  
pecu:’nia\, *money* (pecuniary) *pugna\, \_battle\_ (pugnacious)*  
victo:’ria\, *victory*  
 VERBS *dat\, \_he (she, it) gives\_  
 na:rrat, \_he (she, it) tells\_ (narrate)*  
 CONJUNCTION[A] *quia\ or* quod\, *because  
cui\ (pronounced \_c[oo]i\_, one syllable),
interrog. pronoun, dat.  
 sing., \_to whom?\_ \_for whom?\_*  
 [Footnote A: A *conjunction*
is a word which connects words, parts  
 of sentences, or sentences.]

**LESSON VI, Sec. 56**

ADJECTIVES *bona\, \_good\_* gra:ta\, *pleasing* *magna\, \_large, great\_* mala\, *bad, wicked* *parva\, \_small, little\_* pulchra\, *beautiful, pretty* *so:la\, \_alone\_*  
 NOUNS  
 ancil’la, \_maidservant\_  
 Iu:lia, \_Julia\_
  
 ADVERBS[A] *cu:r\, \_why\_*  
no:n\, *not*  
 PRONOUNS *mea\, \_my\_; tua, \_thy, your\_ (possesives)*  
quid\, interrog. pronoun, nom. and
acc. sing., *what?*/-ne\, the question sign, an enclitic (Sec. 16) added to the first word, which, in a question, is usually the verb, as *amat\, \_he loves\_, but* amat’ne?\ *does he love?* est, *he is*; *estne?\ \_is he?\_ Of course* -ne\ is not used when the sentence contains quis, cu:r, or some other interrogative word.  
 [Footnote A: An *adverb*
is a word used to modify a verb, an  
 adjective, or another adverb;
as, She sings *sweetly*; she is *very* talented; she
began to sing *very early*.]
 **LESSON VII, Sec. 62**NOUNS *casa, -ae\, f., \_cottage\_ ce:na, -ae, f., \_dinner\_* galli:’na, -ae\, f., *hen, chicken* *i:n’sula, ae\, f., \_island\_ (pen-insula)*  
 ADVERBS  
 de-in’de\, *then, in the next
place  
ubi\, \_where\_*  
 PREPOSITION *ad\, \_to\_, with acc. to express motion
toward*  
 PRONOUN *quem\, interrog. pronoun, acc. sing.,
\_whom?\_*  
 VERBS  
 ha’bitat, *he (she, it) lives,
is living, does live* (inhabit) *laudat\, \_he (she, it) praises, is
praising, does praise\_ (laud)*  
parat\, *he (she, it) prepares,
is preparing, does prepare  
vocat\, \_he (she, it) calls, is calling,
does call; invites,  
 is inviting, does invite\_
(vocation)*

**LESSON VIII, Sec. 69**

NOUNS *Italia, -ae\, f., \_Italy\_  
 Sicilia, -ae, f., \_Sicily\_*  
tuba, -ae\, f., *trumpet* (tube) *via, -ae\, f., \_way, road, street\_
(viaduct)*ADJECTIVES *alta\, \_high, deep\_ (altitude)* cla:ra\, *clear, bright; famous* *la:ta\, \_wide\_ (latitude)* longa\, *long* (longitude) *nova\, \_new\_ (novelty)* **LESSON IX, Sec. 77**

**Page 218**

NOUNS  
 bellum, -i:\, n., *war* (re-bel) *co:nstantia, -ae\, f., \_firmness, constancy,
steadiness\_  
 dominus, -i:, m., \_master, lord\_
(dominate)*  
equus, -i:\, m., *horse* (equine) *fru:mentum, -i:\, n., \_grain\_*  
le:ga:tus, -i:\, m., *lieutenant,
ambassador* (legate) *Ma:rcus, -i:\, m., \_Marcus, Mark\_*  
mu:rus, -i:\, m., *wall* (mural) *oppida:nus, -i:\, m., \_townsman\_*  
oppidum, -i:\, n., *town  
pi:lum, -i:\, n., \_spear\_ (pile driver)*  
servus, -i:\, m., *slave, servant*  
 Sextus, -i:, m., *Sextus*  
 VERBS *cu:rat\, \_he (she, it) cares for\_,
with acc.*  
properat\, *he (she, it) hastens*

**LESSON X, Sec. 82**

NOUNS *ami:cus, -i:\, m., \_friend\_ (amicable)* Germa:nia, -ae\, f., *Germany* *patria, -ae\, f., \_fatherland\_* populus, -i:\, m., *people* *Rhe:nus, -i:\, m., \_the Rhine\_* vi:cus, -i:\, m., *village* **LESSON XI, Sec. 86**NOUNS *arma, armo:rum\, n., plur., \_arms\_, especially defensive weapons* fa:ma, -ae\, f., *rumor; reputation, fame* *galea, -ae\, f., \_helmet\_* praeda, -ae\, f., *booty, spoils* (predatory) *te:lum, -i:\, n., \_weapon of offense, spear\_*  
 ADJECTIVES  
 du:rus, -a, -um\, *hard, rough;
unfeeling, cruel; severe, toilsome*  
 (durable) *Ro:ma:nus, -a, -um\, \_Roman\_.
As a noun, Ro:ma:nus, -i:, m.,  
 \_a Roman\_*

**LESSON XII, Sec. 90**

NOUNS *fi:lius, fi:li:\, m., \_son\_ (filial)  
 fluvius, fluvi:, m., \_river\_ (fluent)*  
gladius, gladi:\, m., *sword*
(gladiator) *praesidium, praesi’di:\, n.,
\_garrison, guard, protection\_*  
proelium, proeli:\, n., *battle*  
 ADJECTIVES *fi:nitimus, -a, -um\, \_bordering upon,
neighboring, near to\_.   
 As a noun, fi:nitimi:, -o:rum,
m., plur., \_neighbors\_*  
Germa:nus, -a, -um\, *German*.
As a noun, Germa:nus, -i:, m., *a German  
multus, -a, -um\, \_much\_; plur., \_many\_*  
 ADVERB *saepe\, \_often\_* **LESSON XIII, Sec. 95**  
 NOUNS *ager, agri:\, m., \_field\_ (acre)*  
co:pia, -ae\, f., *plenty, abundance*
(copious); plur., *troops,  
 forces  
Corne:lius, Corne:’li:\, m.,
\_Cornelius\_*  
lo:ri:’ca, -ae\, f., *coat
of mail, corselet  
praemium, praemi:\, n., \_reward, prize\_
(premium)*  
puer, pueri:\, m., *boy* (puerile) *Ro:ma, -ae\, f., \_Rome\_*  
scu:tum, -i:\, n., *shield* (escutcheon) *vir, viri:\, m., \_man, hero\_ (virile)*

**Page 219**

ADJECTIVES *legio:na:rius, -a, -um\,[A] \_legionary,
belonging to the legion\_.   
 As a noun, legio:na:rii:,
-o:rum, m., plur., \_legionary soldiers\_*  
li:ber, li:bera, li:berum\, *free*
(liberty) As a noun. li:beri:,  
 -o:rum, m., plur., *children*
(lit. *the freeborn*) *pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum\, \_pretty,
beautiful\_*  
 PREPOSITION *apud\, \_among\_, with acc.*  
 CONJUNCTION *sed\, \_but\_*  
 [Footnote A: The genitive
singular masculine of adjectives in -ius  
 ends in -ii: and the
vocative in -ie; not in -i:, as in nouns.]

**LESSON XIV, Sec. 99**

NOUNS *auxilium, auxi’li:\, n., \_help,
aid\_ (auxiliary)*  
castrum, -i:\, n., *fort* (castle);
plur., *camp* (lit. *forts*) *cibus, -i:\, m., \_food\_*  
co:nsilium, co:nsi’li:\, n.,
*plan* (counsel) *di:ligentia, -ae\, f., \_diligence,
industry\_  
 magister, magistri:, m., \_master,
teacher\_[A]*ADJECTIVES *aeger, aegra, aegrum\, \_sick\_* cre:ber, cre:bra, cre:brum\, *frequent* *miser, misera, miserum\, \_wretched, unfortunate\_ (miser)*  
 [Footnote A: Observe
that dominus, as distinguished from  
 magister\, means *master*
in the sense of *owner*.]
 **LESSON XV, Sec. 107**NOUNS *carrus, -i:\, m., \_cart, wagon\_* inopia, -ae\, f., *want, lack;* the opposite of co:pia *studium, studi:\, n., \_zeal, eagerness\_ (study)*  
 ADJECTIVES  
 arma:tus, -a, -um\, *armed  
i:nfi:rmus, -a, -um\, \_week, feeble\_
(infirm)  
 vali’dus, -a, -um, \_strong,
sturdy\_*  
 VERB *ma:tu:rat\, \_he (she, it) hastens.\_
Cf. properat*  
 ADVERB *iam\, \_already, now\_*  
 /-que\, conjunction, *and*; an enclitic
(cf. Sec. 16) and always added  
 to the *second* of two words to be
connected, as arma te:la’que, *arms and weapons*.

**LESSON XVII, Sec. 117**

NOUNS *agri:  cultu:ra, -ae\, f., \_agriculture\_* Gallia, -ae\, f., *Gaul* *domicili:um, domi:ci’li:\, n., \_dwelling place\_ (domicile), \_abode\_* Gallus, -i\, m., *a Gaul* *lacrima, -ae\, f., \_tear\_* fe:mina, -ae\, f., *woman* (female) *numerus, -i:\, m., \_number\_ (numeral)*  
 ADJECTIVE  
 ma:tu:rus, -a, -um\, *ripe, mature*  
 ADVERB  
 quo:, *whither*  
 VERBS  
 arat, *he (she, it) plows*
(arable) *de:si:derat\, \_he (she, it) misses,
longs for\_ (desire), with acc.*  
 CONJUNCTION *an\, \_or\_, introducing the second half
of a double question, as  
 \_Is he a Roman or a Gaul\_, Estne Romanus
an Gallus?*

**Page 220**

**LESSON XVIII, Sec. 124**  
 NOUNS  
 lu:dus, -i:, m., *school  
socius, soci:\, m., \_companion, ally\_
(social)*  
 ADJECTIVES *i:ra:tus, -a, -um\, \_angry, furious\_
(irate)*  
laetus, -a, -um\, *happy, glad*
(social)
  
 ADVERBS  
 hodie:, *to-day  
ibi\, \_there, in that place\_  
 mox, \_presently, soon\_, of the immediate
future*  
nunc\, *now, the present moment  
nu:per\, \_lately, recently\_, of the
immediate past*

**LESSON XX, Sec. 136**

NOUNS *fo:rma, -ae\, f., \_form, beauty\_*  
regi:na, -ae\, f., *queen* (regal) *poena, -ae\, f., \_punishment, penalty\_  
 superbia, -ae, f., \_pride, haughtiness\_*  
potentia, -ae\, f., *power* (potent) *tri:sti:ti:a, -ae\, f., \_sadness, sorrow\_*  
 ADJECTIVES *septem\, indeclinable, \_seven\_*  
superbus, -a, -um\, *proud, haughty*
(superb)
  
 CONJUNCTIONS *no:n so:lum ... sed etiam\, \_not only
... but also\_* **LESSON XXI, Sec. 140**  
 NOUNS  
 sacrum, -i:, n., *sacrifice, offering,
rite  
verbum, -i:\, n., \_word\_ (verb)*  
 VERBS  
 sedeo:, -e:re, *sit* (sediment)  
 volo:, -a:re, *fly* (volatile)
ADJECTIVES *interfectus, -a, -um\, \_slain\_* molestus, -a, -um\, *troublesome, annoying* (molest) *perpetuus, -a, -um\, \_perpetual, continuous\_*  
 ego\, personal pronoun, *I* (egotism).
Always emphatic in the  
 nominative.

**LESSON XXII, Sec. 146**

NOUNS *discipli:na, -ae\, f., \_training, culture,
discipline\_*  
Ga:ius, Ga:i:\, m., *Caius*,
a Roman first name *o:rna:mentum, -i:\, n., \_ornament,
jewel\_  
 Tiberius, Tibe’ri:, m., \_Tiberius\_,
a Roman first name*  
 VERB *doceo:, -e:re\, \_teach\_ (doctrine)*  
 ADVERB *maxime:\, \_most of all, especially\_*  
 ADJECTIVE *anti:quus, -qua, -quum\, \_old, ancient\_
(antique)* **LESSON XXVII, Sec. 168**  
 NOUNS *a:la, -ae\, f., \_wing\_*  
deus, -i:\, m., *god* (deity)[A] *monstrum, -i:\, n., \_omen, prodigy;
monster\_  
 o:ra:culum, -i:, n., \_oracle\_*  
 VERB *va:sto:, -a:re\, \_lay waste, devastate\_*ADJECTIVES *commo:tus, -a, -um\, \_moved, excited\_* maximus, -a, -um\, *greatest* (maximum) *saevus, -a, -um\, \_fierce, savage\_*  
 ADVERBS  
 ita\, *thus, in this way, as follows  
tum\, \_then, at that time\_*  
 [Footnote A: For the
declension of deus, see Sec. 468]

**LESSON XXVIII, Sec. 171**

**Page 221**

VERBS *respondeo:, -e:re\, \_respond, reply\_*  
servo:, -a:re\, *save, preserve*  
 ADJECTIVE *ca:rus, -a, -um\, \_dear\_ (cherish)*  
 CONJUNCTION *autem\, \_but, moreover, now\_.
Usually stands second, never first*  
 NOUN *vi:ta, -ae\, f., \_life\_ (vital)* **LESSON XXIX, Sec. 176**  
 VERB *supero:, -a:re\, \_conquer, overcome\_
(insuperable)*  
 NOUNS *cu:ra, -ae\, f., \_care, trouble\_*  
locus, -i:\, m., *place, spot*
(location). Locus is neuter in the  
 plural and is declined loca,
-o:rum, *etc*. *peri:culum, -i:\, n., \_danger, peril\_*  
 ADVERBS *semper\, \_always\_*  
tamen\, *yet, nevertheless*  
 PREPOSITIONS *de:\, with abl., \_down from.; concerning\_*  
per\, with acc., *through*  
 CONJUNCTION *si\, \_if\_*

**LESSON XXX, Sec. 182**

VERBS *absum, abesse\, irreg., \_be away, be
absent, be distant\_, with  
 separative abl.*  
adpropinquo:, -a:re\, *draw near,
approach* (propinquity), with  
 dative[A] *contineo:, -e:re\, \_hold together,
hem in, keep\_ (contain)*  
disce:do:, -ere\, *depart, go away,
leave*, with separative abl. *egeo:, -e:re\, \_lack, need, be without\_,
with separative abl.*  
interficio:, -ere\, *kill  
prohibeo:, -e:re\, \_restrain, keep
from\_ (prohibit)*  
vulnero:, -a:re\, *wound* (vulnerable)
  
 NOUNS *pro:vincia, -ae\, f., \_province\_*  
vi:num, -i:\, n., *wine*  
 ADJECTIVE *de:fessus, -a, -um\, \_weary, worn out\_*  
 ADVERB *longe:\, \_far, by far, far away\_*[Footnote A:  This verb governs the dative because the idea of *nearness to* is stronger than that of *motion to*.  If the latter idea were the stronger, the word would be used with ad and the accusative.] **LESSON XXXI, Sec. 188**  
 NOUNS  
 aurum, -i:, n., *gold* (oriole) *mora, -ae\, f., \_delay\_*  
na:vigium, na:vi’gi:\, n., *boat,
ship  
ventus, -i:\, m., \_wind\_ (ventilate)*  
 VERB *na:vigo:, -a:re\, \_sail\_ (navigate)*  
 ADJECTIVES  
 attentus, -a, -um, *attentive,
careful  
dubius, -a, -um\, \_doubtful\_ (dubious)  
 perfidus, -a, -um, \_faithless, treacherous\_
(perfidy)*  
 ADVERB *antea:\, \_before, previously\_*  
 PREPOSITION *sine\, with abl., \_without\_*

**LESSON XXXII, Sec. 193**

NOUNS *animus, -i:\, m., \_mind, heart; spirit, feeling\_ (animate)* bracchium, bracchi:\, n., *forearm, arm* *porta, -ae\, f., \_gate\_ (portal)*  
 ADJECTIVES  
 adversus, -a, -um\, *opposite; adverse,
contrary  
ple:nus, -a, -um\, \_full\_ (plenty)*

**Page 222**

PREPOSITION *pro\, with abl., \_before; in behalf
of; instead of\_*  
 ADVERB *diu:\, \_for a long time, long\_* **LESSON XXXIV, Sec. 200**ADVERBS *celeriter\, \_quickly\_ (celerity)* de:nique\, *finally* *graviter\, \_heavily, severely\_ (gravity)* subito:\, *suddenly*  
 VERB *reporto:, -a:re\, -a:vi:, \_bring back,
restore; win, gain\_ (report)*

**LESSON XXXVI, Sec. 211**

*dexter, dextra, dextrum\, \_right\_ (dextrous)*  
sinister, sinistra, sinistrum\, *left  
fru:stra:\, adv., \_in vain\_ (frustrate)  
gero:, gerere, gessi:, gestus\, \_bear,
carry on; wear\_;*  
bellum gerere\, *to
wage war  
occupo:, occupa:re, occupa:vi:, occupa:tus\,
\_seize, take possession  
 of\_ (occupy)*  
postulo:, postula:re, postula:vi:,
postula:tus\, *demand*  
 (ex-postulate) *recu:so:, recu:sa:re, recu:sa:vi:,
recu:sa:tus\, \_refuse\_*  
sto:, sta:re, steti:, status\, *stand  
tempto:, tempta:re, tempta:vi:, tempta:tus\,
\_try, tempt, test;  
 attempt\_*  
teneo:, tene:re, tenui:, ——­\,
*keep, hold* (tenacious)
  
 The word ubi, which we have used so much
in the sense of *where* in  
 asking a question, has two other uses
equally important:
  
 1. ubi = *when*, as a relative conjunction
denoting time; as, *Ubi mo:nstrum audi:ve:runt,
fu:ge:runt\, \_when they heard the  
 monster, they fled\_*  
 2. ubi = *where*, as a relative conjunction
denoting place; as, *Video: oppidum ubi
Galba habitat\, \_I see the town where Galba  
 lives\_ubi\ is called a \_relative conjunction\_ because it is equivalent to a relative pronoun. \_When\_ in the first sentence is equivalent to \_at the time at which;\_ and in the second, \_where\_ is equivalent to \_the place in which.\_* **LESSON XXXVII, Sec. 217**  
 neque or nec\, conj., *neither*,
*nor*, *and ... not*; *neque ... neque\, \_neither
... nor\_*  
castellum, -i:\, n., *redoubt, fort*
(castle) *coti:die:\, adv., \_daily\_*  
 cesso:, cessa:re, cessa:vi:, cessa:tus,
*cease*, with the infin. *incipio:, incipere, ince:pi:, inceptus\,
\_begin\_ (incipient),  
 with the infin.*  
oppugno:, oppugna:re, oppugna:vi:,
oppugna:tus\, *storm, assail  
peto:, petere, petivi or petii:, peti:tus\,
\_aim at, assail, storm,  
 attack; seek, ask\_ (petition)*  
po:no:, po:nere, posui:, positus\,
*place, put* (position); *castra po:nere\, \_to pitch
camp\_*  
possum, posse, potui:, ——­\,
*be able, can* (potent), with the  
 infin. *veto:, veta:re, vetui:, vetitus\, \_forbid\_
(veto), vith the infin.;  
 opposite of iubeo:, \_command\_*  
vinco:, vincere, vi:ci:, victus\,
*conquer* (in-vincible) *vi:vo:, vi:vere, vi:xi:, ——­\,
\_live, be alive\_ (re-vive)*

**Page 223**

**LESSON XXXIX, Sec. 234**

*barbarus, -a, -um\, \_strange, foreign,
barbarous\_. As a noun,*  
barbari:, -o:rum\, m.,
plur., *savages, barbarians  
dux, ducis\, m., \_leader\_ (duke).
Cf. the verb du:co:*   
eques, equitis\, m., *horseman,
cavalryman* (equestrian)  
 iu:dex, iu:dicis, *m., judge  
lapis, lapidis\, m., \_stone\_ (lapidary)*  
mi:les, mi:litis\, m., *soldier*
(militia) *pedes, peditis\, m., \_foot soldier\_
(pedestrian)*  
pe:s, pedis\,[A] m., *foot* (pedal) *pri:nceps, pri:ncipis\, m., \_chief\_
(principal)*  
re:x, re:gis\, m., *king* (regal) *summus, -a, -um\, \_highest, greatest\_
(summit)*  
virtu:s, virtu:tis\, f., *manliness,
courage* (virtue)
  
 [Footnote A: Observe
that e is *long* in the nom. sing, and *short* in the other
cases.]
 **LESSON XL, Sec. 237** *Caesar, -aris\, m., \_Caesar\_*  
capti:vus, -i:\, m., *captive, prisoner  
co:nsul, -is\, m., \_consul\_*  
fra:ter, fra:tris\, m., *brother*
(fraternity) *homo:, hominis\, m., \_man, human being\_*  
impedi:mentum, -i:\, n., *hindrance*
(impediment); plur. *impedi:menta, -o:rum\,
\_baggage\_*  
impera:tor, impera:to:ris\, m., *commander
in chief, general*  
 (emperor) *legio:, legio:nis\, f., \_legion\_*  
ma:ter, ma:tris\, f., *mother*
(maternal) *o:rdo:, o:rdinis\, m., \_row, rank\_
(order)*  
pater, patris\, m., *father*
(paternal) *salu:s, salu:tis\, f., \_safety\_ (salutary)*  
soror, soro:ris\, f., *sister*
(sorority)

**LESSON XLI, Sec. 239**

*calamita:s, calamita:tis\, f., \_loss, disaster, defeat\_ (calamity)* caput, capitis\, n., *head* (capital) *flu:men, flu:minis\, n., \_river\_ (flume)* labor, labo:ris\, m., *labor, toil* *opus, operis\, n., \_work, task\_* o:ra:tor, o:ra:to:ris\, m., *orator* *ri:pa, -ae\, f., \_bank\_ (of a stream)* tempus, temporis\, n., *time* (temporal) *terror, terro:ris\, m., \_terror, fear\_* victor, victo:ris\, m., *victor  
accipio:, accipere, acce:pi:, acceptus\,
\_receive, accept\_*  
co:nfirmo:, co:nfi:rma:re, co:nfi:rma:vi:,
co:nfi:rma:tus\, *strengthen* = *establish,
encourage* (confirm)
 **LESSON XLIII, Sec. 245** *animal, anima:lis (-ium[A])\, n., \_animal\_*  
avis, avis (-ium)\, f., *bird*
(aviation) *caede:s, caedis (-ium)\, f., \_slaughter\_  
 calcar, calca:ris (-ium), n., \_spur\_*  
ci:vis, ci:vis (-ium)\, m. and f.,
*citizen* (civic) *clie:ns, clientis (-ium)\, m., \_retainer,
dependent\_ (client)*  
fi:nis, fi:nis (-ium)\, m., *end,*

***Page 224***

limit (final);  
 plur., *country, territory  
hostis, hostis (-ium)\, m. and f.,
\_enemy\_ in war (hostile).   
 Distinguish from inimi:cus,
which means a \_personal\_ enemy*  
ignis, ignis (-ium)\, m., *fire*
(ignite) *i:nsigne, i:nsignis (-ium)\, n. \_decoration,
badge\_ (ensign)*  
mare, maris (-ium[B])\, n., *sea*
(marine) *na:vis, na:vis (-ium)\, f., \_ship\_
(naval);*  
na:vis longa\, *man-of-war  
turris, turris (-ium)\, f., \_tower\_
(turret)*  
urbs, urbis (-ium)\, f., *city*
(suburb). An *urbs\ is larger than an*  
oppidum\.
  
 [Footnote A: The genitive
plural ending -ium is written to mark the  
 i-stems.]
  
 [Footnote B: The genitive
plural of mare is not in use.]

**LESSON XLIV, Sec. 249**

*arbor, arboris\, f., \_tree\_ (arbor)*  
collis, collis (-ium)\, m., *hill  
de:ns, dentis (-ium)\, m., \_tooth\_
(dentist)  
 fo:ns, fontis (-ium), m.. \_fountain,
spring; source\_*  
iter, itineris\, n., *march, journey,
route* (itinerary) *me:nsis, me:nsis (-ium)\, m., \_month\_*  
moenia, -ium\, n., plur., *walls,
fortifications*. Cf. mu:rus *mo:ns, montis (-ium)\, m., \_mountain\_;*  
summus mo:ns\, *top
of the mountain  
numquam\, adv., \_never\_*  
po:ns, pontis\, m., *bridge*
(pontoon) *sanguis, sanguinis\, m., blood (sanguinary)*  
summus, -a, -um\, *highest, greatest*
(summit) *tra:ns\, prep, with acc., \_across\_
(transatlantic)*  
vi:s (vi:s)\, gen. plur. *virium\,
f. \_strength, force, violence\_  
 (vim)* **LESSON XLV, Sec. 258***a:cer, a:cris, a:cre\, \_sharp, keen, eager\_ (acrid)* brevis, breve\, *short, brief* *difficilis, difficile\, \_difficult\_* facilis, facile\, *facile, easy* *fortis, forte\, \_brave\_ (fortitude)* gravis, grave\, *heavy, severe, serious* (grave) *omnis, omne\, \_every, all\_ (omnibus)* pa:r\, gen. *paris\, \_equal\_ (par)* pauci:, -ae, -a\, *few, only a few* (paucity) *secundus, -a, -um\, \_second; favorable\_, opposite of adversus* signum, -i:\, n., *signal, sign, standard* *ve:lo:x\, gen.* ve:lo:cis\, *swift* (velocity) *conloco:, conloca:re, conloca:vi:,
conloca:tus\, \_arrange, station,  
 place\_ (collocation)*  
de:mo:nstro:, de:mo:nstra:re, de:mo:nstra:vi:,
de:mo:nstra:tus\, *point out, explain*
(demonstrate) *mando:, manda:re, manda:vi:, manda:tus\,
\_commit, intrust\_ (mandate)*

**LESSON XLVI, Sec. 261**

**Page 225**

*adventus, -u:s\, m., \_approach, arrival\_
(advent)*  
ante\, prep, with acc., *before*
(ante-date) *cornu:, -u:s\, n., \_horn, wing\_ of
an army (cornucopia);*  
a: dextro: cornu:\,
*on the right wing*; *a: sinistro:
cornu:\, \_on the left wing\_*  
equita:tus, -u:s\, m., *cavalry  
exercitus, -u:s\, m., \_army\_*  
impetus, -u:s\, m., *attack*
(impetus); *impetum facere in\, with
acc., \_to make an attack on\_*  
lacus, -u:s\, dat. and abl. plur.
lacubus, m., *lake  
manus, -u:s\, f., \_hand; band, force\_
(manual)*  
portus, -u:s\, m., *harbor* (port) *post\, prep, with acc., \_behind, after\_
(post-mortem)  
cremo:, crema:re, crema:vi:, crema:tus\,
\_burn\_ (cremate)*  
exerceo:, exerce:re, exercui:, exercitus\,
*practice, drill, train*  
 (exercise)
 **LESSON XLVII, Sec. 270**  
 Athe:nae, -a:rum, f., plur., *Athens*  
 Corinthus, -i:, f., *Corinth  
domus, -u:s\, locative* domi:\,
f., *house, home* (dome).   
 Cf. domicilium *Gena:va, -ae\, f., \_Geneva\_  
 Pompe:ii, -o:rum, m., plur., \_Pompeii\_,
a city in Campania. See map*  
propter\, prep. with acc., *on account
of, because of*  
 ru:s, ru:ris, in the plur. only
nom. and acc. ru:ra, n., *country*  
 (rustic) *tergum, tergi:\, n., \_back\_; a:
tergo:, \_behind, in the rear\_*  
vulnus, vulneris\, n., *wound*
(vulnerable)
 *committo:, committere, commi:si:, commissus\,
\_intrust, commit;\_*  
proelium committere\,
*join battle  
convoco:, convoca:re, convoca:vi:,
convoca:tus\, \_call together,  
 summon\_ (convoke)*  
timeo:, time:re, timui:, ——­\,
*fear; be afraid* (timid) *verto:, vertere, verti:, versus\, \_turn,
change\_ (convert);*  
terga vertere\, *to
turn the backs*, hence *to retreat*

**LESSON XLVIII, Sec. 276**

*acie:s, -e:i:\, f., \_line of battle\_*  
aesta:s, aesta:tis\, f., *summer  
annus, -i:\, m., \_year\_ (annual)*  
die:s, die:i:\, m., *day* (diary) *fide:s, fidei:\, no plur., f., \_faith,
trust; promise, word;  
 protection\_; in fidem veni:re,
\_to come under the protection\_*  
fluctus, -u:s\, m. *wave, billow*
(fluctuate) *hiems, hiemis\, f., \_winter\_*  
ho:ra, -ae\, f., *hour  
lu:x, lu:cis\, f., \_light\_ (lucid);
pri:ma lux, \_daybreak\_*  
meri:die:s\, acc. -em, abl. -e:, no
plur., m., *midday*  
 (meridian) *nox, noctis (-ium)\, f., \_night\_ (nocturnal)*  
pri:mus, -a, -um\, *first* (prime) *re:s, rei:\, f., \_thing, matter\_ (real);*  
re:s gestae\, *deeds,
exploits* (lit. *things performed*); *re:s adversae\, \_adversity\_;*  
re:s secundae\, *prosperity  
spe:s, spei:\, f., \_hope\_*

**Page 226**

**LESSON XLIX, Sec. 283** *ami:citia, -ae\, f., \_friendship\_ (amicable)*  
itaque\, conj., *and so, therefore,
accordingly  
littera, -ae\, f., \_a letter\_ of the
alphabet;  
 plur., \_a letter, an epistle\_*  
metus, metu:s\, m., *fear  
nihil\, indeclinable, n., \_nothing\_
(nihilist)*  
nu:ntius, nu:nti:\, m., *messenger*.
Cf. nu:ntio:  *pa:x, pa:cis\, f., \_peace\_ (pacify)*  
re:gnum, -i:\, n., *reign, sovereignty,
kingdom  
supplicum, suppli’ci:\, n., \_punishment\_;*  
supplicum su:mere de:\,
with abl., *inflict punishment on*; *supplicum dare\, \_suffer
punishment\_. Cf. poena  
placeo:, place:re, placui:, placitus\,
\_be pleasing to, please\_,  
 with dative. Cf.
Sec. 154*  
su:mo:, su:mere, su:mpsi:, su:mptus\,
*take up, assume  
sustineo:, sustine:re, sustinui:, sustentus\,
\_sustain\_*

**LESSON L, Sec. 288**

*corpus, corporis\, n., \_body\_ (corporal)* de:nsus, -a, -um\, *dense* *i:dem, e’adem, idem\, demonstrative pronoun, \_the same\_ (identity)* ipse, ipsa, ipsum\, intensive pronoun, *self; even, very* *mi:rus, -a, -um\, \_wonderful, marvelous\_ (miracle)* o:lim\, adv., *formerly, once upon a time* *pars, partis (-ium)\, f., \_part, region, direction\_* quoque\, adv., *also*.  Stands *after* the word which it emphasizes *so:l, so:lis\, m., \_sun\_ (solar)* ve:rus, -a, -um\, *true, real* (verity) *de:beo:, de:be:re, de:bui:, de:bitus\,
\_owe, ought\_ (debt)*  
e:ripio:, e:ripere, e:ripui:, e:reptus\,
*snatch from* **LESSON LI, Sec. 294** *hic, haec, hoc\, demonstrative pronoun,
\_this\_ (of mine);  
 \_he, she, it\_*  
ille, illa, illud\, demonstrative
pronoun *that* (yonder); *he, she, it  
invi:sus, -a, -um\, \_hateful, detested\_,
with dative Cf. Sec. 143*  
iste, ista, istud\, demonstrative
pronoun, *that* (of yours); *he, she, it  
li:berta:s, -a:tis\, f., \_liberty\_*  
modus, -i:\, m., *measure; manner,
way, mode  
no:men, no:minis\, n., \_name\_ (nominate)*  
oculus, -i:\, m., *eye* (oculist) *pri:stinus, -a, -um\, \_former, old-time\_
(pristine)*  
pu:blicus, -a, -um\, *public, belonging
to the state;  
re:s pu:blica, rei:
pu:blicae\, f., \_the commonwealth, the state,  
 the republic\_*  
vesti:gium, vesti:’gi:\, n.,
*footprint, track; trace, vestige  
vo:x, vo:cis\, f., \_voice\_*

**LESSON LII, Sec. 298**

*incolumis, -e\, \_unharmed\_*  
ne: ... quidem\, adv., *not
even*. The emphatic word stands between *ne:\ and quidem*  
nisi\, conj., *unless, if ... not  
paene\, adv., \_almost\_ (pen-insula)*  
satis\, adv., *enough, sufficiently*
(satisfaction) *tantus, -a, -um\, \_so great\_*  
ve:ro:\, adv., *truly, indeed, in
fact*. As a conj. *but, however*,  
 usually stands second, never
first.

**Page 227**

*de:cido:, de:cidere, de:cidi:, ——­\, \_fall down\_ (deciduous)* de:silio:, de:sili:re, de:silui:, de:sultus\, *leap down, dismount* *maneo:, mane:re, ma:nsi:, ma:nsu:rus\, \_remain\_* tra:du:co:, tra:du:cere, tra:du:xi:, tra:ductus\, *lead across* **LESSON LIII, Sec. 306** *aquila, -ae\, f., \_eagle\_ (aquiline)*  
auda:x\, gen. *auda:cis\, adj.,
\_bold, audacious\_*  
celer, celeris, celere\, *swift,
quick* (celerity). Cf. ve:lo:x *explo:rato:r, -o:ris\, m., \_scout,
spy\_ (explorer)*  
inge:ns\, gen. *ingentis\, adj.,
\_huge, vast\_*  
medius, -a, -um\, *middle, middle
part of* (medium) *me:ns, mentis (-ium)\, f., \_mind\_ (mental).
Cf. animus*  
opportu:nus, -a, -um\, *opportune  
quam\, adv., \_than\_. With the
superlative quam gives the force of  
 \_as possible\_, as quam auda:cissimi:
viri:, \_men as bold as  
 possible\_*  
recens\, gen. *recentis\, adj.,
\_recent\_*  
tam\, adv., *so*. Always
with an adjective or adverb, while ita is  
 generally used with a verb
 *quaero:, quaerere, quaesi:vi:, quaesi:tus\,
\_ask, inquire, seek\_  
 (question). Cf. peto:*

**LESSON LIV, Sec. 310**

*alacer, alacris, alacre\, \_eager, spirited,
excited\_ (alacrity)*  
celerita:s, -a:tis\, f., *speed*
(celerity) *cla:mor, cla:mo:ris\, m., \_shout, clamor\_*  
le:nis, le:ne\, *mild, gentle*
(lenient) *mulier, muli’eris\, f., \_woman\_*  
multitu:do:, multitu:dinis\, f., *multitude  
ne:mo:\, dat.* ne:mini:\, acc. *ne:minem\
(gen.* nu:lli:us\,  
 abl. *nu:llo:\, from* nu:llus\),
no plur., m. and f., *no one  
no:bilis, no:bile\, \_well known, noble\_*  
noctu:\, adv. (an old abl.), *by
night* (nocturnal) *statim\, adv., \_immediately, at once\_*  
subito:\, adv., *suddenly  
tardus, -a, -um\, \_slow\_ (tardy)*  
cupio:, cupere, cupi:vi:, cupi:tus\,
*desire, wish* (cupidity)
 **LESSON LV, Sec. 314** *aedificium, aedifi’ci:\, n.,
\_building, dwelling\_ (edifice)*  
imperium, impe’ri:\, n., *command,
chief power; empire  
mors, mortis (-ium)\, f., \_death\_ (mortal)*  
reliquus, -a, -um\, *remaining,
rest of*. As a noun, m. and n. plur., *the rest* (relic) *scelus, sceleris\, n., \_crime\_*  
servitu:s, -u:tis\, f., *slavery*
(servitude) *valle:s, vallis (-ium)\, f., \_valley\_  
abdo:, abdere, abdidi:, abditus\, \_hide\_*  
contendo:, contendere, contendi:,
contentus\, *strain, struggle;  
 hasten* (contend) *occi:do:, occi:dere, occi:di:, occi:sus\,
\_cut down, kill\_.   
 Cf.* neco:\, *interficio:\*  
perterreo:, perterre:re, perterrui:,

**Page 228**

perterritus\, *terrify,  
 frighten  
recipio:, recipere, rece:pi:, receptus\,
\_receive, recover\_;*  
se: recipere\, *betake
one’s self, withdraw, retreat  
tra:do:, tra:dere, tra:didi:, tra:ditus\,
\_give over, surrender,  
 deliver\_ (traitor)*

**LESSON LVI, Sec. 318**

*aditus, -u:s\, m., \_approach, access;
entrance\_*  
ci:vita:s, ci:vita:tis\, f., *citizenship;
body of citizens, state*  
 (city) *inter\, prep, with acc., \_between,
among\_ (interstate commerce)*  
nam\, conj., *for  
obses, obsidis\, m. and f., \_hostage\_*  
paulo:\, adv. (abl. n. of *paulus\),
\_by a little, somewhat\_  
incolo:, incolere, incolui:, ——­\,
transitive, \_inhabit\_;  
 intransitive, \_dwell\_.
Cf. habito:, vi:vo:*   
relinquo:, relinquere, reli:qui:,
relictus\, *leave, abandon*  
 (relinquish) *statuo:, statuere, statui:, statu:tus\,
\_fix, decide\_ (statute),  
 usually with infin.* **LESSON LVII, Sec. 326** *aequus, -a, -um\, \_even, level; equal\_*  
cohors, cohortis (-ium)\, f., *cohort*,
a tenth part of a legion,  
 about 360 men *curro:, currere, cucurri:, cursus\,
\_run\_ (course)*  
difficulta:s, -a:tis\, f., *difficulty  
fossa, -ae\, f., \_ditch\_ (fosse)*  
ge:ns, gentis (-ium)\, f., *race,
tribe, nation* (Gentile) *nego:tium, nego:ti:\, n., \_business,
affair, matter\_ (negotiate)*  
regio:, -o:nis\, f., *region, district  
ru:mor, ru:mo:ris\, m., \_rumor, report\_.
Cf. fa:ma*  
simul atque\, conj., *as soon as  
suscipio:, suscipere, susce:pi:, susceptus\,
\_undertake\_*  
traho:, trahere, tra:xi:, tra:ctus\,
*drag, draw* (ex-tract) *valeo:, vale:re, valui:, valitu:rus\,
\_be strong\_; plu:rimum vale:re,  
 \_to be most powerful, have
great influence\_ (value). Cf. validus*

**LESSON LVIII, Sec. 332**

*commea:tus, -u:s\, m.. \_provisions\_* la:titu:do:, -inis\, f., *width* (latitude) *longitu:do:, -inis\, f., \_length\_ (longitude)* magnitu:do:, -inis\, f., *size, magnitude* *merca:tor, merca:to:ris\, m., \_trader, merchant\_* mu:ni:tio:, -o:nis\, f., *fortification* (munition) *spatium, spati:\, n., \_room, space, distance; time\_*  
 cogno:sco:, cogno:scere, cogno:vi:,
cognitus\, *learn*;  
 in the perfect tenses, *know*
(re-cognize) *co:go:, co:gere, coe:gi:, coa:ctus\,
\_collect; compel\_ (cogent)*  
de:fendo:, de:fendere, de:fendi:,
de:fe:nsus\, *defend  
incendo:, incendere, incendi:, ince:nsus\,
\_set fire to, burn\_  
 (incendiary). Cf. cremo:*   
obtineo:, obtine:re, obtinui:, obtentus\,
*possess, occupy, hold*  
 (obtain) *pervenio:, perveni:re, perve:ni:, perventus\,
\_come through, arrive\_*

**Page 229**

**LESSON LIX, Sec. 337** *agmen, agminis\, n., \_line of march,
column\_;*  
pri:mum agmen\, *the
van*; *novissimum agmen\, \_the
rear\_*  
atque\, *ac\, conj., \_and\_; atque
is used before vowels and  
 consonants, ac before consonants
only. Cf. et and -que*  
concilium, conci’li:\, n., *council,
assembly  
Helve:tii:, -o:rum\, m., \_the Helvetii\_,
a Gallic tribe*  
passus, passu:s\, m., *a pace*,
five Roman feet; *mi:lle passuum\, \_a thousand
(of) paces\_, a Roman mile*  
qua: de: causa:\, *for
this reason, for what reason  
va:llum, -i:\, n., \_earth-works, rampart\_  
cado:, cadere, cecidi:, ca:su:rus\,
\_fall\_ (decadence)*  
de:do:, de:dere, de:didi:, de:ditus\,
*surrender, give up*;  
 with a reflexive pronoun,
*surrender one’s self, submit*, with the  
 dative of the indirect object *premo:, premere, pressi:, pressus\,
\_press hard, harass\_*  
vexo:, vexa:re, vexa:vi:, vexa:tus\,
*annoy, ravage* (vex)

**LESSON LX, Sec. 341**

*aut\, conj., \_or\_; aut ... aut, \_either
... or\_*  
causa:\, abl. of causa, *for the
sake of, because of*. Always stands *after* the gen. which
modifies it *fere:\, adv., \_nearly, almost\_*  
opi:nio:, -o:nis\, f., *opinion,
supposition, expectation  
re:s fru:menta:ria, rei: fru:menta:riae\,
f. (lit. \_the grain  
 affair\_), \_grain supply\_*  
timor, -o:ris\, m., *fear*.
Cf. timeo:  *undique\, adv., \_from all sides\_  
co:nor, co:na:ri:, co:na:tus sum\,
\_attempt, try\_*  
e:gredior, e:gredi:, e:gressus sum\,
*move out, disembark*; *pro:gredior\, \_move forward,
advance\_ (egress, progress)*  
moror, mora:ri:, mora:tus sum\, *delay  
orior, oriri:, ortus sum\, \_arise,
spring; begin; be born\_  
 (\_from\_) (origin)*  
profici:scor, profici:sci:, profectus
sum\, *set out  
revertor, reverti:, reversus sum\,
\_return\_ (revert). The forms of  
 this verb are usually active,
and not deponent, in the perfect  
 system. Perf. act., reverti:*   
sequor, sequi:, secu:tus sum\, *follow*
(sequence). Note the  
 following compounds of *sequor\
and the force of the different  
 prefixes:*   
co:nsequor\ (*follow
with*), *overtake*; *i:nsequor\ (\_follow against\_),
\_pursue\_;*  
subsequor\ (*follow
under*), *follow close after* **LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY**  
Translations inclosed within parentheses are not to
be used as such; they are inserted to show etymological
meanings.
  
 [Transcriber’s Note:   
 The “parentheses” were originally
printed as [square brackets]. They  
 are rendered here as [[double brackets]].]

**Page 230**

**A**

a: or ab, prep. with abl. *from, by, off*.   
 Translated *on* in a: dextro:
cornu:, *on the right wing*;  
 a: fronte, *on the front* or
*in front*;  
 a: dextra:, *on the right*;  
 a: latere, *on the side*; *etc*.  
ab-do:, -ere, -didi:, -ditus, *hide, conceal*  
ab-du:co:, -ere, -du:xi:, -ductus, *lead off, lead
away*  
abs-ci:do:, -ere, -ci:di:,-ci:sus [[ab(s), *off*,
+ caedo:, *cut*]], *cut off*  
ab-sum, -esse, a:fui:, a:futu:rus, *be away, be
absent, be distant,  
 be off*; with a: or
ab and abl., Sec. 501.32  
ac, conj., see atque  
ac-cipio:, -ere, -ce:pi:, -ceptus [[ad, *to*,
+ capio:, *take*]], *receive, accept*  
a:cer, a:cris, a:cre, adj. *sharp*; figuratively,
*keen, active, eager*  
 (Sec. 471)  
acerbus, -a, -um, adj. *bitter, sour*  
acie:s, -e:i:, f. [[a:cer, *sharp*]], *edge;
line of battle*  
a:criter, adv. [[a:cer, *sharp*]], compared a:crius,
a:cerrime:, *sharply, fiercely*  
ad, prep. with acc. *to, towards, near*.   
 With the gerund or gerundive, *to, for*  
ad-aequo:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *make equal, make
level with*  
ad-du:co:, -ere, -du:xi:, -ductus, *lead to; move,
induce*  
ad-eo:, -i:re, -ii:, -itus, *go to, approach, draw
near, visit*, with  
 acc. (Sec. 413)  
ad-fero:, ad-ferre, at-tuli:, ad-la:tus, *bring,
convey; report,  
 announce; render, give*
(Sec. 426)  
ad-ficio:, -ere, -fe:ci:, -fectus [[ad, *to*,
+ facio:, *do*]], *affect, visit*  
adfli:cta:tus, -a, -um, adj. [[part. of adfli:cto:,
*shatter*]], *shattered*  
ad-fli:go:, -ere, -fli:xi:, -fli:ctus, *dash upon,
strike upon; harass,  
 distress*  
ad-hibeo:, -e:re, -ui:, -itus [[ad, *to*, + habeo:,
*hold*]], *apply,  
 employ, use*  
ad-hu:c, adv. *hitherto, as yet, thus far*  
aditus, -u:s, m. [[adeo:, *approach*]], *approach,
access; entrance*.   
 Cf. adventus  
ad-ligo:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *bind to, fasten*  
ad-loquor, -loqui:, -locu:tus sum, dep. verb [[ad,
*to*, + loquor, *speak*]], *speak to,
address*, with acc.  
ad-ministro:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *manage, direct*  
admi:ra:tio:, -o:nis, f. [[admi:ror, *wonder at*]],
*admiration,  
 astonishment*  
ad-moveo:, -e:re, -mo:vi:, -mo:tus, *move to; apply,
employ*  
ad-propinquo:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *come near,
approach*, with dat.  
ad-sum, -esse, -fui:, -futu:res, *be present; assist*;
with dat., Sec.  
 426  
adule:sce:ns, -entis, m. and f. [[part. of adole:sco:,
*grow*]], *a  
 youth, young man, young person*  
adventus, -u:s, m. [[ad, *to*, + venio:, *come*]],
*approach,*

***Page 231***

arrival (Sec. 466)  
adversus, -a, -um, adj. [[part. of adverto:, *turn
to*]], *turned  
 towards, facing; contrary,
adverse*.  
 re:s adversae, *adversity*  
aedificium, aedifi’ci:, n. [[aedifico:, *build*]],
*building, edifice*  
aedifico:, -a:re, -a:vi, -a:tus [[aede:s, *house*,
+ facio:, *make*]], *build*  
aeger, aegra, aegrum, adj. *sick, feeble*  
aequa:lis, -e, adj. *equal, like*. As a
noun, aequa:lis, -is, m. or f. *one of the same age*  
aequus, -a, -um, adj. *even, level; equal*  
Aeso:pus, -i:, m. *Aesop*, a writer of fables  
aesta:s, -a:tis, f. *summer*,  
 inita: aesta:te, *at the beginning
of summer*  
aeta:s, -a:tis, f. *age*  
Aethiopia, -ae, f. *Ethiopia*, a country in Africa  
A:frica, -ae, f. *Africa*  
A:frica:nus, -a, -um, adj. *of Africa*.
A name given to Scipio for his  
 victories in Africa  
ager, agri:, m. *field, farm, land* (Sec. 462.c)  
agger, -eris, m. *mound*  
agmen, -inis, n. [[ago:, *drive*]], *an army*
on the march, *column*.  
 pri:mum agmen, *the van*  
ago:, -ere, e:gi:, a:ctus, *drive, lead; do, perform*.  
 vi:tam agere, *pass life*  
agricola, -ae, m. [[ager, *field*, + colo:, *cultivate*]],
*farmer*  
agri: cultu:ra, -ae, f. *agriculture*  
a:la, -ae, f. *wing*  
alacer, -cris, -cre, adj. *active, eager*.
Cf. a:cer  
alacrita:s, -a:tis, f. [[alacer, *active*]],
*eagerness, alacrity*  
alacriter, adv. [[alacer, *active*]], comp alacrius,
alacerrime:, *actively, eagerly*  
albus, -a, -um, adj., *white*  
alce:s, -is, f. *elk*  
Alcme:na, -ae, f. *Alcme’na*, the mother
of Hercules  
aliquis (-qui:), -qua, -quid (-quod), indef. pron.
*some one, some*  
 (Sec. 487)  
alius, -a, -ud (gen. -i:us, dat. -i:), adj. *another,
other*.  
 alius ... alius, *one ... another*.  
 alii: ... alii:, *some ... others*
(Sec. 110)  
Alpe:s, -ium, f. plur. *the Alps*  
alter, -era, -erum (gen. -i:us, dat. -i:), adj. *the
one, the other*  
 (of two).  
 alter ... alter, *the one ... the other*
(Sec. 110)  
altitu:do:, -inis, f. [[altus, *high*]], *height*  
altus, -a, -um, adj. *high, tall, deep*  
Ama:zone:s, -um, f. plur. *Amazons*, a fabled
tribe of warlike women  
ambo:, -ae, -o:, adj. (decl. like duo), *both*  
ami:ce:, adv. [[ami:cus, *friendly*]], superl.
ami:cissime:, *in a  
 friendly manner*  
amicio:, -i:re, ——­, -ictus [[am-,
*about*, + iacio:, *throw*]], *throw around, wrap about,
clothe*  
ami:citia, -ae, f. [[ami:cus, *friend*]], *friendship*  
ami:cus, -a, -um, adj. [[amo:, *love*]], *friendly*.
As a noun,  
 ami:cus, -i:, m. *friend*

**Page 232**

a:-mitto:, -ere, -mi:si:, -missus, *send away; lose*  
amo:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *love, like, be fond
of* (Sec. 488)  
amphithea:trum, -i:, n. *amphitheater*  
amplus, -a, -um, adj. *large, ample; honorable,
noble*  
an, conj. *or*, introducing the second part of
a double question  
ancilla, -ae, f. *maidservant*  
ancora, -ae, f. *anchor*  
Andromeda, -ae, f. *Androm’eda*, daughter
of Cepheus and wife of  
 Perseus  
angulus, -i:, m. *angle, corner*  
anim-adverto:, -ere, -ti:, -sus [[animus, *mind*,
+ adverto:, *turn  
 to*]], *turn the mind
to, notice*  
animal, -a:lis, n. [[anima, *breath*]], *animal*
(Sec. 465.b)  
animo:sus, -a, -um, adj. *spirited*  
animus, -i:, m. [[anima, *breath*]], *mind,
heart; spirit, courage,  
 feeling;* in this sense
often plural  
annus, -i, m. *year*  
ante, prep, with acc. *before*  
antea:, adv. [[ante]], *before, formerly*  
anti:quus, -a, -um, adj. [[ante, *before*]],
*former, ancient, old*  
aper, apri:, m. *wild boar*  
Apollo:, -inis, m. *Apollo*, son of Jupiter and
Latona, brother of  
 Diana  
ap-pa:reo:, -e:re, -ui:, ——­ [[ad
+ pa:reo:, *appear*]], *appear*  
ap-pello:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *call by name,
name*. Cf. no:mino:,  
 voco:   
Appius, -a, -um, adj. *Appian*  
ap-plico:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *apply, direct,
turn*  
apud, prep, with acc. *among; at, at the house of*  
aqua, -ae, f. *water*  
aquila, -ae, f. *eagle*  
a:ra, -ae, f. *altar*  
arbitror, -a:ri:, -a:tus sum, *think, suppose*
(Sec. 420.c). Cf.  
 exi:stimo:, puto:   
arbor, -oris, f. *tree* (Sec. 247.1.a)  
Arcadia, -ae, f. *Arcadia*, a district in southern
Greece  
a:rdeo:, -e:re, a:rsi:, a:rsu:rus, *be on fire,
blaze, burn*  
arduus, -a, -um, adj. *steep*  
Ari:cia, -ae, f. *Aricia*, a town on the Appian
Way, near Rome  
arie:s, -etis, m. *battering-ram* (p. 221)  
arma, -o:rum, n. plur. *arms, weapons*.
Cf. te:lum  
arma:tus, -a, -um, adj. [[armo:, *arm*]], *armed,
equipped*  
aro:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *plow, till*  
ars, artis, f. *art, skill*  
articulus, -i:, m. *joint*  
ascri:bo:, -ere, -scri:psi:, -scri:ptus [[ad, *in
addition*, + scri:bo:, *write*]], *enroll,
enlist*  
A:sia, -ae, f. *Asia*, *i.e*. Asia Minor  
at, conj. *but*. Cf. autem, sed  
Athe:nae, -a:rum, f. plur. *Athens*  
Atla:s, -antis, m. *Atlas*, a Titan who was said
to hold up the sky  
at-que, ac, conj. *and, and also, and what is more*.
atque may be  
 used before either vowels
or consonants, ac before consonants only  
attentus, -a, -um, adj. [[part. of attendo:, *direct*
(the mind) *toward*]], *attentive,
intent on, careful*

**Page 233**

at-tonitus, -a, -um, adj. *thunderstruck, astounded*  
auda:cia, -ae, f. [[auda:x, *bold*]], *boldness,
audacity*  
auda:cter, adv. [[auda:x, *bold*]], compared
auda:cius, auda:cissime:, *boldly*  
auda:x, -a:cis, adj. *bold, daring*  
audeo:, -e:re, ausus sum, *dare*  
audio:, -i:re, -i:vi: or -i:i:, -i:tus, *hear,
listen to* (Secs. 420.d,  
 491)  
Auge:a:s, -ae, m. *Auge’as*, a king whose
stables Hercules cleaned  
aura, -ae, f. *air, breeze*  
aura:tus, -a, -um, adj. [[aurum, *gold*]], *adorned
with gold*  
aureus, -a, -um, adj.[[aurum, *gold*]], *golden*  
aurum, -i:, n. *gold*  
aut, conj. *or*.  
 aut ... aut, *either ... or*  
autem, conj., usually second, never first, in the
clause, *but,  
 moreover, however, now*.
Cf. at, sed  
auxilium, auxi’li:, n. *help, aid, assistance;*
plur. *auxiliaries*  
a:-verto:, -ere, -ti:, -sus, *turn away, turn aside*  
avis, -is, f. *bird* (Sec. 243.1)

**B**

ballista, -ae, f. *ballista*, an engine for hurling
missiles (p. 220) balteus, -i:, m. *belt, sword
belt* barbarus, -i:, m. *barbarian, savage*
bellum, -i:, n. *war*.  
 bellum i:nferre, with dat. *make war
upon*  
bene, adv. [[for bone:, from bonus]], compared melius,
optime:, *well*  
benigne:, adv. [[benignus, *kind*]], compared
benignius,  
 benignissime:, *kindly*  
benignus, -a, -um, adj. *good-natured, kind*,
often used with dat. bi:ni:, -ae, -a, distributive
numeral adj. *two each, two at a time*  
 (Sec. 334)  
bis, adv. *twice* bonus, -a, -um, adj. compared
melior, optimus, *good, kind*  
 (Sec. 469.a)  
bo:s, bovis (gen. plur. boum or bovum, dat. and abl.
plur. bo:bus  
 or bu:bus), m. and f. *ox,
cow*  
bracchium, bracchi:, n. *arm* brevis, -e, adj.
*short* Brundisium, -i:, n. *Brundisium*,
a seaport in southern Italy. See map bulla, -ae,
f. *bulla*, a locket made of small concave plates
of gold  
 fastened by a spring (p. 212)

**C**

C. abbreviation for Ga:ius, Eng. *Caius* cado:,
-ere, ce’cidi:, ca:su:rus, *fall* caede:s,
-is, f. [[caedo:, *cut*]], (*a cutting down*),
*slaughter,  
 carnage* (Sec. 465.a)  
caelum, -i:, n. *sky, heavens* Caesar, -aris,
m. *Caesar*, the famous general, statesman, and
writer calamita:s, -a:tis, f. *loss, calamity, defeat,
disaster* calcar, -a:ris, n. *spur* (Sec.
465.b) Campa:nia, -ae, f. *Campania*., a district
of central Italy. See map Campa:nus, -a, -um,
adj. *of Campania* campus, -i:, m. *plain,
field*, esp. the *Campus Martius*, along the  
 Tiber just outside the walls
of Rome  
canis, -is, m. and f. *dog* cano:, -ere, ce’cini:,

**Page 234**

——­, *sing* canto:, -a:re, -a:vi,
-a:tus [[cano:, *sing*]], *sing* Cape:nus,
-a, -um, adj. *of Capena*, esp. the *Porta Cape’na*,
the gate  
 at Rome leading to the Appian
Way  
capio:, -ere, ce:pi:, captus, *take, seize, capture*
(Sec. 492) Capito:li:nus, -a, -um, adj. *belonging
to the Capitol, Capitoline* Capito:lium, Capito:’li:,
n. [[caput, *head*]], *the Capitol*, the
hill  
 at Rome on which stood the
temple of Jupiter Capitolinus and the  
 citadel  
capsa, -ae, f. *box* for books capti:vus, -i:,
m. [[capio:, *take*]], *captive* Capua,
-ae, f. *Capua*, a large city of Campania.
See map caput, -itis, n. *head* (Sec. 464.2.b)
carcer, -eris, m. *prison, jail* carrus, -i:,
m. *cart, wagon* ca:rus, -a, -um, adj. *dear;
precious* casa, -ae, f. *hut, cottage* castellum,
-i:, n. [[dim. of castrum, *fort*]], *redoubt,
fort* castrum, -i:, n. *fort*. Usually
in the plural, castra, -o:rum,  
 a military *camp*.  
 castra po:nere, *to pitch camp*  
ca:sus, -us, m. [[cado:, *fall*]], *chance;
misfortune, loss* catapulta, -ae, f. *catapult*,
an engine for hurling stones cate:na, -ae, f. *chain*
caupo:na, -ae, f. *inn* causa, -ae, f. *cause,
reason*, qua: de: causa:, *for this
reason* ce:do:, -ere, cessi:, cessu:rus, *give
way, retire* celer, -eris, -ere, adj. *swift,
fleet* celerita:s, -a:tis, f. [[celer, *swift*]],
*swiftness, speed* celeriter, adv. [[celer, *swift*]],
compared celerius, celerrime:, *swiftly*  
ce:na, -ae, f. *dinner* centum, indecl. numeral
adj. *hundred* centurio:, -o:nis, m. *centurion,
captain* Ce:pheus (dissyl.), -ei: (acc.
Ce:phea), m. *Cepheus*, a king of  
 Ethiopia and father of Andromeda  
Cerberus, -i:, m. *Cerberus*, the fabled three-headed
dog that guarded  
 the entrance to Hades  
certa:men, -inis, n. [[certo:, *struggle*]],
*struggle, contest,  
 rivalry*  
certe:, adv. [[certus, *sure*]], compared certius,
certissime:, *surely, certainly*  
certus, -a, -um, adj. *fixed, certain, sure*.  
 aliquem certio:rem facere (*to make
some one more certain*), *to inform some one*  
cervus, -i:, m. *stag, deer* cesso:, -a:re,
-a:vi:, -a:tus, *delay, cease* ciba:ria, -o:rum,
n. plur. *food, provisions* cibus, -i:, m. *food,
victuals* Cimbri:, -o:rum, m. plur. *the Cimbri*
Cimbricus, -a, -um, adj. *Cimbrian* ci:nctus,
-a, -um, adj. [[part. of cingo:, *surround*]],
*girt,  
 surrounded*  
cingo:, -ere, ci:nxi:, ci:nctus, *gird, surround*
circiter, adv. *about* circum, prep, with acc.
*around* circum’-do:, -dare, -dedi:, -datus,
*place around, surround, inclose* circum’-eo:,
-i:re, -ii:, -itus, *go around* circum-sisto:,
-ere, circum’steti:, ——­, *stand*

***Page 235***

around, surround circum-venio:, -i:re, -ve:ni:,
-ventus (*come around*), *surround* citerior,
-ius, adj. in comp., superl. citimus, *hither, nearer*  
 (Sec. 475)  
ci:vi:lis, -e, adj. [[ci:vis]], *civil* ci:vis,
-is, m. and f. *citizen* (Sec. 243.1) ci:vita:s,
-a:tis, f. [[ci:vis, *citizen*]], (*body of
citizens*), *state; citizenship*  
cla:mor, -o:ris, m. *shout, cry* cla:rus, -a,
-um, adj. *clear; famous, renowned; bright, shining*
classis, -is, f. *fleet* claudo:, -ere, -si:,
-sus, *shut, close* clavus, -i:, m. *stripe*
clie:ns, -entis, m. *dependent, retainer, client*
(Sec. 465.a) Cocles, -itis, m. (*blind in one eye*),
*Cocles*, the surname of  
 Horatius  
co-gno:sco:, -ere, -gno:vi:, -gni:tus, *learn, know,
understand*. Cf.  
 scio: (Sec. 420.b)  
co:go:, -ere, coe:gi:, coa:ctus [[co(m)-, *together*,
+ ago:, *drive*]],  
 (*drive together*), *collect;
compel, drive*  
cohors, cohortis, f. *cohort*, the tenth part
of a legion, about 360  
 men  
collis, -is, m. *hill*, in summo: colle,
*on top of the hill*  
 (Sec. 247.2.a)  
collum, -i:, n. *neck* colo:, -ere, colui:,
cultus, *cultivate, till; honor, worship; devote  
 one’s self to*  
columna, -ae, f. *column, pillar* com- (col-,
con-, cor-, co-), a prefix, *together, with*,
or  
 intensifying the meaning of
the root word  
coma, -ae, f. *hair* comes, -itis, m. and f.
[[com-, *together*, + eo:, *go*]], *companion, comrade*  
comita:tus, -u:s, m. [[comitor, *accompany*]],
*escort, company* comitor, -a:ri:, -a:tus sum,
dep. verb [[comes, *companion*]], *accompany*  
com-mea:tus, -u:s, m. *supplies* com-minus,
adv. [[com-, *together*, + manus, *hand*]],
*hand to  
 hand*  
com-mitto:, -ere, -mi:si:, -missus, *join together;
commit, intrust*.  
 proelium committere, *join battle*.  
 se: committere with dat, *trust
one’s self to*  
commode:, adv. [[commodus, *fit*]], compared
commodius,  
 commodissime:, *conveniently,
fitly*  
commodus, -a, -um, adj. *suitable, fit* com-mo:tus,
-a, -um, adj. [[part. of commoveo:, *move*]],
*aroused,  
 moved*  
com-paro:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[com-, intensive,
+ paro:, *prepare*]], *prepare;
provide, get*  
com-pleo:, -e:re, -ple:vi:, -ple:tus [[com-, intensive,
+ pleo:, *fill*]], *fill up*  
complexus, -u:s, m. *embrace* com-primo:, -ere,
-pressi:, -pressus [[com-, *together*, + premo:, *press*]], *press together,
grasp, seize*  
con-cido:, -ere, -cidi:, ——­ [[com-,
intensive, + cado:, *fall*]], *fall down*  
concilium, conci’li:, n. *meeting, council*
con-clu:do:, -ere, -clu:si:, -clu:sus [[com-, intensive,

**Page 236**

+ claudo:, *close*]], *shut up,
close; end, finish*  
con-curro:, -ere, -curri:, -cursus [[com-, *together*,
+ curro:, *run*]], *run together;
rally, gather*  
condicio:, -o:nis, f. [[com-, *together*, + dico:,
*talk*]], *agreement, condition, terms*  
con-do:no:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *pardon*
con-du:co:, -ere, -du:xi:, -ductus, *hire* co:n-fero:,
-ferre, -tuli:, -la:tus, *bring together*.  
 se: co:nferre, *betake one’s
self*  
co:n-fertus, -a, -um, adj. *crowded, thick*
co:nfestim, adv. *immediately* co:n-ficio:, -ere,
-fe:ci:, -fectus [[com-, *completely*, + facio:, *do*]], *make, complete,
accomplish, finish*  
co:n-fi:rmo:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *make firm,
establish, strengthen,  
 affirm, assert*  
co:n-fluo:, -ere, -flu:xi:, ——­,
*flow together* co:n-fugio:, -ere, -fu:gi:, -fugitu:rus,
*flee for refuge, flee* con-icio:, -ere, -ie:ci:,
-iectus [[com-, intensive, + iacio:, *throw*]], *hurl*  
con-iungo:, -ere, -iu:nxi:, -iu:nctus [[com-, *together*,
+ iungo:, *join*]], *join together,
unite*  
con-iu:ro:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[com-, *together*,
+ iu:ro:, *swear*]], *unite by
oath, conspire*  
con-loco:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[com-, *together*,
+ loco:, *place*]], *arrange, place, station*  
conloquium, conlo’qui:, n. [[com-, *together*,
+ loquor, *speak*]], *conversation, conference*  
co:nor, -a:ri:, -a:tus sum, dep. verb, *endeavor,
attempt, try* co:n-scendo:, -ere, -scendi:, -sce:nsus
[[com-, intensive, + scando:, *climb*]], *climb up,
ascend*.  
 na:vem co:nscendere, *embark, go on
board*  
co:n-scri:bo:, -ere, -scri:psi:, -scri:ptus [[com-,
*together*, +  
 scri:bo:, *write*]],
(*write together*), *enroll, enlist*  
co:n-secro:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[com-, intensive,
+ sacro:, *consecrate*]], *consecrate,
devote*  
co:n-sequor, -sequi:, -secu:tus sum, dep. verb [[com-,
intensive, +  
 sequor, *follow*]], *pursue;
overtake; win*  
co:n-servo:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[com-, intensive,
+ servo:, *save*]], *preserve,
save*  
co:nsilium, co:nsi’li:, n. *plan, purpose,
design; wisdom* co:n-sisto:, -ere, -stiti:, -stitus
[[com-, intensive, + sisto:, *cause to stand*]], *stand
firmly, halt, take one’s stand*  
co:n-spicio:, -ere, -spe:xi:, -spectus [[com-, intensive,
+ spicio:, *spy*]], *look at attentively,
perceive, see*  
co:nstantia, -ae, f. *firmness, steadiness, perseverance*
co:n-stituo:, -ere, -ui:, -u:tus [[com-, intensive,
+ statuo:, *set*]], *establish,
determine, resolve*  
co:n-sto:, -a:re, -stiti:, -sta:tu:rus [[com-, *together*,
+ sto:, *stand*]], *agree;*

***Page 237***

be certain; consist of  
co:nsul, -ulis, m. *consul* (Sec. 464.2.a) co:n-su:mo:,
-ere, -su:mpsi:, -su:mptus [[com-, intensive, + sumo:, *take*]], *consume,
use up*  
con-tendo:, -ere, -di:, -tus, *strain; hasten; fight,
contend,  
 struggle*  
con-tineo:, -e:re, -ui:, -tentus [[com-, *together*,
+ teneo:, *hold*]], *hold together,
hem in, contain; restrain*  
contra:, prep, with acc. *against, contrary to*
con-traho:, -ere, -tra:xi:, -tra:ctus [[com-, *together*,
+ traho:, *draw*]], *draw together;*
of sails, *shorten, furl*  
contro:versia, -ae, f. *dispute, quarrel* con-venio:,
-i:re, -ve:ni:, -ventus [[com-, *together*, +
venio:, *come*]], *come together,
meet, assemble*  
con-verto:, -ere, -verti:, -versus [[com-, intensive,
+ verto:, *turn*]], *turn*  
con-voco:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[com-, *together*,
+ voco:, *call*]], *call together*  
co-orior, -i:ri:, -ortus sum, dep. verb [[com-, intensive,
+ orior, *rise*]], *rise, break
forth*  
co:pia, -ae, f. [[com-, intensive, + ops, *wealth*]],
*abundance,  
 wealth, plenty*. Plur.
co:piae, -a:rum, *troops*  
coquo:, -ere, coxi:, coctus, *cook* Corinthus,
-i:, f. *Corinth*, the famous city on the Isthmus
of Corinth Corne:lia, -ae, f. *Cornelia*, daughter
of Scipio and mother of the  
 Gracchi  
Corne:lius, Corne:’li:, m. *Cornelius*,
a Roman name cornu:, -u:s, n. *horn; wing* of
an army, a: dextro: cornu:, *on the  
 right wing* (Sec. 466)  
coro:na, -ae, f. *garland, wreath; crown* coro:na:tus,
-a, -um, adj. *crowned* corpus, -oris, n. *body*
cor-ripio:, -ere, -ui:, -reptus [[com-, intensive,
+ rapio:, *seize*]], *seize,
grasp*  
coti:dia:nus, -a, -um, adj. *daily* coti:die:,
adv. *daily* cre:ber, -bra, -brum, adj. *thick,
crowded, numerous, frequent* cre:do:, -ere, -di:di:,
-ditus, *trust, believe*, with dat.   
 (Sec. 501.14)  
cremo:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *burn* creo:,
-a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *make; elect, appoint*
Creo:n, -ontis, m. *Creon*, a king of Corinth
cre:sco:, -ere, cre:vi:, cre:tus, *rise, grow, increase*
Cre:ta, -ae, f. *Crete*, a large island in the
Mediterranean Cre:taeus, -a, -um, adj. *Cretan*
cru:s, cru:ris, n. *leg* cru:stulum, -i:, n.
*pastry, cake* cubi:le, -is, n. *bed* cultu:ra,
-ae, f. *culture, cultivation* cum, conj. with
the indic. or subjv. *when; since; although*  
 (Sec. 501.46)  
cum, prep, with abl. *with* (Sec. 209) cupide:,
adv. [[cupidus, *desirous*]], compared cupidius,  
 cupidissime:, *eagerly*  
cupidita:s, -a:tis, f. [[cupidus, *desirous*]],
*desire, longing* cupio:, -ere, -i:vi: or
-ii:, -i:tus, *desire, wish*. Cf. volo:
cu:r, adv. *why, wherefore* cu:ra, -ae, f. *care,
pains; anxiety* cu:ria, -ae, f. *senate house*
cu:ro:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[cu:ra, *care*]],
*care for, attend to,  
 look after*  
curro:, -ere, cucurri:, cursus, *run* currus,
-u:s, m. *chariot* cursus, -u:s, m. *course*
custo:dio:, -i:re, -i:vi:, -i:tus [[custo:s, *guard*]],
*guard, watch*

**Page 238**

**D**

Daedalus, -i:, m. *Daed’alus*, the supposed
inventor of the first flying  
 machine  
Da:vus, -i:, m. *Davus*, name of a slave  
de:, prep, with abl. *down from, from; concerning,
about, for*  
 (Sec. 209).  
 qua: de: causa:, *for this
reason, wherefore*  
dea, -ae, f. *goddess* (Sec. 461.a)  
de:beo:, -e:re, -ui:, -itus [[de:, *from*, +
habeo:, *hold*]], *owe,  
 ought, should*  
decem, indecl. numeral adj. *ten*  
de:-cerno:, -ere, -cre:vi:, -cre:tus [[de:, *from*,
+ cerno:, *separate*]], *decide,
decree*  
de:-cido:, -ere, -cidi:, ——­ [[de:,
*down*, + cado:, *fall*]], *fall  
 down*  
decimus, -a, -um, numeral adj. *tenth*  
de:cli:vis, -e, adj. *sloping downward*  
de:-do:, -ere, -didi:, -ditus, *give up, surrender*,
se: de:dere, *surrender one’s self*  
de:-du:co:, -ere, -du:xi:, -ductus [[de:, *down*,
+ du:co:, *lead*]], *lead down, escort*  
de:-fendo:, -ere, -di:, -fe:nsus, *ward off, repel,
defend*  
de:-fero:, -ferre, -tuli:, -la:tus [[de:, *down*,
+ fero:, *bring*]], *bring down; report, announce*
(Sec. 426)  
de:-fessus, -a, -um, adj. *tired out, weary*  
de:-ficio:, -ere, -fe:ci:, -fectus [[de:, *from*,
+ facio:, *make*]], *fail, be wanting; revolt
from*  
de:-fi:go:, -ere, -fi:xi:, -fi:xus [[de:, *down*,
+ fi:go:, *fasten*]], *fasten, fix*  
de:-icio:, -ere, -ie:ci:, -iectus [[de:, *down*,
+ iacio:, *hurl*]], *hurl down; bring down,
kill*  
de-inde, adv. *(from thence), then, in the next
place*  
de:lecto:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *delight*  
de:leo:, -e:re, -e:vi:, -e:tus, *blot out, destroy*  
de:li:bero:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *weigh, deliberate,
ponder*  
de:-ligo:, -ere, -le:gi:, -le:ctus [[de:, *from*,
+ lego:, *gather*]], *choose, select*  
Delphicus, -a, -um, adj. *Delphic*  
de:missus, -a, -um [[part. of de:mitto:, *send down*]],
*downcast,  
 humble*  
de:-mo:nstro:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[de:, *out*,
+ mo:nstro:, *point*]], *point out,
show*  
de:mum, adv. *at last, not till then*.  
 tum de:mum, *then at last*  
de:nique, adv. *at last, finally*. Cf. postre:mo:   
de:ns, dentis, m. *tooth* (Sec. 247.2.a)  
de:nsus, -a, -um, adj. *dense, thick*  
de:-pendeo:, -e:re, ——­, ——­
[[de:, *down*, + pendeo:, *hang*]], *hang  
 from, hang down*  
de:-plo:ro:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[de:, intensive,
+ plo:ro:, *wail*]], *bewail,
deplore*  
de:-po:no:, -ere, -posui:, -positus [[de:, *down*,
+ po:no:, *put*]], *put down*  
de:-scendo:, -ere, -di:, -sce:nsus [[de:, *down*,

**Page 239**

+ scando:, *climb*]], *climb down, descend*  
de:-scri:bo:, -ere, -scri:psi:, -scri:ptus [[de:,
*down*, + scri:bo:, *write*]], *write down*  
de:si:dero:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *long for*  
de:-silio:, -i:re, -ui:, -sultus [[de:, *down*,
+ salio:, *leap*]], *leap down*  
de:-spe:ro:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[de:, *away
from*, + spe:ro:, *hope*]], *despair*  
de:-spicio:, -ere, -spe:xi, -spectus [[de:, *down*]],
*look down upon,  
 despise*  
de:-sum, -esse, -fui:, -futu:rus [[de:, *away from*,
+ sum, *be*]], *be wanting, lack*, with
dat. (Sec. 426)  
deus, -i:, m. *god* (Sec. 468)  
de:-volvo:, -ere, -volvi:, -volu:tus [[de:, *down*,
+ volvo:, *roll*]], *roll down*  
de:-voro:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[de:, *down*,
+ voro:, *swallow*]], *devour*  
dexter, -tra, -trum (-tera, -terum), adj. *to the
right, right*.  
 a: dextro: cornu:, *on the
right wing*  
Dia:na, -ae, f. *Diana*, goddess of the moon
and twin sister of Apollo  
di:co:, -ere, di:xi:, dictus (imv. di:c), *say,
speak, tell*. Usually  
 introduces indirect discourse
(Sec. 420.a)  
dicta:tor, -o:ris, m. [[dicto:, *dictate*]],
*dictator*, a chief  
 magistrate with unlimited
power  
die:s, -e:i or die:, m., sometimes f. in sing., *day*
(Sec. 467)  
dif-fero:, -ferre, distuli:, di:la:tus [[dis-, *apart*,
+ fero:, *carry*]], *carry apart;
differ*.  
 differre inter se:, *differ from each
other*  
dif-ficilis, -e, adj. [[dis-, *not*, + facilis,
*easy*]], *hard,  
 difficult* (Sec. 307)  
difficulta:s, -a:tis, f. [[difficilis, *hard*]],
*difficulty*  
di:ligenter, adv. [[di:lige:ns, *careful*]],
compared di:ligentius,  
 di:ligentissime:, *industriously,
diligently*  
di:ligentia, -ae, f. [[di:lige:ns, *careful*]],
*industry, diligence*  
di:-mico:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *fight, struggle*  
di:-mitto:, -ere, -mi:si:, -missus [[di:-, *off*,
+ mitto:, *send*]], *send away, dismiss, disband*.  
 di:mittere animum in, *direct one’s
mind to, apply one’s self to*  
Diome:de:s, -is, m. *Di:-o-me:’de:s*, a
name  
dis-, di:-, a prefix expressing separation, *off,
apart, in different  
 directions*. Often
negatives the meaning  
dis-ce:do:, -ere, -cessi:, -cessus [[dis-, *apart*,
+ ce:do:, *go*]], *depart from, leave, withdraw,
go away*  
dis-cerno:, -ere, -cre:vi:, -cre:tus [[dis-, *apart*,
+ cerno:, *sift*]], *separate;
distinguish*  
discipli:na, -ae, f. *instruction, training, discipline*  
discipulus, -i:, m. [[disco:, *learn*]], *pupil,
disciple*  
disco:, -ere, didici:, ——­, *learn*  
dis-cutio:, -ere, -cussi:, -cussus [[dis-, *apart*,

**Page 240**

+ quatio:, *shake*]], *shatter,
dash to pieces*  
dis-po:no:, -ere, -posui:, -positus [[dis-, *apart*,
+ po:no:, *put*]], *put here and there, arrange,
station*  
dis-similis, -e, adj. [[dis-, *apart*, + similis,
*like*]], *unlike, dissimilar*
(Sec. 307)  
dis-tribuo:, -ere, -ui:, -u:tus, *divide, distribute*  
diu:, adv., compared diu:tius, diu:tissime:, *for
a long time, long*  
 (Sec. 477)  
do:, dare, dedi:, datus, *give*.  
 in fugam dare, *put to flight*.  
 alicui nego:tium dare, *employ some
one*  
doceo:, -e:re, -ui:, -tus, *teach, show*  
doctri:na, -ae, f. [[doctor, *teacher*]], *teaching,
learning,  
 wisdom*  
dolor, -o:ris, m. *pain, sorrow*  
domesticus, -a, -um, adj. [[domus, *house*]],
*of the house,  
 domestic*  
domicilium, domici’li:, n. *dwelling; house,
abode*. Cf. domus  
domina, -ae, f. *mistress* (of the house), *lady*
(Sec. 461)  
dominus, -i:, m. *master* (of the house), *owner,
ruler* (Sec. 462)  
domus, -u:s, f. *house, home*.  
 domi:, locative, *at home* (Sec.
468)  
dormio:, -i:re, -i:vi:, -i:tus, *sleep*  
draco:, -o:nis, m. *serpent, dragon*  
dubito:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *hesitate*  
dubius, -a, -um, adj. [[duo, *two*]], (*moving
two ways*), *doubtful, dubious*  
du-centi:, -ae, -a, numeral adj. *two hundred*  
du:co:, -ere, du:xi:, ductus (imv. du:c), *lead,
conduct*  
dum, conj. *while, as long as*  
duo, duae, duo, numeral adj. *two* (Sec. 479)  
duo-decim, indecl. numeral adj. *twelve*  
du:rus, -a, -um, adj. *hard, tough; harsh, pitiless,
bitter*  
dux, ducis, m. and f. [[cf. du:co:, *lead*]],
*leader, commander*

**E**

e: or ex, prep, with abl. *out of, from, off,
of* (Sec. 209) eburneus, -a, -um, adj. *of ivory*
ecce, adv. *see! behold! there! here!* e:-du:co:,
-ere, -du:xi:, -ductus [[e:, *out*, + du:co:,
*lead*]], *lead  
 out, draw out*  
ef-ficio:, -ere, -fe:ci:, -fectus [[ex, *thoroughly*,
+ facio:, *do*]], *work out;
make, cause*  
ef-fugio:, -ere, -fu:gi:, -fugitu:rus [[ex, *from*,
+ fugio:, *flee*]], *escape*  
egeo:, -e:re, -ui:, ——­, *be in
need of, lack*, with abl. (Sec. 501.32) ego, pers.
pron. *I*; plur. no:s, *we* (Sec. 480) e:-gredior,
-i:, e:gressus sum, dep. verb [[e:, *out of*,
+ gradior, *go*]], *go out, go
forth*.  
 e: na:vi: e:gredi:, *disembark*  
e:-icio:, -ere, -ie:ci:, -iectus [[e:, *forth*,
+ iacio:, *hurl*]], *hurl forth, expel*  
elementum, -i:, n., in plur. *first principles,
rudiments* elephantus, -i:, m. *elephant*
E:lis, Elidis, f. *E’lis*, a district of

**Page 241**

southern Greece emo:, -ere, e:mi:, e:mptus, *buy,
purchase* enim, conj., never standing first, *for,
in fact, indeed.* Cf. nam Ennius, Enni:, m. *Ennius*,
the father of Roman poetry, born 239 B.C. eo:, i:re,
ii: (i:vi:), itu:rus, *go* (Sec. 499) eo:,
adv. *to that place, thither* E:pi:rus, -i:,
f. *Epi’rus*, a district in the north of
Greece eques, -itis, m. [[equus, *horse*]], *horseman,
cavalryman* equita:tus, -u:s, m. [[equito:, *ride*]],
*cavalry* equus, -i:, m. *horse* e:-rigo:,
-ere, -re:xi:, -re:ctus [[e:, *out*, + rego:,
*make  
 straight*]], *raise up*  
e:-ripio:, -ere, -ui:, -reptus [[e:, *out of*,
+ rapio:, *seize*]], *seize, rescue*  
e:-rumpo:, -ere, -ru:pi:, -ruptus [[e:, *forth*,
+ rumpo:, *break*]], *burst forth*  
e:ruptio:, -o:nis, f. *sally* Erymanthius, -a,
-um, adj. *Erymanthian, of Erymanthus*, a district
in  
 southern Greece  
et, conj. *and, also*. et ... et, *both ...
and*. Cf. atque, ac,  
 -que  
etiam, adv. (rarely conj.) [[et, *also*, + iam,
*now*]], *yet,  
 still; also, besides*.
Cf. quoque.  
 no:n so:lum ... sed etiam, *not only
... but also*  
Etru:sci:, -o:rum, m. *the Etruscans*, the people
of Etruria. See map of  
 Italy  
Euro:pa, -ae, f. *Europe* Eurystheus, -i:, m.
*Eurys’theus*, a king of Tiryns, a city
in southern  
 Greece  
e:-va:do:, -ere, -va:si:, -va:sus [[e:, *out*,
+ va:do:, *go*]], *go  
 forth, escape*  
ex, see e: exanima:tus, -a, -um [[part. of exanimo:,
*put out of breath*  
 (anima)]], adj. *out of
breath, tired; lifeless*  
ex-cipio:, -ere, -ce:pi:, -ceptus [[ex, *out*,
+ capio:, *take*]], *welcome, receive*  
exemplum, -i:, n. *example, model* ex-eo:,-i:re,-ii:,-itu:rus
[[ex, *out*, + eo:, *go*]], *go out, go  
 forth* (Sec. 413)  
ex-erceo:, -e:re, -ui:, -itus [[ex, *out*, +
arceo:, *shut*]], *(shut  
 out), employ, train, exercise,
use*  
exercitus, -us, m. [[exerceo:, *train*]], *army*
ex-i:stimo:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[ex, *out*,
+ aestimo:, *reckon*]], *estimate; think, judge*
(Sec. 420.c). Cf. arbitror, puto:   
ex-orior, -i:ri:, -ortus sum, dep. verb [[ex, *forth*,
+ orior, *rise*]], *come forth,
rise*  
expedi:tus, -a, -um, adj. *without baggage*
ex-pello:, -ere, -puli:, -pulsus [[ex, *out*,
+ pello:, *drive*]], *drive out*  
ex-pio:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[ex, intensive, +
pi:o, *atone for*]], *make amends for, atone
for*  
explo:ra:tor, -o:ris, m. [[explo:ro:, *investigate*]],
*spy, scout* explo:ro:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus,
*examine, explore* ex-pugno:, -a:re, -a:vi:,
-a:tus [[ex, *out*, + pugno:, *fight*]],
*take*

***Page 242***

by storm, capture  
exsilium, exsi’li:, n. [[exsul, *exile*]],
*banishment, exile* ex-specto:, -a:re, -a:vi:,
-a:tus [[ex, *out*, + specto:, *look*]], *expect, wait*  
ex-struo:, -ere, -stru:xi:, -stru:ctus [[ex, *out*,
+ struo:, *build*]], *build up,
erect*  
exterus, -a, -um, adj., compared exterior, extre:mus
or extimus, *outside, outer* (Sec.
312)  
extra:, prep, with acc. *beyond, outside of*
ex-traho:, -ere, -tra:xi:, -tra:ctus [[ex, *out*,
+ traho:, *drag*]], *drag out, pull forth*  
extre:mus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of exterus, *utmost,
farthest*  
 (Sec. 312)

**F**

fa:bula, -ae, f. *story, tale, fable*  
facile, adv. [[facilis, *easy*]], compared facilius,
facillime:, *easily* (Sec. 322)  
facilis, -e, adj. [[cf. facio:, *make*]], *easy,
without difficulty*  
 (Sec. 307)  
facio:, -ere, fe:ci:, factus (imv. fac), *make,
do; cause, bring  
 about*.  
 impetum facere in, *make an attack upon*.  
 proelium facere, *fight a battle*.  
 iter facere, *make a march* or *journey*.  
 aliquem certio:rem facere, *inform some
one*.  
 facere verba pro:, *speak in behalf
of*.   
 Passive fi:o:, fieri:, factus
sum, *be done, happen*.  
 certior fieri:,
*be informed*  
fallo:, -ere, fefelli:, falsus, *trip, betray, deceive*  
fa:ma, -ae, f. *report, rumor; renown, fame, reputation*  
fame:s, -is (abl. fame:), f. *hunger*  
familia, -ae, f. *servants, slaves; household, family*  
fasce:s, -ium (plur. of fascis), f. *fasces*
(p. 225)  
fasti:gium, fasti:’gi:, n. *top; slope, descent*  
fa:tum, -i:, n. *fate, destiny*  
fauce:s, -ium, f. plur. *jaws, throat*  
faveo:, -e:re, fa:vi:, fautu:rus, *be favorable
to, favor*, with dat.   
 (Sec. 501.14)  
fe:li:x, -i:cis, adj. *happy, lucky*  
fe:mina, -ae, f. woman. Cf. mulier  
fera, -ae, f. [[ferus, *wild*]], *wild beast*  
fera:x, -a:cis, adj. *fertile*  
fere:, adv. *about, nearly, almost*  
fero:, ferre, tuli:, la:tus, *bear*.  
 graviter or moleste: ferre, *be
annoyed* (Sec. 498)  
ferreus, -a, -um, adj. [[ferrum, *iron*]], *made
of iron*  
fide:lis, -e, adj. [[fide:s, *trust*]], *faithful,
true*  
fide:s, fidei: *or* fide:, *trust, faith;
promise, word; protection*.  
 in fidem veni:re, *come under the protection*.  
 in fide: mane:re, *remain loyal*  
fi:lia, -ae (dat. and abl. plur. fi:lia:bus), f. *daughter*
(Sec. 461.a)  
fi:lius, fi:li: (voc. sing, fi:li:), m. *son*  
fi:nis, -is, m. *boundary, limit, end;* in plur.
*territory, country*  
 (Sec. 243.1)  
fi:nitimus, -a, -um, adj. [[fi:nis, *boundary*]],

**Page 243**

*adjoining,  
 neighboring*.   
 Plur. fi:nitimi:, -o:rum, m. *neighbors*  
fi:o:, fieri:, factus sum, used as passive of facio:.
See facio: (Sec.  
 500)  
flamma, -ae, f. *fire, flame*  
flo:s, flo:ris, m. *flower*  
fluctus, -u:s, m. [[of. fluo:, *flow*]], *flood,
wave, billow*  
flu:men, -inis, n. [[cf. fluo:, *flow*]], *river*
(Sec. 464.2.b)  
fluo:, -ere, flu:xi:, fluxus, *flow*  
fluvius, fluvi:, m. [[cf. fluo:, *flow*]], *river*  
fodio:, -ere, fo:di:, fossus, *dig*  
fo:ns, fontis, m. *fountain* (Sec. 247.2.a)  
fo:rma, -ae, f. *form, shape, appearance; beauty*  
Formiae, -a:rum, f. *Formiae*, a town of Latium
on the Appian Way.   
 See map  
forte, adv. [[abl. of fors, *chance*]], *by
chance*  
fortis, -e, adj. *strong; fearless, brave*  
fortiter, adv. [[fortis, *strong*]], compared
fortius, fortissime:, *strongly; bravely*  
fortu:na, -ae, f. [[fors, *chance*]], *chance,
fate, fortune*  
forum, -i:, n. *market place*, esp. the Forum
Ro:ma:num, where the life  
 of Rome centered  
Forum Appi:, *Forum of Appius*, a town in Latium
on the Appian Way  
fossa, -ae, f. [[cf. fodio:, *dig*]], *ditch*  
fragor, -o:ris, m. [[cf. frango:, *break*]],
*crash, noise*  
frango:, -ere, fre:gi:, fra:ctus, *break*  
fra:ter, -tris, m. *brother*  
fremitus, -u:s, m. *loud noise*  
frequento:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *attend*  
fre:tus, -a, -um, adj. *supported, trusting*.
Usually with abl. of  
 means  
fro:ns, frontis, f. *front*, a: fronte,
*in front*  
fru:ctus, -u:s, m. *fruit*  
fru:menta:rius, -a, -um, adj. *pertaining to grain*.  
 re:s fru:menta:ria, *grain supplies*  
fru:mentum, -i:, n. *grain*  
fru:stra:, adv. *in vain, vainly*  
fuga, -ae, f. [[cf. fugio:, *flee*]], *flight*.  
 in fugam dare, *put to flight*  
fugio:, -ere, fu:gi:, fugitu:rus, *flee, run; avoid,
shun*  
fu:mo:, -are, ------, ------, *smoke*  
fu:nis, -is, m. *rope*  
furor, -o:ris, m. [[furo:, *rage*]], *madness*.  
 in furo:rem inci:dere, *go mad*

**G**

Ga:ius, Ga:i:, m. *Gaius*, a Roman name, abbreviated
C., English form *Caius*  
Galba, -ae, m. *Galba*, a Roman name  
galea, -ae, f. *helmet*  
Gallia, -ae, f. *Gaul*, the country comprising
what is now Holland,  
 Belgium, Switzerland, and
France  
Gallicus, -a, -um, adj. *Gallic*  
galli:na, -ae, f. *hen, chicken*  
Gallus, -i:, m. *a Gaul*  
gaudium, gaudi:, n. *joy*  
Gena:va, -ae, f. *Geneva*, a city in Switzerland  
ge:ns, gentis, f. [[cf. gigno:, *beget*]], *race,
family; people,  
 nation, tribe*

**Page 244**

genus, -eris, n. *kind, variety*  
Germa:nia, -ae, f. *Germany*  
Germa:nus, -i:, m. *a German*  
gero:, -ere, gessi:, gestus, *carry, wear; wage*.  
 bellum gerere, *wage war*.  
 re:s gestae, *exploits*.  
 bene gerere, *carry on successfully*  
gladia:to:rius, -a, -um, adj. *gladiatorial*  
gladius, gladi:, m. *sword*  
glo:ria, -ae, f. *glory, fame*  
Gracchus, -i:, m. *Gracchus*, name of a famous
Roman family  
gracilis, -e, adj. *slender* (Sec. 307)  
Graeca, -o:rum, n. plur. *Greek writings, Greek
literature*  
Graece:, adv. *in Greek*  
Graecia, -ae, f. *Greece*  
grammaticus, -i:, m. *grammarian*  
gra:tia, -ae, f. *thanks, gratitude*  
gra:tus, -a, -um, adj. *acceptable, pleasing*.
Often with dat.   
 (Sec. 501.16)  
gravis, -e:, adj. *heavy; disagreeable; serious,
dangerous; earnest,  
 weighty*  
graviter, adv. [[gravis, *heavy*]], compared
gravius, gravissime:, *heavily; greatly, seriously*.  
 graviter ferre, *bear ill, take to heart*  
guberna:tor, -o:ris, m. [[guberno:, *pilot*]],
*pilot*

**H**

habe:na, -ae, f. *halter, rein*. habeo:, -e:re,
-ui:, -itus, *have, hold; regard, consider, deem*
habito:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[cf. habeo:, *have*]],
*dwell, abide,  
 inhabit*. Cf. incolo:,
vi:vo:   
ha:c-tenus, adv. *thus far* Helve:tii:, -o:rum,
m. *the Helvetii*, a Gallic tribe Hercule:s,
-is, m. *Hercules*, son of Jupiter and Alcmena,
and god of  
 strength  
Hesperide:s, -um, f. *the Hesperides*, daughters
of Hesperus, who kept  
 the garden of the golden apples  
hic, haec, hoc, demonstrative adj. and pron. *this*
(of mine); as  
 pers. pron. *he, she, it*
(Sec. 481)  
hi:c, adv. *here* hiems, -emis, f. *winter*
hi:nc, adv. [[hi:c, *here*]], *from here, hence*
Hippolyte:, -e:s, f. *Hippolyte*, queen of the
Amazons ho-die:, adv. [[modified form of ho:c die:,
*on this day*]], *to-day* homo:, -inis,
m. and f. *(human being), man, person* honestus,
-a, -um, adv. [[honor, *honor*]], *respected,
honorable* honor, -o:ris, m. *honor* ho:ra,
-ae, f. *hour* Hora:tius, Hora:’ti:, m.
*Horatius*, a Roman name horribilis, -e, adj.
*terrible, horrible* hortor, -a:ri, -a:tus sum,
dep. verb, *urge, incite, exhort, encourage*  
 (Sec. 493)  
hortus, -i:, m. *garden* hospitium, hospi’ti:,
n. [[hospes, *host*]], *hospitality* hostis,
-is, m. and f. *enemy, foe* (Sec. 465.a) humilis,
-e, adj. *low, humble* (Sec. 307) Hydra, -ae,
f. *the Hydra*, a mythical water snake slain by  
 Hercules

**I**

**Page 245**

iacio:, -ere, ie:ci:, iactus, *throw, hurl*
iam, adv. *now, already*.  
 nec iam, *and no longer*  
Ia:niculum, -i:, n. *the Janiculum*, one of the
hills of Rome ia:nua, -ae, f. *door* ibi, adv.
*there, in that place* I:carus, -i:, m. *Ic’arus*,
the son of Daedalus ictus, -u:s, m. [[cf. i:co:, *strike*]],
*blow* i:dem, e’adem, idem, demonstrative
pron. [[is + dem]], *same*  
 (Sec. 481)  
ido:neus, -a, -um, adj. *suitable, fit* igitur,
conj., seldom the first word, *therefore, then*.
Cf. itaque ignis, -is, m. *fire* (Secs. 243.1;
247. 2.a; 465, 1) igno:tus, -a, -um, adj. [[in-, *not*,
+ (g)notus, *known*]], *unknown, strange*  
ille, illa, illud, demonstrative adj. and pron. *that*
(yonder); as  
 pers. pron. *he, she, it*
(Sec. 481)  
illi:c, adv. [[cf. ille]], *yonder, there* im-mitto:,
-ere, -mi:si:, -missus [[in, *against*, + mitto:,
*send*]], *send against; let in*  
immolo:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[in, *upon*,
+ mola, *meal*]], *sprinkle with sacrificial
meal; offer, sacrifice*  
im-morta:lis, -e, adj. [[in-, *not*, + mortalis,
*mortal*]], *immortal*  
im-morta:lita:s, -a:tis, f. [[immorta:lis, *immortal*]],
*immortality* im-para:tus, -a, -um, adj. [[in-,
*not*, + para:tus, *prepared*]], *unprepared*  
impedi:mentum, -i:, n. [[impedio:, *hinder*]],
*hindrance;* in plur. *baggage*  
impedi:tus, -a, -um, adj. [[part. of impedio:, *hinder*]],
*hindered,  
 burdened*  
im-pello:, -ere, -puli:, -pulsus [[in, *against*,
+ pello:, *strike*]], *strike
against; impel, drive, propel*  
impera:tor, -o:ris, m. [[impero:, *command*]],
*general* imperium, impe’ri:, n. [[impero:,
*command*]], *command, order; realm,  
 empire; power, authority*  
impero:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *command, order*.
Usually with dat. and  
 an object clause of purpose
(Sec. 501.41).   
 With acc. object, *levy, impose*  
impetus, -u:s, m. *attack*, impetum facere in,
*make an attack upon* im-po:no:, -ere, -posui,
-positus [[in, *upon*, + po:no:, *place*]], *place upon; impose, assign*  
in, prep, with acc. *into, to, against, at, upon,
towards;* with abl. *in, on*.  
 in reliquum tempus, *for the future*  
in-, inseparable prefix. With nouns and adjectives
often with a  
 negative force, like English
*un-, in-*  
in-cautus, -a, -um, adj. [[in-, *not*, + cautus,
*careful*]], *off  
 one’s guard*  
incendium, incendi:, n. *flame, fire*. Cf.
ignis, flamma in-cendo:, -ere, -di:, -ce:nsus, *set
fire to, burn* in-cido:, -ere, -cidi:, ——­,
[[in, *in, on*, + cado:, *fall*]], *fall in, fall on; happen*.  
 in furo:rem incidere, *go mad*

**Page 246**

in-cipio:, -ere, -ce:pi, -ceptus [[in, *on*,
+ capio:, *take*]], *begin*  
in-cognitus, -a, -um, adj. [[in-, *not*, + cognitus,
*known*]], *unknown*  
in-colo:, -ere, -ui:, ——­, [[in,
*in*, + colo:, *dwell*]], *inhabit;  
 live*  
incolumis, -e, adj. *sound, safe, uninjured, imharmed*
in-cre:dibilis, -e, adj. [[in-, *not*, + cre:dibilis,
*to be  
 believed*]], *incredible*  
inde, *from that place, thence* induo:, -ere,
-ui:, -u:tus, *put on* indu:tus, -a, -um, adj.
[[part. of induo:, *put on*]], *clothed*
in-eo:, -i:re, -ii:, -itus [[in, *into*, + eo:,
*go*]], *go into;  
 enter upon, begin*, with
acc. (Sec. 413)  
i:n-fa:ns, -fantis, adj. [[in-, *not*, + *fa:ns,
\_speaking\_]], \_not  
 speaking\_. As a noun,
m. and f. \_infant\_  
i:n-fe:li:x, -i:cis, adj. [[in-, \_not\_, + fe:li:x,
\_happy\_]], \_unhappy,  
 unlucky\_  
i:nfe:nsus, -a, -um, adj. \_hostile\_ i:n’-fero:,
i:nfer’re, in’tuli:, inla:’tus [[in,
\_against\_, + fero:,  
 \_bear\_]], \_bring against or
upon, inflict\_, with acc. and dat.   
 (Sec. 501.15).  
 bellum i:nferre, with dat., \_make war
upon\_  
i:nferus, -a, -um, adj. \_low, below\_ (Sec. 312).
i:n-fi:ni:tus, -a, -um, adj. [[in-, \_not\_, + fi:ni:tus,
\_bounded\_]],  
 \_boundless, endless\_  
i:n-fi:rmus, -a, -um, adj. [[in-, \_not\_, + fi:rmus,
\_strong\_]],  
 \_weak, infirm\_  
ingenium, inge’ni, n. \_talent, ability\_ inge:ns,
-entis, adj. \_vast, huge, enormous, large\_. Cf.
magnus in-gredior, -gredi:, -gressus sum [[in, \_in\_,
+ gradior, \_walk\_]],  
 \_advance, enter\_  
inimi:cus, -a, -um, adj. [[in-, \_not\_, + ami:cus,
\_friendly\_]],  
 \_hostile\_.   
 As a noun, inimi:cus, -i:, m. \_enemy,
foe\_. Cf. hostis  
initium, ini’ti:, \_entrance, beginning\_ initus,
-a, -um, part. of ineo:.  
 inita: aesta:te, \_at the beginning
of summer\_  
iniu:ria, -ae, f. [[in, \_against\_, + iu:s, \_law\_]],
\_injustice,  
 wrong, injury\_.  
 alicui iniu:ria:s i:nferre, \_inflict wrongs
upon some one\_  
inopia, -ae, f. [[inops, \_needy\_]], \_want, need, lack\_
in-opi:na:ns, -antis, adj. [[in-, \_not\_, + opi:na:ns,
\_thinking\_]],  
 \_not expecting, taken by surprise\_  
inquit, \_said he, said she\_. Regularly inserted
in a direct quotation in-rigo:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus,
\_irrigate, water\_ in-rumpo:, -ere, -ru:pi:, -ruptus
[[in, \_into\_, + rumpo:, \_break\_]],  
 \_burst in, break in\_  
in-ruo:, -ere, -rui:,——­ [[in, \_in\_,
+ ruo:, \_rush\_]], \_rush in\_ i:n-sequor, -sequi:, -secu:tus
sum, dep. verb [[in, \_on\_, + sequor,  
 \_follow\_]], \_follow on, pursue\_  
i:n-signe, -is, n. \_badge, decoration\_ (Sec. 465.b)
i:nsignis, -e, adj. \_remarkable, noted\_ i:nsta:ns,
-antis, adj. [[part. of i:nsto, \_be at hand\_]], \_present,  
 immediate\_  
i:n-sto:, -a:re, -stiti:, -statu:rus [[in, \_upon\_,
+ sto:, \_stand\_]],  
 \_stand upon; be at hand; pursue,
press on\_*

***Page 247***

i:nstru:mentum, -i:, n. \_instrument\_ i:n-struo:,
-ere, -stru:xi:, -stru:ctus [[in, \_on\_, + struo:, \_build\_]],  
 \_draw up\_  
i:nsula, -ae, f. \_island\_ integer, -gra, -grum, \_untouched,
whole; fresh, new\_ intellego:, -ere, -le:xi:, -le:ctus
[[inter, \_between\_, +lego:,  
 \_choose\_]], \_perceive, understand\_
(Sec. 420.d)  
intento:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, \_aim; threaten\_
inter, prep. with acc. \_between, among; during, while\_
(Sec. 340) interfectus, -a, -um, adj. [[part. of inter-ficio:,
\_kill\_]], \_slain,  
 dead\_  
inter-ficio:, -ere, -fe:ci:, -fectus [[inter, \_between\_,
+ facio:,  
 \_make\_]], \_put out of the
way, kill\_. Cf. neco:, occi:do:, truci:do:   
interim, adv. \_meanwhile\_ interior, -ius, adj. \_interior,
inner\_ (Sec. 315) inter-mitto:, -ere, -mi:si:, -missus,
\_leave off, suspend\_ interpres, -etis, m. and f. \_interpreter\_
inter-rogo:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, \_question\_ inter-sum,
-esse, -fui:, -futu:rus [[inter, \_between\_, +sum, \_be\_]],  
 \_be present, take part in\_,
with dat. (Sec. 501.15)  
inter-va:llum, -i:, n. \_interval, distance\_ intra:,
adv. and prep. with acc. \_within, in\_ intro:, -a:re,
-a:vi, -a:tus, \_go into, enter\_ in-venio:, -i:re,
-ve:ni:, -ventus [[in, \_upon\_, +venio:, \_come\_]],  
 \_find\_  
invi:sus, -a, -um, adj. [[part. of invideo:, \_envy\_]],
\_hated,  
 detested\_  
Iola:us, -i:, m. \_I-o-la:’us\_, a friend of Hercules
ipse, -a, -um, intensive pron. \_that very, this very;
self, himself,  
 herself, itself\_, (Sec. 481)  
i:ra, -ae, f. \_wrath, anger\_ i:ra:tus, -a, -um, adj.
[[part. of i:ra:scor, \_be angry\_]], \_angered,  
 enraged\_  
is, ea, id, demonstrative adj. and pron. \_this, that;
he, she, it\_  
 (Sec. 481)  
iste, -a, -ud, demonstrative adj. and pron. \_that\_
(of yours), \_he,  
 she, it\_ (Sec. 481)  
ita, adv. \_so, thus\_. Cf. si:c and tam Italia,
-ae, f. \_Italy\_ ita-que, conj. \_and so, therefore\_
item, adv. \_also\_ iter, itineris, n. \_journey, march,
route; way, passage\_  
 (Secs. 247.1.a; 468).  
 iter dare, \_give a right of way, allow
to pass\_.  
 iter facere, \_march\_ (see p. 159)  
iubeo:, -e:re, iussi:, iussus, \_order, command\_.
Usually with the infin.  
 and subj. acc. (Sec. 213)  
iu:dex, -icis, m. and f. \_judge\_ (Sec. 464.1) iu:dico:,
-a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[iu:dex, \_judge\_]], \_judge,
decide\_  
 (Sec. 420.c)  
Iu:lia, -ae, \_Julia\_, a Roman name Iu:lius, Iu:li:,
m. \_Julius\_, a Roman name iungo:, -e:re, iu:nxi:,
iu:nctus, \_join; yoke, harness\_ Iu:no:, -o:nis, f.
\_Juno\_, the queen of the gods and wife of Jupiter
Iuppiter, Iovis, m. \_Jupiter\_, the supreme god iu:ro:,
-a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, \_swear, take an oath\_ iussus,
-a, -um, part. of iubeo:, \_ordered\_

***L***

***Page 248***

L., abbreviation for Lu:cius labefactus, -a, -um,
adj. [[part. of labefacio:, *cause to shake*]], *shaken, weakened, ready
to fall*  
Labie:nus, -i:, m. *La-bi-e’nus*, one of
Caesar’s lieutenants labor, -o:ris, m. *labor,
toil* labo:ro:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[labor,
*labor*]], *labor; suffer, be  
 hard pressed*  
lacrima, -ae, f. *tear* lacus, -u:s (dat. and
abl. plur. lacubus), m. *lake* laete:, adv. [[laetus,
*glad*]], compared laetius, laetissime:, *gladly*  
laetitia, -ae, f. [[laetus, *glad*]], *joy*
laetus, -a, -um, adj. *glad, joyful* lapis, -idis,
m. *stone* (Secs. 247.2.a; 464.1) La:r, Laris,
m.; plur. Lare:s, -um (rarely -ium), *the Lares*
or *household, gods*  
la:te:, adv. [[la:tus, *wide*]], compared la:tius,
la:tissime:, *widely* Latine:, adv. *in Latin*.   
 Lati:ne: loqui:, *to speak Latin*  
la:titu:do:, -inis, f. [[la:tus, *wide*]], *width*
La:to:na, -ae, f. *Latona*, mother of Apollo and
Diana latus, -a, -um, adj. *wide* la:tus, -eris,
n. *side, flank*.  
 ab utro:que latere, *on each side*  
laudo:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[laus, *praise*]],
*praise* laurea, -ae, f. *laurel* laurea:tus,
-a, -um, adj. *crowned with laurel* laus, laudis,
f. *praise* lectulus, -i:, m. *couch, bed*
le:ga:tus, -i:, m. *ambassador; lieutenant* legio:,
-o:nis, f. [[cf. lego:, *gather*]], (*body of
soldiers*), *legion*, about 3600
men (Sec. 464.2.a)  
legio:na:rius, -a, -um, adj. *legionary*.
Plur. legio:narii:, -o:rum, m. *the soldiers of the legion*  
lego:, -ere, le:gi:, le:ctus, *read* le:nis,
-e, adj. *gentle, smooth, mild* le:niter, adv.
[[le:nis, *gentle*]], compared le:nius, le:nissime:, *gently*  
Lentulus, -i, m. *Lentulus*, a Roman family name
leo:, -o:nis, m. *lion* Lernaeus, -a, -um, adj.
*Lernaeean*, of Lerna, in southern Greece Lesbia,
-ae, f. *Lesbia*, a girl’s name levis,
-e, adj. *light* le:x, le:gis, f. *measure,
law* libenter, adv. [[libe:ns, *willing*]],
compared libentius,  
 libentissime:, *willingly,
gladly*  
li:ber, -era, -erum, adj. *free* (Sec. 469.b)
li:beri:, -o:rum, m. [[li:ber, *free*]], *children*
li:bero:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[li:ber, *free*]],
*set free, release,  
 liberate*  
li:berta:s, -a:tis, f. [[li:ber, *free*]], *freedom,
liberty* li:ctor, -o:ris, m. *lictor* (p.
225) li:mus, -i:, m. *mud* littera, -ae, f.
*a letter* of the alphabet; in plur. *a letter,  
 epistle*  
li:tus, -oris, n. *seashore, beach* locus, -i:,
m. (plur. loci: and loca, m. and n.), *place,
spot* longe:, adv. [[longus, *long*]], comp.
longius, longissime:, *a long  
 way off; by far*  
longinquus, -a, -um, adj. [[longus, *long*]],

**Page 249**

*distant, remote* longitu:do:, -inis, f. [[longus,
*long*]], *length* longus, -a, -um, adj.
*long* loquor, loqui, locu:tus sum, dep. verb,
*talk, speak* lo:ri:ca, -ae, f. [[lo:rum, *thong*]],
*coat of mail, corselet* lu:do:, -ere, lu:si:,
lu:sus, *play* lu:dus, -i:, m. *play; school*,
the elementary grades. Cf. schola lu:na, -ae,
f. *moon* lu:x, lu:cis, f. (no gen. plur.), *light*.  
 pri:ma lu:x, *daybreak*  
Ly:dia, -ae, f. *Lydia*, a girl’s name

**M**

M., abbreviation for Ma:rcus magicus, -a, -um, adj.
*magic* magis, adv. in comp. degree [[magnus,
*great*]], *more, in a higher  
 degree* (Sec. 323)  
magister, -tri:, m. *master, commander; teacher*
magistra:tus, -u:s, m. [[magister, *master*]],
*magistracy;  
 magistrate*  
magnitu:do:, -inis, f. [[magnus, *great*]], *greatness,
size* magnopere, adv. [[abl. of magnum opus]],
compared magis, maxime:, *greatly, exceedingly*
(Sec. 323)  
magnus, -a, -um, adj., compared maior, maximus, *great,
large;  
 strong, loud* (Sec. 311)  
maior, maius, -o:ris, adj., comp. of magnus, *greater,
larger* (Sec.  
 311)  
maio:re:s, -um, m. plur. of maior, *ancestors*
ma:lo:, ma:lle, ma:lui:, ——­ [[magis,
*more*, + volo:, *wish*]], *wish  
 more, prefer* (Sec. 497)  
malus, -a, -um, adj., compared peior, pessimus, *bad,
evil* (Sec. 311) mando:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus
[[manus, *hand*, + do:, *put*]], *(put
in  
 hand), intrust; order, command*  
maneo:, -e:re, ma:nsi:, ma:nsu:rus, *stay, remain,
abide* Ma:nlius, Ma:nli:, m. *Manlius*, a
Roman name ma:nsue:tus, -a, -um, adj. [[part. of ma:nsue:sco:,
*tame*]], *tamed* manus, -u:s, f. *hand;
force, band* Ma:rcus, -i:, m. *Marcus, Mark*,
a Roman first name mare, -is, n. (no gen. plur.),
*sea*.  
 mare tene:re, *be out to sea*  
margo:, -inis, m. *edge, border* mari:tus, -i:,
m. *husband* Marius, Mari:, m. *Marius*,
a Roman name, esp. *C. Marius*, the general
Ma:rtius, -a, -um, adj. *of Mars*, esp. the *Campus
Martius* ma:ter, -tris, f. *mother* ma:trimo:nium,
ma:trimo:’ni:, n. *marriage*.  
 in ma:trimo:nium du:cere, *marry*  
ma:tu:ro:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *hasten*.
Cf. contendo:, propero: ma:tu:rus, -a, -um, adj.
*ripe, mature* maxime:, adv. in superl. degree
[[maximus, *greatest*]], compared  
 magnopere, magis, maxime:,
*especially, very much* (Sec. 323)  
maximus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of magnus, *greatest,
extreme*  
 (Sec. 311)  
medius, -a, -um, adj. *middle part; middle, intervening*
melior, -ius, -o:ris, adj., comp. of bonus, *better*
(Sec. 311) melius, adv. in comp. degree, compared
bene, melius, optime:, *better* (Sec. 323)

**Page 250**

memoria, -ae, f. [[memor, *mindful*]], *memory*.  
 memoria: tene:re, *remember*  
me:ns, mentis, f. *mind*. Cf. animus me:nsis,
-is, m. *month* (Sec. 247.2. a) merca:tor, -o:ris,
m. [[mercor, *trade*]], *trader, merchant*
meri:dia:nus, -a, -um, adj. [[meri:die:s, *noon*]],
*of midday* meri:die:s, ——­
(acc. -em, abl. -e:), m. [[medius, *mid*, +  
 die:s, *day*]], *noon*  
metus, -u:s, m. *fear, dread* meus, -a, -um,
possessive adj. and pron. *my, mine* (Sec. 98)
mi:les, -itis, m. *soldier* (Sec. 464.1) mi:lita:ris,
-e, adj. [[mi:les, *soldier*]], *military*.  
 re:s mi:lita:ris, *science of war*  
mi:lito:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[mi:les, *soldier*]],
*serve as a  
 soldier*  
mi:lle, plur. mi:lia, -ium, numeral adj. and subst.
*thousand* (Sec.  
 479)  
minime:, adv. in superl. degree, compared parum, minus,
minime:, *least, very little; by
no means* (Sec. 323)  
minimus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared
parvus, minor,  
 minimus, *least, smallest*
(Sec. 311)  
minor, minus, -o:ris, adj. in comp. degree, compared
parvus, minor,  
 minimus, *smaller, less*
(Sec. 311)  
Mi:no:s, -o:is, m. *Minos*, a king of Crete
minus, adv. in comp. degree, compared parum, minus,
minime:, *less*  
 (Sec. 323)  
Minyae, -a:rum, m. *the Minyae*, a people of
Greece mi:ra:bilis, -e, adj. [[mi:ror, *wonder at*]],
*wonderful, marvelous* mi:ror, -a:ri:, -a:tus
sum, dep. verb [[mi:rus, *wonderful*]], *wonder,  
 marvel, admire*  
mi:rus, -a, -um, adj. *wonderful* Mi:se:num,
-i:, *Mise’num*, a promontory and harbor
on the coast of  
 Campania. See map  
miser, -era, -erum, adj. *wretched, unhappy, miserable*
missus, -a, -um, part. of mitto:, *sent* mitto:,
-ere, mi:si:, missus, *send* modicus, -a, -um
[[modus, *measure*]], *modest, ordinary*
modo, adv. [[abl. of modus, *measure*, with shortened
o]], *only,  
 merely, just now*.  
 modo ... modo, *now ... now, sometimes
... sometimes*  
modus, -i:, m. *measure; manner, way; kind*
moenia, -ium, n. plur. [[cf. mu:nio:, *fortify*]],
*walls, ramparts* moleste:, adv. [[molestus,
*troublesome*]], compared molestius,  
 molestissime:, *annoyingly*.  
 moleste: ferre, *to be annoyed*  
molestus, -a, -um, *troublesome, annoying, unpleasant*
(Sec. 501.16) moneo:, -e:re, -ui:, -itus, *remind,
advise, warn* (Sec. 489) mo:ns, montis, m. *mountain*
(Sec. 247.2. a) mo:nstrum, -i:, n. *monster*
mora, -ae, f. *delay* moror, -a:ri:, -a:tus sum,
dep. verb [[mora, *delay*]], *delay, linger;  
 impede*  
mors, mortis, f. [[cf. morior, *die*]], *death*
mo:s, mo:ris, m. *custom, habit* mo:tus, -u:s,
m. [[cf. moveo:, *move*]], *motion, movement*.

**Page 251**

terrae mo:tus, *earthquake*  
moveo:, -e:re, mo:vi:, mo:tus, *move* mox, adv.
*soon, presently* mulier, -eris, f. *woman*
multitu:do:, -inis, f. [[multus, *much*]], *multitude*
multum (multo:), adv. [[multus, *much*]], compared
plu:s, plu:rimum, *much* (Sec. 477)  
multus, -a, -um, adj., compared plu:s, plu:rimus,
*much*; plur. *many*  
 (Sec. 311)  
mu:nio:, -i:re, -i:vi: or -ii:, -i:tus, *fortify,
defend* mu:ni:tio:, -o:nis, f. [[mu:nio:, *fortify*]],
*defense, fortification* mu:rus, -i:, m. *wall*.
Cf. moenia mu:sica, -ae, f. *music*

**N**

nam, conj. *for*. Cf. enim nam-que, conj.,
a strengthened nam, introducing a reason or  
 explanation, *for, and in
fact; seeing that*  
na:rro:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *tell, relate*
na:scor, na:sci:, na:tus sum, dep. verb, *be born,
spring from* na:tu:ra, -ae, f. *nature* na:tus,
part. of na:scor nauta, -ae, m. [[for na:vita, from
na:vis, *ship*]], *sailor* na:va:lis, -e,
adj. [[na:vis, *ship*]], *naval* na:vigium,
na:vi’gi:, n. *ship, boat* na:vigo:, -a:re,
-a:vi:, -a:tus [[na:vis, *ship*, + ago:, *drive*]], *sail, cruise*  
na:vis, -is (abl. -i: or -e), f. *ship*
(Sec. 243.1).  
 na:vem co:nscendere, *embark,
go on board*.  
 na:vem solvere, *set sail*.  
 na:vis longa, *man-of-war*  
ne:, conj. and adv. *in order that not, that*
(with verbs of fearing), *lest; not*.  
 ne: ... quidem, *not even*  
-ne, interrog. adv., enclitic (see Secs. 16, 210).
Cf. no:nne and num nec or neque, conj. [[ne:, *not*,
+ que, *and*]], *and not, nor*.  
 nec ... nec or neque ... neque, *neither
... nor*  
necessa:rius, -a, -um, adj. *needful, necessary*
neco:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[cf. nex, *death*]],
*kill*. Cf. interficio:,  
 occi:do:, truci:do:   
nego:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *deny, say not*
(Sec. 420.a) nego:tium, nego:’ti:, n. [[nec,
*not*, + o:tium, *ease*]], *business,  
 affair, matter*.  
 alicui nego:tium dare, *to employ some
one*  
Nemaeus, -a, -um, adj. *Neme’an, of Neme’a*,
in southern Greece ne:mo, dat. ne:mini: (gen.
nu:lli:us, abl. nu:llo:, supplied from  
 nu:llus), m. and f. [[ne:,
*not*, + homo:, *man*]], *(not a man),  
 no one, nobody*  
Neptu:nus, -i:, m. *Neptune*, god of the sea,
brother of Jupiter neque, see nec neuter, -tra, -trum
(gen. -tri:us, dat. -tri:), adj. *neither* (of  
 two) (Sec. 108)  
ne:-ve, conj. adv. *and not, and that not, and lest*
nihil, n. indecl. [[ne:, *not*, + hi:lum, *a
whit*]], *nothing*.  
 nihil posse, *to have no power*  
nihilum, -i:, n., see nihil Niobe:, -e:s, f. *Ni’obe*,
the queen of Thebes whose children were

**Page 252**

destroyed by Apollo and Diana  
nisi, conj. [[ne:, *not*, + si:, *if*]],
*if not, unless, except* no:bilis, -e, adj. *well
known; noble* noceo:, -e:re, -ui:, -itu:rus [[cf.
neco:, *kill*]], *hurt, injure*,  
 with dat. (Sec. 501.14)  
noctu:, abl. used as adv. [[cf. nox, *night*]],
*at night, by night* No:la, -ae, f. *Nola*,
a town in central Campania. See map no:lo:, no:lle,
no:lui:, ——­ [[ne, *not*, + volo:,
*wish*]], *not to  
 wish, be unwilling* (Sec.
497)  
no:men, -inis, n. [[cf. no:sco:, *know*]], *(means
of knowing), name* no:mino:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus
[[no:men, *name*]], *name, call*. Cf.  
 appello:, voco:   
no:n, adv. [[ne:, *not*, + u:num, *one*]],
*not*.  
 no:n so:lum ... sed etiam, *not only
... but also*  
no:n-dum, adv. *not yet* no:n-ne, interrog.
adv. suggesting an affirmative answer, *not?*  
 (Sec. 210). Cf. -ne and
num  
no:s, pers. pron. *we* (see ego) (Sec. 480)
noster, -tra, -trum, possessive adj. and pron. *our,
ours*. Plur.  
 nostri:, -o:rum, m. *our
men* (Sec. 98)  
novem, indecl. numeral adj. *nine* novus, -a,
-um, adj. *new*.  
 novae re:s, *a revolution*  
nox, noctis, f. *night*, multa: nocte, *late
at night* nu:llus, -a, -um (gen. -i:us, dat. -i:)
adj. [[ne:, *not*, +  
 u:llus, *any*]], *not
any, none, no* (Sec. 108)  
num, interrog. adv. suggesting a negative answer (Sec.
210). Cf. -ne and  
 no:nne. In indir. questions,
*whether*  
numerus, -i:, m. *number* numquam, adv. [[ne:,
*not*, + umquam, *ever*]], *never*
nunc, adv. *now*. Cf. iam nu:ntio:, -a:re,
-a:vi:, -a:tus [[nu:ntius, *messenger*]], *report,  
 announce* (Sec. 420.a)  
nu:ntius, nu:nti:, m. *messenger* nu:per, adv.
*recently, lately, just now* nympha, -ae, f.
*nymph*

**O**

ob, prep. with acc. *on account of*. In
compounds it often means *in  
 front of, against*, or
it is intensive.  
 quam ob rem, *for this reason* (Sec.
340)  
obses, -idis, m. and f. *hostage* ob-sideo:,-e:re,-se:di:,
-sessus [[ob, *against*, + sedeo:, *sit*]], *besiege*  
obtineo:, -e:re, -ui:, -tentus [[ob, *against*,
+ teneo:, *hold*]], *possess, occupy, hold*  
occa:sio:, -o:nis, f. *favorable opportunity, favorable
moment* occa:sus, -u:s, m. *going down, setting*
occi:do:, -ere, -ci:di:, -ci:sus [[ob, *down*,
+ caedo:, *strike*]], *strike down; cut down,
kill*. Cf. interficio:, neco:   
occupo:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[ob, *completely*,
+ capio:, *take*]], *seize, take possession
of, occupy*. Cf. rapio  
oc-curro:, -ere, -curri:, -cursus [[ob, *against*
+ curro:, *run*]],

**Page 253**

*run towards; meet*,
with dat. (Sec. 426)  
o:ceanus, -i:, m. *the ocean* octo:, indecl.
numeral adj. *eight* oculus, -i:, m. *eye*
officium, offi’ci:, n. *duty* o:lim, adv.
*formerly, once upon a time* o:men, -inis, n.
*sign, token, omen* o:-mitto:, -ere, -mi:si:,
-missus [[ob, *over, past*, + mitto:, *send*]], *let go,
omit*.  
 consilium omittere, *give up a plan*  
omni:no:, adv. [[omnis, *all*]], *altogether,
wholly, entirely* omnis, -e, adj. *all, every.*
Cf. to:tus onera:ria, -ae, f. [[onus, *load*]],
with na:vis expressed or  
 understood, *merchant vessel,
transport*  
onus, -eris, n. *load, burden* opi:nio:, -o:nis,
f. [[opi:nor, *suppose*]], *opinion, supposition,  
 expectation*  
oppida:nus, -i:, m. [[oppidum, *town*]], *townsman*
oppidum, -i:, n. *town, stronghold* opportu:nus,
-a, -um, adj. *suitable, opportune, favorable*
op-primo:, -ere, -pressi:, -pressus [[ob, *against*,
+ premo:, *press*]], (*press
against*), *crush; surprise*  
oppugna:tio:, -o:nis, f. *storming, assault*
oppugno:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[ob, *against*,
+ pugno: *fight*]], *fight against, assault,
storm, assail*  
optime:, adv. in superl. degree, compared bene, melius,
optime:, *very  
 well, best of all* (Sec.
323)  
optimus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared
bonus, melior,  
 optimus, *best, most excellent*
(Sec. 311)  
opus, -eris, n. *work, labor, task* (Sec. 464.2.b)
o:ra:culum, -i:, n. [[o:ro:, *speak*]], *oracle*
o:ra:tor, -o:ris, m. [[o:ro:, *speak*]], *orator*
orbis, -is, m. *ring, circle*.  
 orbis terra:rum, *the earth, world*  
orbita, -ae, f. [[orbis, *wheel*]], *rut*
Orcus, -i:, m. *Orcus, the lower world* o:rdo:,
-inis, m. *row, order, rank* (Sec. 247.2.a) ori:go,
-inis, f. [[orior, *rise*]], *source, origin*
orior, -i:ri:, ortus sum, dep. verb, *arise, rise,
begin; spring, be  
 born*  
o:rna:mentum, -i:, n. [[o:rno:, *fit out*]],
*ornament, jewel* o:rna:tus, -a, -um, adj. [[part.
of o:rno:, *fit out*]] *fitted out;  
 adorned*  
o:rno:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *fit out, adorn*

**P**

P., abbreviation for Pu:blius paene, adv. *nearly,
almost* palu:da:mentum, -i:, n. *military cloak*
palu:s, -u:dis, f. *swamp, marsh* pa:nis, -is,
m. *bread* pa:r, paris, adj. *equal* (Sec.
471. III) para:tus, -a, -um, adj. [[part. of
paro:, *prepare*]], *prepared,  
 ready*  
parco:, -ere, peper’ci: (parsi:), parsu:rus,
*spare*, with dat.   
 (Sec. 501.14)  
pa:reo:, -e:re, -ui:, ——­, *obey*,
with dat. (Sec. 501.14) paro:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus,
*prepare for, prepare; provide, procure* pars,

**Page 254**

partis, f. *part, share; side, direction* parum,
adv., compared minus, minime:, *too little, not enough*
(Sec.  
 323)  
parvus, -a, -um, adj., compared minor, minimus, *small,
little*  
 (Sec. 311)  
passus, -u:s, m. *step, pace*.  
 mi:lle passuum, *thousand paces, mile*
(Sec. 331.b)  
pateo:, -e:re, patui:, ——­, *lie
open, be open; stretch, extend* pater, -tris, m.
*father* (Sec. 464.2.a) patior, -i:, passus sum,
dep. verb, *bear, suffer, allow, permit* patria,
-ae, f. [[cf. pater, *father*]], *fatherland*,
(*one’s*) *country*  
paucus, -a, -um, adj. (generally plur.), *few, only
a few* paulisper, adv. *for a little while*
paulo:, adv. *by a little, little* paulum adv.
*a little, somewhat* pa:x, pa:cis, f. (no gen.
plur.), *peace* pecu:nia, -ae, f. [[pecus, *cattle*]],
*money* pedes, -itis, m. [[pe:s, *foot*]],
*foot soldier* pedester, -tris, -tre, adj. [[pe:s,
*foot*]], *on foot; by land* peior, peius,
-o:ris, adj. in comp. degree, compared malus, peior,  
 pessimus, *worse* (Sec.
311)  
pellis, -is, f. *skin, hide* penna, -ae, f.
*feather* per, prep. with acc. *through, by
means of, on account of*. In  
 composition it often has the
force of *thoroughly, completely, very*  
 (Sec. 340)  
percussus, -a, -um, adj. [[part. of percutio:, *strike
through*]], *pierced*  
per-du:co:, -ere, -du:xi:, -ductus [[per, *through*,
+ du:co:, *lead*]], *lead through*.  
 fossam perdu:cere, *to construct a ditch*  
per-exiguus, -a, -um, adj. [[per, *very*, + exiguus,
*small*]], *very small, very short*  
perfidus, -a, -um, adj. *faithless, treacherous,
false* per-fringo:, -ere, -fre:gi:, -fra:ctus [[per,
*through*, frango:, *break*]], *shatter*  
pergo:, -ere, perre:xi:, perre:ctus [[per, *through*,
+ rego:, *conduct*]], *go on,
proceed, hasten*  
peri:culum, -i:, n. *trial, test; danger* peristy:lum,
-i:, n. *peristyle*, an open court with columns
around it peri:tus, -a, -um, adj. *skillful*
perpetuus, -a, -um, adj. *perpetual* Perseus,
-ei:, *Perseus*, a Greek hero, son of Jupiter
and Danae perso:na, -ae, f. *part, character, person*
per-sua:deo:, -e:re, -sua:si:, -sua:sus [[per, *thoroughly*,
+ sua:deo:, *persuade*]], *persuade,
advise*, with dat. (Sec. 501.14), often  
 with an object clause of purpose
(Sec. 501.41)  
per-terreo:, -e:re, -ui:, -itus [[per, *thoroughly*,
+ terreo:, *frighten*]], *thoroughly
terrify, alarm*  
per-venio:, -i:re, -ve:ni:, -ventus [[per, *through*,
+ venio:, *come*]], *arrive,
reach, come to*  
pe:s, pedis, m. *foot*.  
 pedem referre, *retreat* (Sec. 247.2.a)  
pessimus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared

**Page 255**

malus, peior,  
 pessimus, *worst* (Sec.
311)  
peto:, -ere, -i:vi: or -ii:, -i:tus, *strive
for, seek, beg, ask; make  
 for, travel to*. Cf.
postulo:, quaero:, rogo:   
Pharsa:lus, -i:, f. *Pharsa’lus* or *Pharsa’lia*,
a town in Thessaly,  
 near which Cassar defeated
Pompey, 48 B.C.  
philosophia, -ae, f. *philosophy* philosophus,
-i:, m. *philosopher* pictus, -a, -um, adj. [[part.
of pingo:, *paint*]], *colored,  
 variegated*  
pi:lum, -i:, n. *spear, javelin* (Sec. 462.b)
pisci:na, -ae, f. [[piscis, *fish*]], *fish
pond* piscis, -is, m. *fish* pi:stor, -o:ris,
m. *baker* placeo:. -e:re, -ui:, -itus, *please,
be pleasing*, with dat. (Sec.  
 501.14)  
pla:nitie:s, -e:i:, f. [[pla:nus, *level*]],
*plain* pla:nus, -a, -um, adj. *level, flat*
ple:nus, -a, -um, *full* plu:rimum, adv. in superl.
degree, compared multum, plu:s, plu:rimum, *very much*.  
 plu:rimum vale:re, *be most influential*
(Sec. 322)  
plu:rimus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared
multus, plu:s,  
 plu:rimus, *most, very many*
(Sec. 311)  
plu:s, plu:ris, adj. in comp. degree, compared multus,
plu:s, plu:rimus;  
 sing. n. as substantive, *more*;
plur. *more, several* (Sec. 311)  
pluteus, -i:, m. *shield, parapet* poena, -ae,
f. *punishment, penalty* poe:ta, -ae, m. *poet*
pompa, -ae, f. *procession* Pompe:ii:, -o:rum,
m. *Pompeii*, a city of Campania. See map
Pompe:ius, Pompe:’i:, m. *Pompey*, a Roman
name po:mum, -i:, n. *apple* po:no:, -ere, posui:,
positus, *put, place*.  
 castra po:nere, *pitch camp*  
po:ns, pontis, m. *bridge* (Sec. 247.2.a) popi:na,
-ae, f. *restaurant* populus, -i:, m. *people*
Porsena, -ae, m. *Porsena*, king of Etruria, a
district of Italy.   
 See map  
porta, -ae, f. *gate, door* porto:, -a:re, -a:vi:,
-a:tus, *bear, carry* portus, -u:s, m. [[cf.
porta, *gate*]], *harbor* possideo:, -e:re,
-se:di:, -sessus, *have, own, possess* possum,
posse, potui:, ——­, irreg. verb [[potis,
*able*, + sum, *I am*]], *be able,
can* (Sec. 495).  
 nihil posse, *have no power*  
post, prep, with acc. *after, behind* (Sec. 340)
postea:, adv. [[post, *after*, + ea:, *this*]],
*afterwards* (posterus), -a, -um, adj., compared
posterior, postre:mus or  
 postumus, *following, next*
(Sec. 312)  
postquam, conj. *after, as soon as* postre:mo:,
adv. [[abl. of postre:mus, *last*]], *at last,
finally*.   
 Cf. de:mum, de:nique (Sec.
322)  
postri:die:, adv. [[postero:, *next*, + die:,
*day*]], *on the next  
 day*  
postulo:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *ask, demand, require*.
Cf. peto:,  
 quaero:, rogo:   
potentia, -ae, f. [[pote:ns, *able*]], *might,
power, force* prae-beo:, -e:re, -ui:, -itus [[prae,

**Page 256**

*forth*, + habeo:, *hold*]], *offer, give*  
praeda, -ae, f. *booty, spoil, plunder* prae-di:co:,
-ere, -di:xi:, -dictus [[prae, *before*, + di:co:, *tell*]], *foretell,
predict*  
prae-ficio:, -ere, -fe:ci:, -fectus [[prae, *before*,
+ facio:, *make*]], *place in
command*, with acc. and dat. (Sec. 501.15)  
prae-mitto:, -ere, -mi:si:, -missus [[prae, *forward*,
+ mitto:, *send*]], *send forward*  
praemium, praemi:, n. *reward, prize* praeruptus,
-a, -um [[part. of prae-rumpo:, *break off*]],
*broken  
 off, steep*  
praese:ns, -entis, adj. *present, immediate*
praesertim, adv. *especially, chiefly* praesidium,
praesi’di, n. *guard, garrison, protection*
prae-sto:, -a:re, -stiti:, -stitus [[prae, *before*,
+ sto, *stand*]], (*stand
before*), *excel, surpass*, with dat. (Sec.  
 501.15); *show, exhibit*  
prae-sum, -esse, -fui:, -futu:rus [[prae, *before*,
+ sum, *be*]], *be over, be in command
of*, with dat. (Sec. 501.15)  
praeter, prep, with acc. *beyond, contrary to*
(Sec. 340) praeterea:, adv. [[praeter, *besides*,
+ ea:, *this*]], *in  
 addition, besides, moreover*  
praetextus, -a, -um, adj. *bordered, edged*
praeto:rium, praeto:’ri:, n. *praetorium*
prandium, prandi:, n. *luncheon* premo:, -ere,
pressi:, pressus, *press hard, compress; crowd, drive,  
 harass*  
(prex, precis), f. *prayer* pri:mo:, adv. [[pri:mus,
*first*]], *at first, in the beginning* (Sec.  
 322)  
pri:mum, adv. [[pri:mus, *first*]], *first*.  
 quam primum, *as soon as possible*  
pri:mus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared
prior, pri:mus, *first* (Sec. 315)  
pri:nceps, -cipis, m. [[pri:mus, *first*, + capio:,
*take*]],  
 (*taking the first place*),
*chief, leader* (Sec. 464.1)  
prior, prius, -o:ris, adj. in comp. degree, superl.,
pri:mus, *former*  
 (Sec. 315)  
pri:stinus, -a, -um, adj. *former, previous*
pro:, prep, with abl. *before; for, for the sake
of, in behalf of;  
 instead of, as* (Sec. 209).
In composition, *forth, forward*  
pro:-ce:do:, -ere, -cussi:, -cessu:rus [[pro:, *forward*,
+ ce:do:, *go*]], *go forward,
proceed*  
procul, adv. *far, afar off* pro:-curro:, -ere,
-curri: (-cucurri:), -cur-sus [[pro:, *forward*,
+  
 curro:, *run*]], *run
forward*  
proelium, proeli, n. *battle, combat*.  
 proelium committere, *join battle*.  
 proelium facere, *fight a battle*  
profectio:, -o:nis, f. *departure* profici:scor,
-i:, -fectus sum, dep. verb, *set out, march*.
Cf.  
 e:gredior, exeo:   
pro:-gredior, -i:, -gressus sum, dep. verb [[pro:,
*forth*, +  
 gradior, *go*]], *go*

***Page 257***

forth, proceed, advance. Cf. pergo:,  
 pro:ce:do:   
pro:gressus, see pro:gredior prohibeo:, -e:re, -ui:,
-itus [[pro:, *forth, away from*, + habeo:, *hold*]], *keep away
from, hinder, prevent*  
pro:-moveo:, -e:re, -mo:vi:, -mo:tus [[pro:, *forward*,
+ moveo:, *move*]], *move forward,
advance*  
pro:-nu:ntio:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[pro:, *forth*,
+ nu:ntio:, *announce*]], *proclaim,
declare*  
prope, adv., compared propius, proxi-me:, *nearly*.
Prep, with acc. *near*  
pro:-pello:, -ere, -puli:, -pulsus [[pro:, *forth*,
+ pello:, *drive*]], *drive forth;
move, impel*  
propero:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[properus, *quick]],
go quickly,  
 hasten*. Cf. contendo:,
maturo:   
propinquus, -a, -um, adj. [[prope, *near]], near,
neighboring* propior, -ius, -o:ris, adj. in comp.
degree, superl., proximus, *nearer* (Sec. 315)  
propius, adv. in comp. degree, compared prope, propius,
proxime:, *nearer* (Sec. 323)  
propter, prep. with acc. *on account of, because
of* (Sec. 340) pro:-scri:bo:, -ere, -scri:psi:,
-scriptus [[pro:, *forth*, + scribo:, *write*]], *proclaim,
publish*. Cf. pro:nu:ntio:   
pro:-sequor, -sequi:, -secu:tus sum, dep. verb [[pro:,
*forth*, +  
 sequor, *follow]], escort,
attend*  
pro:-sum, pro:desse, pro:fui:, pro:futu:rus [[pro:,
*for*, + sum, *be*]], *be useful, benefit*,
with dat. (Secs. 496; 501.15)  
pro:-tego:, -ere, -te:x=i], -te:ctus [[pro:, *in
front*, + tego:, *cover]], cover in front,
protect*  
pro:vincia, -ae, f. *territory, province* proxime:,
adv. in superl. degree, compared prope, propius, proxime:, *nearest, next; last, most
recently* (Sec. 323)  
proximus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared
propior,  
 proximus, *nearest, next*
(Sec. 315)  
pu:blicus, -a, -um, adj. [[populus,\_people\_]], *of
the people,  
 public*, res pu:blica,
*the commonwealth*  
puella, -ae, f. [[diminutive of puer, *boy*]],
*girl, maiden* puer, -eri, m. *boy; slave*
(Sec. 462.c) pugna, -ae, f \_-fight, battle.\_ Cf. proelium
pugno:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[pugna, *battle]],
fight*. Cf. contendo:,  
 di:mico:   
pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj. *beautiful, pretty*
(Secs. 469.b; 304) Pullo:, -o:nis, m. *Pullo*,
a centurion pulso:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *strike,
beat* puppis, -is (acc. -im, abl. -i:), f. *stern*
of a ship, *deck* pu:re:, adv. [[pu:rus, *pure*]],
comp. pu:rius, *purely* pu:rgo:, -a:re, -a:vi:,
-a:tus, *cleanse, clean* purpureus, -a, -um,
adj. *purple, dark red* puto:, -a:re, -a:vi:,
-a:tus, *reckon, think* (Sec. 420,\_c\_). Cf.
arbitror,  
 exi:stimo:   
Py:thia, -ae, f. *Pythia*, the inspired priestess
of Apollo at Delphi

**Page 258**

**Q**

qua: de: causa:, *for this reason, wherefore*
qua: re:, *therefore, for this reason* quaero:,
-ere, -si:vi:, -si:tus, *seek, ask, inquire*.
Cf. peto:, postulo:,  
 rogo:   
qua:lis, -e, interrog. pronom. adj. *of what sort,
what kind of*.  
 talis ... qualis, *such
... as*  
quam, adv. *how*; after a comparative, *than*;
with a superlative,  
 translated *as ... as possible*,
quam pri:mum, *as soon as possible*  
quantus, -a, -um, adj. [[quam, *how]], how great,
how much*,  
 tantus ... quantus, *as
great as*  
qua:rtus, -a, -um, numeral adj. [[quattuor, *four*]],
*fourth* quattuor, indecl. numeral adj. *four*
quattuor-decim, indecl. numeral adj. *fourteen*
-que, conj., enclitic, *and* (Sec. 16). Cf.
ac, atque, et qui:, quae, quod, rel. pron. and adj.
*who, which, what, that* (Sec.  
 482)  
quia, conj. *because*. Cf. quod qui:dam,
quaedam, quiddam (quoddam), indef. pron. and adj. *a
certain  
 one, a certain, a* (Sec.
485).  
quidem, adv. *to be sure, certainly, indeed*,
ne: ... quidem, *not  
 even*  
quie:s, -e:tis, f. *rest, repose* quie:tus,
-a, -um, adj. *quiet, restful* qui:ndecim, indecl.
numeral adj. *fifteen* qui:ngenti:, -ae, -a,
numeral adj. *five hundred* qui:nque, indecl.
numeral adj. *five* qui:ntus, -a, -um, numeral
adj. *fifth* quis (qui:), quae, quid (quod),
interrog. pron. and adj. *who? what?  
 which?* (Sec. 483).  
quis (qui:), qua (quae), quid (quod), indef. pron.
and adj., used after  
 si:, nisi, ne:, num, *any
one, anything, some one, something, any,  
 some* (Sec. 484).  
quisquam, quicquam or quidquam (no fem. or plur.),
indef. pron. *any  
 one* (at all), *anything*
(at all) (Sec. 486).  
quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque), indef. pron.
and adj. *each, each  
 one, every* (Sec. 484).  
quo:, interrog. and rel. adv. *whither, where*
quo:, conj. *in order to, that*, with comp. degree
(Sec. 350). quod, conj. *because, in that*.
Cf. quia quoque, conj., following an emphatic word,
*also, too*. Cf. etiam quot-anni:s, adv.
[[quot, *how many* + annus, *year*]], *every  
 year, yearly*  
quotie:ns, interrog. and rel. adv. *how often? as
often as*

**R**

ra:di:x, -i:cis, f. *root; foot* rapio:, -ere,
-ui:, -tus, *seize, snatch* ra:ro:, adv. [[ra:rus,
*rare*]], *rarely* ra:rus, -a, -um, adj.
*rare* re- or red-, an inseparable prefix, *again,
back, anew, in return* rebellio:, -o:nis, f. *renewal
of war, rebellion* rece:ns, -entis, adj. *recent*
re-cipio:, -ere, -ce:pi:, -ceptus [[re-, *back*,
+ capio:, *take*]], *take back, receive*.  
 se: recipere, *withdraw, retreat*

**Page 259**

re-cli:na:tus, -a, -um, part. of recli:no:, *leaning
back* re-crea:tus, -a, -um, part. of recreo:, *refreshed*
re:ctus, -a, -um, adj. [[part. of rego:, *keep straight*]],
*straight,  
 direct*  
re-cu:so:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *refuse* red-a:ctus,
-a, -um, part. of redigo:, *reduced, subdued*
red-eo:, -i:re, -ii:, -itus [[red-, *back*, +
eo:, *go*]], *go back,  
 return* (Sec. 413).
Cf. reverto:   
reditus, -u:s, m. [[cf. redeo:, *return*]], *return,
going back* re-du:co:, -ere, -du:xi:, -ductus [[re-,
*back*, + du:co:, *lead*]], *lead back*  
re-fero:, -ferre, rettuli:, -la:tus [[re-, *back*,
+ fero:, *bear*]], *bear back; report*.  
 pedem referre, *withdraw, retreat*  
re-ficio:, -ere, -fe:ci:, -fectus [[re-, *again*,
+ facio:, *make*]], *make again, repair*.  
 se: reficere, *refresh one’s
self*  
re:gi:na, -ae, f. [[re:x, *king*]], *queen*
regio:, -o:nis, f. *region, district* re:gnum,
-i:, n. *sovereignty; kingdom* rego:, -ere, re:xi:,
re:ctus [[cf. re:x, *king*]], *govern, rule*
(Sec.  
 490)  
re-icio:, -ere, -ie:ci:, -iectus [[re-, *back*,
+ iacio:, *hurl*]], *hurl back; throw away*  
re-linquo:, -ere, -li:qui:, -lictus [[re-, *behind*,
+ linquo:, *leave*]], *leave behind,
leave, abandon*  
reliquus, -a, -um, adj. [[cf. relinquo:, *leave*]],
*left over,  
 remaining*. As a noun,
plur. *the rest*  
remo:tus, -a, -um, adj. [[part. of re-moveo:, *remove*]],
*remote,  
 distant*  
re-moveo:, -e:re, -mo:vi:, -motus [[re-, *back*,
+ moveo:, *move*]], *remove*  
re:mus, -i:, m. *oar* re-perio:, -i:re, repperi:,
repertus, *find* re-porto:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus
[[re-, *back*, + porto:, *carry*]], *carry back, bring back,
win, gain*  
re:s, rei:, f. *thing, business, matter, deed, event,
circumstance*  
 (Sec. 467).  
 quam ob rem, *for this reason*.  
 re:s adversae, *adversity*.  
 re:s fru:menta:ria, *grain supplies*.  
 re:s gestae, *exploits*.  
 re:s milita:ris, *science of war*.  
 re:s pu:blica, *the commonwealth*.  
 re:s secundae, *prosperity*  
re-scindo:, -ere, -scidi:, -scissus [[re-, *back*,
+ scindo:, *cut*]], *cut off,
cut down*  
re-sisto:, -ere, -stiti:, ——­ [[re-,
*back*, + sisto:, *cause to  
 stand*]], *oppose, resist*,
with dat. (Sec. 501.14)  
re-spondeo:, -e:re, -spondi:, -spo:nsus [[re-, *in
return*, + spondeo:, *promise*]], answer,
reply (Sec. 420.a)  
re-verto:, -ere, -i:, ——­, or dep.
verb re-vertor, -i:, -sus sum  
 [[re-, *back*, + verto:,
*turn*]], *turn back, return*. Usually  
 active in the perf. system  
re-vincio:, -i:re, -vi:nxi:, -vi:nctus [[re-, *back*,

**Page 260**

+ vincio:, *bind*]], *fasten*  
re:x, re:gis, m. [[cf. rego:, *rule*]], *king*
Rhe:nus, -i:, m. *the Rhine*, a river of Germany
ri:pa, -ae, f. *bank* rogo:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus,
*ask*. Cf. peto:, postulo:, quaero:
Ro:ma, -ae, f. *Rome*. See map Ro:ma:nus,
-a, -um, adj. [[Ro:ma, *Rome*]], *Roman*,
follows its noun.   
 As a noun, m. and f. *a
Roman*  
rosa, -ae, f. *rose* ro:strum, -i:, n. *beak*
of a ship. In plur., *the rostra*, the  
 speaker’s stand in the
Roman Forum  
rota, -ae, f. *wheel* Rubico:, -o:nis, m. *the
Rubicon*, a river in northern Italy. See map
ru:mor, -o:ris, m. *report, rumor* ru:rsus, adv.
[[for reversus, *turned back*]], *again, in
turn* ru:s, ru:ris (locative abl. ru:ri:, no gen.,
dat., or abl. plur.), n. *the country* (Sec. 501.36.1).
Cf. ager, patria, terra

**S**

Sabi:nus, -a, -um, adj. *Sabine*. As a noun,
m. and f. *a Sabine*. The  
 Sabines were an ancient people
of central Italy. See map  
sacrum, -i:, n. [[sacer, *consecrated*]], *something
consecrated,  
 sacrifice;* usually in
plur., *religious rites*  
saepe, adv., compared saepius, saepissime:, *often,
frequently* saevus, -a, -um, adj. *cruel, savage*
sagitta, -ae, f. *arrow* salio:, -i:re, -ui:,
saltus, *jump* salu:s, -u:tis, f. *safety;
health*.  
 salu:tem di:cere, *send greetings*  
salu:to:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[salu:s, *health*]],
*greet, salute* salve:, imv. of salveo:, *hail,
greetings* sanguis, -inis, m. *blood* (Sec.
247.2.a] sa:nita:s, -a:tis, f. [[sa:nus, *sound*]],
*health, sanity* sapie:ns, -entis, adj. [[part.
of sapio:, *be wise*]], *wise,  
 sensible*  
satis, adv. and indecl. noun, *enough, sufficient,
sufficiently* saxum, -i:, n. *rock, stone*
scelus, -eris, n. *crime, sin* sce:ptrum, -i:,
n. *scepter* schola, -ae, f. *school*, the
higher grades. Cf. lu:dus scientia, -ae, f. [[scie:ns,
*knowing*]], *skill, knowledge, science*
scindo:, -ere, scidi:, scissus, *cut, tear* scio:,
-i:re, -i:vi:, -i:tus, *know* (Sec. 420.b).
Cf. cogno:sco: scri:bo:, -ere, scri:psi:, scri:ptus,
*write* scu:tum, -i:, n. *shield, buckler*
se:, see sui: se:cum = se: + cum secundus,
-a, -um, adj. [[sequor, *follow*]], *following,
next,  
 second; favorable, successful*.  
 re:s secundae, *prosperity*  
sed, conj. *but, on the contrary*.  
 no:n so:lum ... sed etiam, *not only
... but also*  
se:decim, indecl. numeral adj. *sixteen* sedeo:,
-e:re, se:di:, sessus, *sit* semper, adv. *always,
forever* sena:tus, -u:s, m. [[cf. senex, *old*]],
*council of elders, senate* sentio:, -i:re, se:nsi:,
se:nsus, *feel, know, perceive* (Sec. 420.d).

**Page 261**

Cf. intellego:, video:   
septem, indecl. numeral adj. *seven* septimus,
-a, -um, numeral adj. *seventh* sequor, -i:,
secu:tus sum, dep. verb, *follow* (Sec. 493)
serpe:ns, -entis, f. [[serpo:, *crawl*]], *serpent,
snake* sertae, -a:rum, f. plur. *wreaths, garlands*
servitu:s, -u:tis, f. [[servus, *slave*]], *slavery,
servitude* servo:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *save,
rescue, keep* servus, -i:, m. *slave* se:se:,
emphatic for se: sex, indecl. numeral adj. *six*
Sextus, -i:, m. *Sextus*, a Roman first name
si:, conj. *if* si:c, adv. *thus, in this way*.
Cf. ita, tam Sicilia, -ae, f. *Sicily*.
See map si:c-ut, *just as, as if* signifer,
-eri:, m. [[signum, *standard*, + fero:, *bear*]], *standard bearer* (p.
224)  
signum, -i:, n. *ensign, standard; signal* silva,
-ae, f. *wood, forest* similis, -e, adj., compared
similior, simillimus, *like, similar*  
 (Sec. 307)  
simul, adv. *at the same time* simul ac or simul
atque, conj. *as soon as* sine, prep. with abl.
*without* (Sec. 209) singuli:, -ae, -a, distributive
numeral adj. *one at a time, single*  
 (Sec. 334)  
sinister, -tra, -trum, adj. *left* Sinuessa,
-ae, f. *Sinues’sa*, a town in Campania.
See map sitis, -is (acc. -im, abl. -i:, no plur.),
f. *thirst* situs, -a, -um, adj. [[part. of sino:,
*set*]], *situated, placed,  
 lying*  
socius, soci:, m. *comrade, ally* so:l, so:lis
(no gen. plur.), m. *sun* soleo:, -e:re, solitus
sum, semi-dep. verb, *be wont, be accustomed*
sollicitus, -a, -um, adj. *disturbed, anxious*
so:lum, adv. [[so:lus, *alone*]], *alone, only*.  
 no:n so:lum ... sed etiam, *not only
... but also*  
so:lus, -a, -um (gen. -i:us, dat. -i:), adj. *alone,
only* (Sec. 108) solvo:, -ere, solvi:, solu:tus,
*loosen, unbind*.  
 na:vem solvere, *set sail*  
somnus, -i:, m. *sleep* soror, -o:ris, f. *sister*
spatium, spati:, n. *space, distance; time; opportunity*
specta:culum, -i:, n. [[specto:, *look at*]],
*show, spectacle* specto:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus,
*look at, witness* spe:ro:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus
[[spe:s, *hope*]], *hope, expect* (Sec.  
 420.c)  
spe:s, spei:, f. *hope* (Sec. 273.2) splendide:,
adv. [[splendidus]], compared splendidius,  
 splendidissime:, *splendidly,
handsomely*  
splendidus, -a, -um, adj. *brilliant, gorgeous,
splendid* Stabia:nus, -a, -um, *Stabian*
stabulum, -i:, n. [[cf. sto:, *stand*]], *standing
place, stable,  
 stall*  
statim, adv. [[cf. sto:, *stand*]], *on the
spot, at once, instantly* statua, -ae, f. [[sisto:,
*place, set*]], *statue* statuo:, -ere,
-ui:, -u:tus [[status, *station*]], *decide,
determine* stilus, -i:, m. *iron pencil, style*
(p. 210) sto:, -a:re, steti:, status, *stand*

**Page 262**

stra:tus, -a, -um, adj. [[part. of sterno:, *spread*]],
*paved* (of  
 streets)  
strepitus, -u:s, m. [[strepo:, *make a noise*]],
*noise, din* stringo:, -ere, stri:nxi:, strictus,
*bind tight; draw, unsheathe* studeo:, -e:re,
-ui:, ——­, *give attention to, be
eager*, with dat.   
 (Sec. 501.14)  
studium, studi:, n. [[cf. studeo:, *be eager for*]],
*eagerness,  
 desire, zeal, devotion*  
stultus, -a, -um, adj. *foolish, stupid* Stympha:lis,
-idis, adj. f. *Stymphalian, of Stympha’lus*,
a lake in  
 southern Greece  
Stympha:lus, -i:, m. *Stympha’lus*, a district
of southern Greece with a  
 town, mountain, and lake,
all of the same name  
sua:deo:, -e:re, -si:, -sus, *advise, recommend*,
with subjv. of purpose  
 (Sec. 501.41)  
sub, prep, with acc. and abl. *under, below, up
to; at* or *to the  
 foot of*  
sub-igo:, -ere, -e:gi:, -a:ctus [[sub, *under*,
+ ago:, *drive*]], *subdue, reduce*  
subito:, adv. [[subitus, *sudden*]], *suddenly*
sub-sequor, -i:, -secu:tus sum, dep. verb [[sub, *below*,
+ sequor, *follow*]], *follow
close after, follow up*  
suc-ce:do:, -ere, -cessi:, -cessus [[sub, *below*,
+ ce:do:, *go*]], *follow, succeed*  
sui:, reflexive pron. *of himself (herself, itself,
themselves)*  
 (Sec. 480).  
 se:cum = se: + cum.  
 se:se:, emphatic form of se:   
sum, esse, fui:, futu:rus, irreg. verb, *be; exist*
(Sec. 494) summus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree,
compared superus, superior,  
 supre:mus or summus (Sec.
312), *supreme, highest; best, greatest*.  
 in summo: colle, *on the top of
the hill*  
su:mo:, -ere, su:mpsi:, su:mptus, *take up; assume,
put on*.  
 su:mere supplicium de:, *inflict punishment
on*  
super, prep. with acc. and abl. *over, above*
superbia, -ae, f. [[superbus, *proud*]], *pride,
arrogance* superbus, -a, -um, adj. *proud, haughty*
superior, comp. of superus supero:, -a:re, -a:vi:,
-a:tus [[superus, *above*]], *go over; subdue,  
 overcome; surpass, excel*  
super-sum, -esse, -fui:, ——­, *be
over, survive*, with dat. (Sec.  
 501.15)  
superus, -a, -um, adj., compared superior, supre:mus
or summus, *above, upper* (Sec.
312)  
supplicium, suppli’ci:, n. [[supplex, *kneeling
in entreaty*]], *punishment, torture*.  
 supplicium su:mere de:, *inflict punishment
on*.  
 supplicium dare, *suffer punishment*  
surgo:, -ere, surre:xi:, ——­ [[sub,
*from below*, + rego:, *straighten*]], *rise*
sus-cipio:, -ere, -ce:pi:, -ceptus [[sub, *under*,
+ capio:, *take*]], *undertake, assume, begin*  
suspicor, -a:ri:, -a:tus sum, dep. verb, *suspect,
surmise, suppose* sus-tineo:, -e:re, -tinui:, -tentus
[[sub, *under*, + teneo:, *hold*]], *hold up,
bear, sustain, withstand*  
suus, -a, -um, reflexive possessive adj. and pron.,
*his, her, hers,  
 its, their, theirs* (Sec.
98)

**Page 263**

**T**

T., abbreviation of Titus taberna, -ae, f. *shop,
stall* tabula, -ae, f. *tablet* for writing
ta:lis, -e, adj. *such*.  
 ta:lis ... qua:lis, *such ... as*  
tam, adv. *so, such*. Cf. ita, si:c tamen,
adv. *yet, however, nevertheless* tandem, adv.
*at length, finally* tango:, -ere, tetigi:, ta:ctus,
*touch* tantum, adv. [[tantus]], *only*
tantus, -a, -um, adj. *so great, such*.  
 tantus ... quantus, *as large as*  
tardus, -a, -um, adj. *slow, late; lazy* Tarpe:ia,
-ae, f. *Tarpeia* (pronounced *Tar-pe:’ya*),
the maiden who  
 opened the citadel to the
Sabines  
Tarquinius, Tarqui’ni:, *Tarquin*, a Roman
king. With the surname  
 Superbus, *Tarquin the Proud*  
Tarraci:na, -ae, f. *Tarraci’na*, a town
in Latium. See map taurus, -i:, m. *bull*
te:ctus, -a, -um, adj. [[part. of tego:, *cover*]],
*covered,  
 protected*  
te:lum, -i:, n. *weapon* temere:, adv. *rashly,
heedlessly* tempesta:s, -a:tis, f. [[tempus, *time*]]
*storm, tempest* templum, -i:, n. *temple,
shrine* tempto, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *try,
test; make trial of, attempt* tempus, -oris, n.
*time* (Sec. 464.2.b).  
 in reliquum tempus, *for the future*  
teneo:, -e:re, tenui:, ——­, *hold,
keep* tergum, -i:, n. *back*, a: tergo:,
*on the rear*, tergum vertere, *retreat, flee*
terni:, -ae, -a, distributive numeral adj. *three
each, by threes*  
 (Sec. 334)  
terra, -ae, f. *earth, ground, land*.  
 orbis terra:rum, *the whole world*  
terror, -o:ris, m. [[cf. terreo:, *frighten*]],
*dread, alarm, terror* tertius, -a, -um, numeral
adj. *third* Teutone:s, -um, m. *the Teutons*
thea:trum, -i:, n. *theater* The:bae, -a:rum,
f. *Thebes*, a city of Greece The:ba:ni:, -o:rum,
m. *Thebans*, the people of Thebes thermae, -a:rum,
f. plur. *baths* Thessalia, -ae, f. *Thessaly*,
a district of northern Greece Thra:cia, -ae, f. *Thrace*,
a district north of Greece Tiberius, Tibe’ri:,
m. *Tiberius*, a Roman first name ti:bi:cen,
-i:nis, m. [[cf. ti:bia, *pipe*]], *piper, flute
player* timeo:, -e:re, -ui:, ——­,
*fear, be afraid of*. Cf. vereor timor,
-o:ris, m. [[cf. timeo:, *fear*]], *fear, dread,
alarm*.   
 Cf. metus  
Ti:ryns, Ti:rynthis, f. *Ti’ryns*, an ancient
town in southern Greece,  
 where Hercules served Eurystheus  
toga, -ae, f. [[cf. tego:, *cover*]], *toga*
tormentum, -i:, n. *engine of war* totie:ns,
adv. *so often, so many times* to:tus, -a, -um,
(gen. -i:us, dat. -i:), adj. *all, the whole,  
 entire* (Sec. 108)  
tra:-do:, -ere, -didi:, -ditus [[tra:ns, *across*,
+ do:, *deliver*]], *give up, hand over, surrender,
betray*  
tra:-du:co:, -ere, -du:xi:, -ductus [[tra:ns, *across*,

**Page 264**

+ du:co:, *lead*]], *lead across*  
traho:, -ere, tra:xi:, tra:ctus, *draw, pull, drag*.  
 multum trahere, *protract, prolong much*  
tra:-icio:, -ere, -ie:ci:, -iectus [[tra:ns, *across*,
+ iacio:, *hurl*]], *throw across;
transfix*  
tra:-no:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[tra:ns, *across*,
+ no:, *swim*]], *swim across*  
tra:ns, prep. with acc. *across, over* (Sec.
340) tra:ns-eo:, -i:re, -ii:, -itus [[tra:ns, *across*,
+ eo:, *go*]], *go  
 across, cross* (Sec. 413)  
tra:ns-fi:go:, -ere, -fi:xi:, -fi:xus [[tra:ns, *through*,
+ fi:go:, *drive*]], *transfix*  
tra:nsitus, ——­ (acc. -um, abl. -u:),
m. [[cf. tra:nseo:, *cross  
 over*]], *passage across*  
tre:s, tria, numeral adj. *three* (Sec. 479)
tri:duum, tri:dui:, n. [[tre:s, *three*, + die:s,
*days*]], *three  
 days’ time, three days*  
tri:ginta:, indecl. numeral adj. *thirty* triplex,
-icis, adj. *threefold, triple* tri:stis, -e,
adj. *sad; severe, terrible* tri:stitia, -ae,
f. [[tri:stis, *sad*]], *sadness, sorrow*
triumpho:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[triumphus, *triumph*]],
*celebrate a  
 triumph*  
triumphus, -i:, m. *triumphal procession, triumph*.  
 triumphum agere, *celebrate a triumph*  
truci:do:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *cut to pieces,
slaughter.* Cf.  
 interficio:, neco:, occi:do:   
tu:, tui: (plur. vo:s), pers. pron. *thou,
you* (Sec. 480) tuba, -ae, f. *trumpet* Tullia,
-ae, f. *Tullia*, a Roman name tum, adv. *then,
at that time* turris, -is, f. *tower* (Sec.
465.2) tu:tus, -a, -um, adj. *safe* tuus, -a,
-um, possessive adj. and pron. *your, yours* (Sec.
98)

**U**

ubi, rel. and interrog. adv. *where, when* u:llus,
-a, -um (gen. -i:us, dat. -i:), adj. *any* (Sec.
108) ulterior, -ius, -o:ris, adj. in comp. degree,
superl. ultimus, *farther, more remote*
(Sec. 315)  
ultimus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree (see ulterior),
*farthest*  
 (Sec. 315)  
umbra, -ae, f. *shade* umerus, -i:, m. *shoulder*
umquam, adv. *ever, at any time* u:na:, adv.
[[u:nus, *one*]], *in the same place, at the
same time* u:ndecimus, -a, -um, numeral adj. [[u:nus,
*one*, + decimus, *tenth*]], *eleventh*  
undique, adv. *from every quarter, on all sides,
everywhere* u:nus, -a, -um (gen. -i:us, dat. -i:),
numeral adj. *one; alone*  
 (Sec. 108)  
urbs, -is, f. *city* (Sec. 465.a) urgeo:, -e:re,
ursi:, ——­, *press upon, crowd,
hem in* u:rus, -i:, m. *wild ox, urus* u:sque,
adv. *all the way, even* u:sus, -u:s, m. *use,
advantage* ut, conj. with the subjv. *that, in
order that, that not* (with verbs  
 of fearing), *so that, to*

**Page 265**

(Sec. 350.1)  
uter, -tra, -trum (gen. -i:us, dat. -i:), interrog.
pron. *which of  
 two? which?* (Sec. 108)  
uterque, utraque, utrumque, indef. pron. *each of
two, each, both*.  
 ab utra:que parte, *on both
sides*  
u:tilis, -e, adj. [[u:tor, *use*]], *useful*
utrimque, adv. [[uterque, *each of two*]], *on
each side, on either  
 hand*  
u:va, -ae, f. *grape, bunch of grapes* uxor,
-o:ris, f. *wife*

**V**

va:gi:na, -ae, *sheath, scabbard* vagor, -a:ri:,
-a:tus sum, dep. verb, *wander* valeo:, -e:re,
-ui:, -itu:rus, *be powerful, be well*; in the
imperative  
 as a greeting, *farewell*.  
 plu:rimum vale:re, *have the most power*  
vale:tu:do:, -inis, f. [[valeo:, *be well*]],
*health* validus, -a, -um, adj. [[cf. valeo:,
*be strong*]], *strong, able,  
 well*  
valle:s, -is, f. *valley* va:llum, -i:, n. *rampart,
earthworks* varius, -a, -um, adj. *bright-colored*
va:sto:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[va:stus, *empty*]],
*(make empty),  
 devastate, lay waste*  
vecti:gal, -a:lis, n. *tax, tribute* vehementer,
adv. [[veheme:ns, *eager*]], compared vehementius,  
 vehementissime:, *eagerly,
vehemently*  
veho:, -ere, vexi:, vectus, *convey, carry*.
In the passive often in the  
 sense of *ride, sail*  
vel, conj. *or*.  
 vel ... vel, *either ... or*.
Cf. aut  
ve:lo:cita:s, -a:tis, f. [[ve:lo:x, *swift*]],
*swiftness* ve:lo:x, -o:cis, adj. *swift, fleet*
ve:lum, -i:, n. *sail* ve:ndo:, -ere, ve:ndidi:,
ve:nditus, *sell* venio:, -i:re, ve:ni:, ventus,
*come, go* ventus, -i:, m. *wind* verbum,
-i:, n. *word*.  
 verba facere pro:, *speak in behalf
of*  
vereor, -e:ri:, -itus sum, dep. verb, *fear; reverence,
respect*  
 (Sec. 493). Cf. timeo:   
Vergilius, Vergi’li:, m. *Vergil*, the
poet vergo:, -ere, ——­, ——­,
*turn, lie* ve:ro:, adv. [[ve:rus, *true*]],
*in truth, surely;* conj. *but,  
 however*.  
 tum ve:ro:, *then you may be sure*,
introducing the climax of a story  
verto:, -ere, -ti:, -sus, *turn, change*.  
 tergum vertere, *retreat, flee*  
ve:rus, -a, -um, *true, actual* vesper, -eri:,
m. *evening* vester, -tra, -trum, possessive
adj. and pron. *your, yours* (Sec. 98) vesti:gium,
vesti:’gi:, n. [[cf. vesti:go:, *track*]],
*footstep, track,  
 trace*  
vesti:mentum, -i:, n. [[vestis, *clothing*]],
*garment* vestio:, -i:re, -i:vi:, -i:tus [[vestis,
*clothing*]], *clothe, dress* vestis, -is,
f. *clothing, attire, garment, robe* vesti:tus,
-a, -um, adj. [[part. of vestio:, *clothe*]],
*clothed* Vesuvius, Vesu’vi, m. *Vesuvius*,
the volcano near Pompeii. See map vetera:nus,
-a, -um, adj. *old, veteran* veto:, -a:re, -ui:,

**Page 266**

-itus, *forbid, prohibit* vexo:, -a:re, -a:vi:,
-a:tus, *trouble, annoy* via, -ae, f. *way,
road, street; way, manner*. Cf. iter via:tor,
-o:ris, m. [[via]], *traveler* victor, -o:ris,
m. [[vinco:, *conquer*]], *conqueror, victor*.
In  
 apposition, with adj. force
\_ victorious\_  
victo:ria, -ae, f. [victor, *victor*], *victory*
vi:cus, -i:, m. *village* video:, -e:re, vi:di:,
vi:sus, *see, perceive*. Pass. *be seen;
seem*  
 (Sec. 420.d)  
vigilia,-ae, f. [[vigil *awake*]], watch.  
 de: tertia vigilia, *about the
third watch*  
vi:ginti:, indecl. numeral adj. *twenty* vi:licus,
-i:, m. [[vi:lla, *farm*]], *steward, overseer
of a farm* vi:lla, -ae, f. *farm, villa*
vincio:, -i:re, vi:nxi:, vi:nctus, *bind, tie,fetter*
vinco:, -ere, vi:ci:, victus, *conquer, defeat, overcome*.
Cf. subigo:,  
 supero:   
vi:nea, -ae, f. *shed* (p. 219) vi:num, -i:,
n. *wine* violenter, adv. [[violentus, *violent*]],
compared violentius,  
 violentissime:, *violently,
furiously*  
vir, viri:, m. *man, husband; hero* (Sec. 462.c)
viri:lis, -e, adj. [[vir, *man*]], *manly*
virtu:s, -u:tis, f. [[vir, *man*]], *manliness;
courage, valor;  
 virtue* (Sec. 464.1)  
vi:s, (vi:s), f. *strength, power, might, violence*
(Sec. 468) vi:ta, -ae, f. [[cf. vi:vo:, *live*]],
*life*, vi:tam agere, *spend or  
 pass life*  
vi:to, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *shun, avoid*
vi:vo:, -ere, vi:xi:, ——­, *live*.
Cf. habito:, incolo: vi:vus, -a, -um, adj. [[cf.
vi:vo:, *live*]], *alive, living* vix, adv.
*scarcely, hardly* voco:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus,
*call, summon, invite*. Cf. appello:,  
 no:mino:   
volo:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tu:rus, *fly* volo:,
velle, volui:, ——­, irreg. verb, *will,
be willing; wish*  
 (Sec. 497). Cf. cupio  
volu:men, -inis, n. *roll, book* Vore:nus, -i:,
m. *Vore’nus*, a centurion vo:s, pers.
pron.; *you* (see tu:) (Sec. 480) vo:tum, -i:,
n. [[neut. part. of voveo:, *vow*]], *vow, pledge,
prayer* vo:x, vo:cis, f. [[cf. voco:, *call*]],
*voice, cry; word* vulnero:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus
[[vulnus, *wound*]], *wound, hurt* vulnus,
-eris, n. *wound, injury* vulpe:s, -i:s, f. *fox*  
 [Illustration: EQUES ROMANUS]

**ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY**

This vocabulary contains only the words used in the
English-Latin exercises. For details not given
here, reference may be made to the Latin-English vocabulary.
The figures 1, 2, 3, 4, after verbs indicate the conjugation.

**A**

**Page 267**

a, an, *commonly not translated* able (be),
possum, posse, potui:, ——­(Sec. 495)
abode, domicilium, domici’li:, *n.* about
(*adv.*), circiter about (*prep.*), de:,
*with abl.* about to, *expressed by fut. act.
part.* abundance, co:pia, -ae, *f.* across,
tra:ns, *with acc.* active, a:cer, a:cris, a:cre
advance, pro:gredior, 3 advantage, u:sus, -u:s, *m.*
advise, moneo:, 2 after (*conj*.), postquam;
*often expressed by the perf. part.* after (*prep.*),
post, *with acc.* against, in, contra:, *with
acc.* aid, auxilium, auxi’li:, *n.*
all, omnis, -e; to:tus, -a, -um (Sec. 108) allow,
patior, 3 ally, socius, soci:, *m.* almost,
paene; fere: alone, u:nus, -a, -um; so:lus, -a,
-um (Sec. 108) already, iam also, quoque always,
semper ambassador, le:ga:tus, -i:, *m.* among,
apud, *with acc.* ancient, anti:quus, -a, -um
and, et; atque (ac); -que and so, itaque Andromeda,
Andromeda, -ae, *f.* angry, i:ra:tus, -a, um
animal, animal, -a:lis, *n.* announce, nu:ntio:,
1 annoying, molestus, -a, -um another, alius, -a,
-ud (Sec. 109) any, u:llus, -a, -um (Sec. 108) any
one, anything, quisquam, quicquam *or* quidquam
(Sec. 486) appearance, fo:rma, -ae, *f.* appoint,
creo:, 1 approach, adpropinquo:, 1, *with dat.*
are, *used as auxiliary, not translated*; *as
a copula*, sum (Sec. 494) arise, orior, 4 arm,
bracchium, bracchi:, *n.* armed, arma:tus, -a,
-um arms, arma, -o:rum, *n. plur.* army, exercitus,
-u:s, *m.* around, circum, *with acc.*
arrival, adventus, -us, *m.* arrow, sagitta,
-ae, *f.* art of war, re:s mi:lita:ris as possible,
*expressed by* quam *and superl.*. ask,
peto:, 3; quaero:, 3; rogo:, 1 assail, oppugno:, 1
at, in, *with acc. or abl.;  
 with names of towns, locative case or
abl. without a preposition*  
 (Sec. 268); *time when, abl.*  
at once, statim at the beginning of summer, inita:
aesta:te Athens, Athe:nae, -a:rum, *f.* attack,
impetus, -us, *m.* attempt, co:nor, 1; tempto:,
1 away from, a: *or* ab, *with abl.*

**B**

bad, malus, -a, -um baggage, impedi:menta, -o:rum,
*n. plur.* bank, ri:pa, -ae, *f.* barbarians,
barbari:, -o:rum, *m. plur.* battle, proelium,
proeli:, *n.*; pugna, -ae. *f.* be, sum
(Sec. 494) be absent, be far, absum (Sec. 494) be
afraid, timeo:, 2; vereor, 2 be away, absum (Sec.
494) be in command of, praesum, *with dat.* (Secs.
494, 426) be informed, certior fi:o: be off,
be distant, absum (Sec. 494) be without, egeo:, *with
abl.* (Sec. 180) beast (wild), fera, -ae, *f.*
beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum because, quia; quod
because of, propter, *with acc.*; *or abl. of
cause* before, heretofore (*adv.*), antea:
before (*prep.*), ante, *with acc.*; pro:,
*with abl.* begin, incipio:, 3 believe, cre:do:,

**Page 268**

3, *with dat.* (Sec. 153) belong to, *predicate
genitive* (Sec. 409) best, optimus, *superl.
of* bonus betray, tra:do:, 3 better, melior, *comp.
of* bonus between, inter, *with acc.* billow,
fluctus, -us, *m.* bird, avis, -is, *f.*
(Sec. 243.1) blood, sanguis, -inis, *m.* body,
corpus, -oris. *n.* bold, auda:x, -a:cis; fortis,
-e boldly, auda:cter; fortiter boldness, auda:cia,
-ae, *f.* booty, praeda, -ae, *f.* both,
each (*of two*), uterque, utraque, utrumque both
... and, et ... et boy, puer, -eri:, *m.* brave,
fortis, -e bravely, fortiter bridge, po:ns, pontis,
*m.* bright, cla:rus, -a, -um bring back, reporto:,
1 bring upon, i:nfero:, -ferre, -tuli:, -la:tus, *with
acc. and dat.*  
 (Sec. 426)  
brother, fra:ter, -tris, *m.* building, aedificium,
aedifi’ci:. *n.* burn, cremo:, 1; incendo:,
3 business, nego:tium, nego:’ti:, *n.*
but, however, autem, sed by, a:, ab, *with abl.*; *denoting means, abl. alone*; *sometimes implied in a
participle*  
by night, noctu:

**C**

Caesar, Caesar, -aris, *m.* calamity, calamita:s,
-a:tis, *f.* call, voco:, 1; appello:, 1; no:mino:,
1 call together, convoco:, 1 camp, castra, -o:rum,
*n. plur.* can, could, possum, posse, potui:,
——­ (Sec. 495) capture, capio:, 3;
occupo:, 1 care, cu:ra, -ae, *f.* care for,
cu:ro:, 1 careful, attentus, -a, -um carefulness,
di:ligentia, -ae, *f.* carry, fero:, ferre, tuli:,
la:tus (Sec. 498); porto:, 1 carry on, gero:, 3 cart,
carrus, -i:, *m.* cause, causa, -ae, *f.*
cavalry, equita:tus, -u:s, *m.* cease, cesso:,
1 Cepheus, Ce:pheus, -i:, *m.* certain (a),
qui:dam, quaedam, quoddam (quiddam) (Sec. 485) chicken,
galli:na, -ae, *f.* chief, pri:nceps, -cipis,
*m.* children, li:beri:, -o:rum, *m. plur.*
choose, de:ligo:, 3 choose, elect, creo:, 1 citizen,
ci:vis, -is, *m. and f.* (Sec. 243.1) city, urbs,
urbis, *f.* clear, cla:rus, -a, -um cohort,
cohors, -rtis, *f.* come, venio:, 4 command,
impero:, 1, *with dat.* (Sec. 45);  
 iubeo:, 2;  
 praesum, *with dat.* (Sec. 426)  
commit, committo:, 3 commonwealth, re:s pu:blica,
rei: pu:blicae concerning, de:, *with abl.*
conquer, supero:, 1; vinco:, 3 construct (*a ditch*),
perdu:co:, 3 consul, co:nsul, -ulis, *m.* contrary
to, contra:, *with acc.* Corinth, Corinthus,
-i:, *f.* Cornelia, Corne:lia, -ae, *f.*
Cornelius, Corne:lius, Corne:’li, *m.*
corselet, lo:ri:ca, -ae, *f.* cottage, casa,
-ae, *f.* country, *as distinguished from the
city*, ru:s, ru:ris, *n.;  
 as territory*, fi:ne:s, -ium, *m.,
plur. of* fi:nis  
courage, virtu:s, -u:tis, *f.* crime, scelus,
-eris, *n.* cross, tra:nseo:, 4 (Sec. 499) crown,
coro:na, -ae, *f.*

**D**

**Page 269**

daily, coti:die: danger, peri:culum, -i:, *n.*
daughter, fi:lia, -ae, *f.* (Sec. 67) day, die:s,
-e:i:, *m.* daybreak, pri:ma lu:x dear, ca:rus,
-a, -um death, mors, mortis, *f.* deed, re:s,
rei:, *f.* deep, altus, -a, -um defeat, calamita:s,
-a:tis, *f.* defend, de:fendo:, 3 delay (*noun*),
mora, -ae, *f.* delay (*verb*), moror, 1
demand, postulo:, 1 dense, de:nsus, -a, -um depart,
disce:do:, 3; exeo:, 4; profici:scor, 3 dependent,
clie:ns, -entis, *m.* design, co:nsilium, consi’li:
*n.* desire, cupio:, 3 destroy, de:leo:, 2
Diana, Dia:na, -ae, *f.* differ, differo:, differre,
distuli:, di:la:tus (Sec. 498) different, dissimilis,
-e difficult, difficilis, -e difficulty, difficulta:s,
-a:tis, *f.* diligence, di:ligentia, -ae, *f.*
dinner, ce:na, -ae, *f.* disaster, calamita:s,
-a:tis, *f.* distant (be), absum, -esse, a:fui:,
a:futu:rus (Sec. 494) ditch, fossa, -ae, *f.*
do, ago:, 3; facio:, 3; *when used as auxiliary, not translated*  
down from, de:, *with abl.* drag, traho:, 3
drive, ago:, 3 dwell, habito:, 1; incolo:, 3; vi:vo:,
3 dwelling, aedificium, aedifi’ci:, *n.*

**E**

each, quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque) (Sec. 484)
each of two, uterque, utraque, utrumque each other,
inter *with acc. of a reflexive* eager, a:cer,
a:cris, a:cre; alacer, alacris, alacre eager (be),
studeo:, 2 eagerness, studium, studi:, *n.*
eagle, aquila, -ae, *f.* easily, facile easy,
facilis, -e either ... or, aut ... aut empire, imperium,
impe’ri:, *n.* employ, nego:tium do:
encourage, hortor, 1 enemy, hostis, -is, *m. and
f.*; inimi:cus, -i:, *m.* enough, satis entire,
to:tus, -a, -um (Sec. 108) expectation, opi:nio:,
-o:nis, *f.* eye, oculus, -i:, *m.*

**F**

faithless, perfidus, -a, -um famous, cla:rus, -a,
-um far, longe: farmer, agricola, -ae, *m.*
farther, ulterior, -ius father, pater, patris, *m.*
fatherland, patria, -ae, *f.* favor, faveo:,
2 favorable, ido:neus, -a,-um; secundus, -a, -um
fear, metus, -u:s, *m.*; timor, -o:ris, *m.*
fear, be afraid, timeo:, 2 few, pauci:, -ae, -a field,
ager, agri:, *m.* fifteen, qui:ndecim fight,
contendo:, 3; pugno:, 1 find, reperio:, 4 finish,
co:nficio:, 3 fire, ignis, -is, *m.* (Sec. 243.1)
firmness, co:nstantia, -ae, *f.* first, pri:mus,
-a, -um flee, fugio:, 3 flight, fuga, -ae, *f.*
fly, volo:, 1 foe, see enemy follow close after,
subsequor, 3 food, cibus, -i:, *m.* foot, pe:s,
pedis, *m.* foot-soldier, pedes, -itis, *m.*
for (*conj.*), enim, nam for (*prep.*),
*sign of dat.*;  
 de:, pro:, *with abl.;  
 to express purpose*, ad, *with gerundive;  
 implied in acc. of time and of extent
of space*  
for a long time, diu: forbid, veto:, 1 forces,

**Page 270**

co:piae, -a:rum, *f., plur. of* co:pia forest,
silva, -ae, *f.* fort, castellum, -i:, *n.*;
castrum, -i:, *n.* fortification, mu:nitio:,
-o:nis, *f.* fortify, mu:nio:, 4 fortune, fortu:na,
-ae, *f.* fourth, qua:rtus, -a, -um free, li:ber,
-era, -erum free, liberate, li:bero:, 1 frequent,
cre:ber, -bra, -brum friend, ami:cus, -i:, *m.*
friendly (*adj.*), ami:cus, -a, -um friendly
(*adv.*), ami:ce: friendship, ami:citia,
-ae, *f.* frighten, perterreo:, 2 from, a:
*or* ab, de:, e:, ex, *with abl.  
Often expressed by the separative ablative
without a prep.*  
from each other, inter, *with acc. of a reflexive
pron.* full, ple:nus, -a, -um

**G**

Galba, Galba, -ae, *m.  
garland*, coro:na, -ae, *f.*  
garrison, praesidium, praesi’di:, *n.*  
gate, porta, -ae, *f.*  
Gaul, Gallia, -ae, *f.*  
Gaul (a), Gallus, -i:, *m.*  
general, impera:tor, -o:ris, *m.*  
Geneva, Gena:va, -ae, *f.*  
gentle, le:nis, -e  
German, Germa:nus, -a, -um  
Germans (the), Germa:ni:, -o:rum, *m. plur*.   
Germany, Germa:nia, -ae, *f.*  
get (*dinner*), paro:, 1  
girl, puella, -ae, *f.*  
give, do:, dare, dedi:, datus  
give over, surrender, de:do:, 3; tra:do:, 3  
give up, omitto:, 3  
go, eo:, 4 (Sec. 499)  
go forth, pro:gredior, 3  
god, deus, -i:, *m.* (Sec. 468)  
goddess, dea, -ae, *f.* (Sec. 67)  
gold, aurum, -i:, *n.*  
good, bonus, -a, -um  
grain, fru:mentum, -i:, *n.*  
grain supply, re:s fru:menta:ria  
great, inge:ns, -entis; magnus, -a, -um  
greatest, maximus, -a, -um; summus, -a, -um  
guard, praesidium, praesi’di:, *n.*

**H**

hand, manus, -u:s, *f.* happy, laetus, -a, -um
harbor, portus, -u:s, *m.* hasten, contendo:,
3; ma:tu:ro:, 1; propero:, 1 hateful, invi:sus, -a,
-um haughty, superbus, -a, -um have, habeo:, 2 have
no power, nihil possum he, is; hic; iste; ille; *or
not expressed* head, caput, -itis, *n.* hear,
audio: heart, animus, -i:, *m.* heavy,
gravis, -e Helvetii (the), Helve:tii:, -o:rum, *m.
plur.* hem in, contineo:, 2 hen, galli:na, -ae,
*f.* her, eius; huius; isti:us; illi:us; *reflexive*, suus, -a, -um (Sec.
116)  
hide, abdo:, 3 high, altus, -a, -um highest, summus,
-a, -um hill, collis, -is, *m.* himself, sui:.
See self hindrance, impedi:mentum, -i:, *n.*
his, eius; huius; isti:us; illi:us; *reflexive*, suus, -a, -um (Sec.
116)  
hither, citerior, -ius (Sec. 315) hold, teneo:, 2
home, domus, -u:s, *f.* (Sec. 468).  
 at home, domi: (Sec. 267)  
hope (*noun*), spe:s, spei:, *f.* hope
(*verb*), spe:ro:, 1 horse, equus, -i:, *m.*
horseman, eques, -itis, *m.* hostage, obses,
-idis, *m. and f.* hostile, inimi:cus, -a, -um
hour, ho:ra, -ae, *f.* house, domicilium, domici’li:,
*n.*; domus, -u:s, *f.* (Sec. 468) hurl,
iacio:, 3

**Page 271**

**I**

I, ego (Sec. 280); *or not expressed* if, si:.  
 if not, nisi  
ill, aeger, -gra, -grum immediately, statim in (*of
place*), in, *with abl.*;  
 (of time or of specification) *abl.
without prep.*  
in order that, ut, *with subjv.*;  
 in order that not, lest, ne:, *with
subjv.*  
in vain, fru:stra: industry, di:ligentia, -ae,
*f.* inflict injuries upon, iniu:ria:s i:nfero:
*with dat.* (Sec. 426) inflict punishment on,
supplicium su:mo: de inform some one, aliquem
certio:rem facio: injure, noceo:, 2, *with
dat.* (Sec. 153) injury, iniu:ria, -ae, *f.*
into, in, *with acc.* intrust, committo:, 3;
mando:, 1 invite, voco:, 1 is, *used as auxiliary,
not translated*; *as a copula*, sum (Sec. 494)  
island, i:nsula, -ae, *f.* it, is; hie; iste;
ille; *or not expressed* Italy, Italia, -ae,
*f.* its, eius; huius; isti:us; illi:us; *reflexive*, suus, -a, -um (Sec.
116)  
itself, sui:. See self

**J**

join battle, proelium committo: journey, iter,
itineris, *n.* (Sec. 468) judge (*noun*),
iu:dex, -icis, *m.* judge (*verb*), iu:dico:,
1 Julia, Iu:lia, -ae, *f.* just now, nu:per

**K**

keep, contineo:, 2; prohibeo, 2; teneo:, 2 keep on
doing something, *expressed by the impf. indic.*
kill, interficio:, 3; neco:, 1; occi:do:, 3 king,
re:x, re:gis, *m.* kingdom, re:gnum, -i:, *n.*
know, cogno:sco:, 3, *in perf.*; scio:, 4

**L**

labor (*noun*), labor, -o:ris, *m.* labor
(*verb*), labo:ro:, 1 lack (*noun*), inopia,
-ae, *f.* lack (*verb*), egeo:, 2, *with
abl.* (Sec. 180) lady, domina, -ae, *f.*
lake, lacus, -u:s, *m.* (Sec. 260.2) land, terra,
-ae, *f.* language, lingua, -ae, *f.* large,
inge:ns, -entis; magnus, -a, -um larger, maior, maius
lately, nu:per Latona, La:to:na, -ae, *f.* law,
le:x, le:gis, *f.* lay waste, va:sto:, 1 lead,
du:co, 3 leader, dux, ducis, *m. and f.* learn,
know, cogno:sco:, 3 leave, depart from, disce:do:,
3 leave behind, abandon, relinquo:, 3 left, sinister,
-tra, -trum legion, legio:, -o:nis, *f.* legionaries,
legio:na:rii:, -o:rum, *m. plur.* length, longitu:do:,
-inis, *f.* lest, ne:, *with subjv.* letter
(*of the alphabet*), littera, -ae, *f*;  
 (*an epistle*) litterae, -a:rum,
*f. plur*.  
lieutenant, le:ga:tus, -i:, *m.* light, lu:x,
lu:cis, *f.* like (*adj.*), similis, -e
like, love, amo:, 1 line of battle, acie:s, acie:i:,
*f.* little, parvus, -a, -um live, habito:,
1; incolo:, 3; vi:vo:, 3 long, longus, -a, -um long,
for a long time, diu: long for, de:si:dero:,
1 look after, cu:ro:, 1 love, amo:, 1

**Page 272**

**M**

maid, maid servant, ancilla, -ae,\_f.\_ make, facio:,
3 make war upon, bellum i:nfero: *with dat.*
(Sec. 426) man, homo:, -inis, *m. and f.*; vir,
viri:, *m.* man-of-war, na:vis longa many, multi:,
-ae, -a, *plur. of* multus march, iter, itineris,
*n.* (Sec. 468) Mark, Ma:rcus, -i:, *m.*
marriage, ma:trimo:nium, ma:trimo:’ni:, *n.*
master, dominus, -i:, *m.*; magi:ster, -tri:,
*m.* matter, nego:tium, nego:’ti:, *n.*;
re:s, rei:, *f.* means, by means of, *the abl.*
messenger, nu:ntius, nu:nti:, *m.* midnight,
media nox mile, mi:lle passuum (Sec. 331.b) miles,
mi:lia passuum mind, animus, -i:, *m.*; me:ns,
mentis, *f.* mine, meus, -a, -um mistress, domina,
-ae, *f.* money, pecu:nia, -ae, *f.* monster,
mo:nstrum, -i:, *n.* month, me:nsis, -is, *m.*
moon, lu:na, -ae, *f.* more (*adj.*), plu:s,
plu:ris (Sec. 313); *or a comparative. Adverb*,  
 magis  
most (*adj.*), plu:rimus, -a, -um; *superl. degree. Adverb*, maxime:;
plu:rimum  
mother, ma:ter, ma:tris, *f.* mountain, mo:ns,
montis, *m.* move, moveo:, 2 moved, commo:tus,
-a, -um much (by), multo: multitude, multitu:do:,
-inis. *f.* my, meus, -a, -um myself, me:, *reflexive*.
See self

**N**

name, no:men, -inis, *n.* nation, ge:ns, gentis,
*f.* near, propinquus, -a, -um nearest, proximus,
-a, -um nearly, fere: neighbor, fi:nitimus,
-i:, *in.* neighboring, fi:initimus, -a, -um
neither, neque *or* nec;  
 neither ... nor, neque (nec) ... neque
(nec)  
never, numquam nevertheless, tamen new, novus, -a,
-um next day, postri:die: eius die:i: next
to, proximus, -a, -um night, nox, noctis, *f.*
nine, novem no, minime:; *or repeat verb with a
negative* (Sec. 210) no, none, nu:llus, -a, -um
(Sec. 109) no one, ne:mo:, nu:lli:us nor, neque *or*
nec not, no:n not even, ne: ... quidem not
only ... but also, no:n so:lum ... sed etiam nothing,
nihil *or* nihilum, -i:, *n.* now, nunc
number, numerus, -i:, *m.*

**O**

obey, pa:reo:, 2, *with dat.* (Sec. 153) of,
*sign of gen.*;  
 de:, *with abl.*;  
 out of, e: *or* ex, *with
abl.*  
often, saepe on (*of place*), in, *with abl.*;  
 (*of time*) *abl. without prep.*  
on account of, propter, *with acc.*; *or abl.
of cause.* on all sides, undique once (*upon
a time*), o:lim one, u:nus, -a, -um (Sec. 108)
one ... another, alius ... alius (Sec. 110) only (*adv.*),
so:lum; tantum opportune, opportunus, -a, -um opposite,
adversus, -a, -um oracle, o:ra:culum, -i:, *n.*
orator, o:ra:tor, -o:ris, *m.* order, impero:,
1; iubeo:, 2 ornament, o:rna:mentum, -i:, *n.*
other, alius, -a, -ud (Sec. 109) others (the), reliqui:,
-o:rum, *m. plur.* ought, de:beo:, 2 our, noster,
-tra, -trum ourselves, no:s, *as reflexive object.*
See self overcome, supero:, 1; vinco:, 3 own (his,
her, its, their), suus, -a, -um

**Page 273**

**P**

part, pars, partis, *f.* peace, pa:x, pa:cis,
*f.* people, populus, -i:, *m.* Perseus,
Perseus, -i:, *m.* persuade, persua:deo:, 2,
*with dat.* (Sec. 153) pitch camp, castra po:no:
place (*noun*), locus, -i:, *m.* place,
arrange, conloco:, 1 place, put, po:no:, 3 place
in command, praeficio:, 3, *with acc. and dat.*
(Sec. 426) plan (a), co:nsilium, co:nsi’li:,
*n.* please, placeo:, 2, *with dat.* (Sec.
154) pleasing, gra:tus, -a, -um plow, aro:, 1 Pompeii,
Pompe:ii:, -o:rum, *m. plur.* possible (as),
*expressed by* quam *and superl*. powerful
(be), valeo:, 2 praise, laudo:, 1 prefer, ma:lo:,
ma:lle, ma:lui:, ——­ (Sec. 497) prepare
for, paro:, 1, *with acc.* press hard, premo:,
3 protection, fide:s, fidei:, *f.* province,
pro:vincia, -ae, *f.* public, pu:blicus, -a,
-um Publius, Pu:blius, Pu:bli:, *m.* punishment,
poena, -ae, *f.*; supplicium, suppli’ci:,
*n.* purpose, for the purpose of, ut, qui:, *or*
quo:, *with subjv.*;  
 ad, *with gerund or gerundive*;  
 causa:, *following the genitive of a
gerund or gerundive*  
pursue, i:nsequor, 3

**Q**

queen, re:gi:na, -ae, *f.* quickly, celeriter
quite, *expressed by the comp. degree*

**R**

rampart, va:llum, -i:, *n.* rear, novissimum
agmen reason, causa, -ae, *f.* receive, accipio:,
3; excipio:, 3 recent, rece:ns, -entis recently,
nu:per redoubt, castellum, -i:, *n.* refuse,
recu:so:, 1 remain, maneo:, 2 remaining, reliquus,
-a, -um reply, respondeo:, 2 report (*noun*),
fama, -ae, *f.*; ru:mor, -o:ris, *m.* report
(*verb*), adfero:; de:fero:; refero: (Sec.
498) republic, re:s pu:blica require, postulo:, 1
resist, resisto:, 3, *with dat.* (Sec. 154) rest
(the), reliqui:, -o:rum, *m. plur.* restrain,
contineo:, 2 retainer, clie:ns, -entis, *m.*
retreat, pedem refero:; terga verto: return,
redeo:, 4; revertor, 3 revolution, re:s novae Rhine,
Rhe:nus, -i:, *m.* right, dexter, -tra, -trum
river, flu:men, -inis, *n.*; fluvius, fluvi:,
*m.* road, via, -ae, *f.* Roman, Ro:ma:nus,
-a, -um Rome, Ro:ma, -ae, *f.* row, o:rdo:,
-inis, *m.* rule, rego:, 3 rumor, fa:ma, -ae,
*f.*; ru:mor, -o:ris, *m.* run, curro:,
3

**S**

sacrifice, sacrum, -i:, *n.* safety, salu:s,
-u:tis, *f.* sail, na:vigo:, 1 sailor, nauta,
-ae, *m.* sake, for the sake of, causa:, *following
a gen.* same, i:dem, eadem, idem (Sec. 287) savages,
barbari:, -o:rum, *m. plur.* save, servo:, 1
say, di:co:, 3 school, lu:dus, -i:, *m.*; schola,
-ae, *f.* scout, explo:ra:tor, -o:ris, *m.*
sea, mare, -is, *n.* second, secundus, -a, -um

**Page 274**

see, video:, 2 seek, peto:, 3 seem, videor, 2, *passive
of* video: seize, occupo:, 1; rapio:, 3 self,
ipse, -a, -um (Sec. 286); sui: (Sec. 281) send,
mitto:, 3 set fire to, incendo:, 3 set out, profici:scor,
3 seven, septem Sextus, Sextus, -i:, *m.* she,
ea; haec; ista; illa (Sec. 115); *or not expressed*  
ship, na:vis, -is, *f.* (Sec. 243.1) short,
brevis, -e shout, cla:mor, -o:ris, *m.* show,
de:mo:nstro:, 1 Sicily, Sicilia, -ae, *f.* sick,
aeger, -gra, -grum side, latus, -eris, *n.*
siege, obsidio:, -o:nis, *f.* since, cum, *with
subjv.* (Sec. 396); *the abl. abs.* (Sec. 381)  
sing, cano:, 3; canto:, 1 sister, soror, -o:ris,
*f.* sit, sedeo:, 2 size, magnitu:do:, -inis,
*f.* skillful, peri:tus, -a, -um slave, servus,
-i:, *m.* slavery, servitiu:s, -u:tis, *f.*
slow, tardus, -a, -um small, parvus, -a, -um snatch,
rapio:, 3 so, ita; si:c; tam so great, tantus, -a,
-um so that, ut;  
 so that not, ut no:n  
soldier, mi:les, -itis, *m.* some, *often
not expressed*;  
 quis (qui:), qua (quae), quid (quod);
aliqui:, aliqua, aliquod  
some one, quis; aliquis (Sec. 487) some ... others,
alii: ... alii: (Sec. 110) something, quid;
aliquid (Sec. 487) son, fi:lius, fi:li:, *m.*
soon, mox space, spatium, spati:, *n.* spear,
pi:lum, -i:, *n.* spirited, a:cer, a:cris, a:cre;
alacer, alacris, alacre spring, fo:ns, fontis, *m.*
spur, calcar, -a:ris, *n.* stand, sto:, 1 state,
ci:vita:s, -a:tis, *f.* station, conloco:, 1
steadiness, co:nstantia, -ae, *f.* stone, lapis,
-idis, *m.* storm, oppugno:, 1 story, fa:bula,
-ae, *f.* street, via, -ae, *f.* strength,
vi:s, (vi:s), *f.* strong, fortis, -e; validus,
-a, -um sturdy, validus, -a, -um such, ta:lis, -e
suddenly, subito: suffer punishment, supplicium
do: sufficiently, satis suitable, ido:neus,
-a, -um summer, aesta:s, -a:tis, *f.* sun, so:l,
so:lis, *m.* supplies, commea:tus, -u:s, *m.*
surrender, tra:do:, 3 suspect, suspicor, 1 swift,
celer, -eris, -ere; ve:lo:x, -o:cis sword, gladius,
gladi:, *m.*

**T**

take, capture, capio:, 3 take part in, intersum,
-esse, -fui:, -futu:rus, *with dat.* (Sec. 426)
take possession of, occupo:, 1 tall, altus, -a, -um
task, opus, operis, *n.* teach, doceo:, 2 teacher,
magister, -tri:, *m.* tear (*noun*), lacrima,
-ae, *f.* tell, di:co:, 3; na:rro:, 1 ten, decem
terrified, perterritus, -a, -um terrify, perterreo:,
2 than, quam that (*conj. after verbs of saying
and the like*), *not expressed* that (*pron.*),
is; iste; ille that, in order that, *in purpose
clauses*, ut; *after verbs of fearing*, ne:
(Secs. 349, 366, 372) that not, lest, *in purpose
clauses*, ne:; *after verbs of fearing*, ut (Secs.
349, 366, 372)  
the, *not expressed* their, *gen. plur. of*

**Page 275**

is; *reflexive*, suus, -a, -um (Sec. 116) their
own, suus, -a, -um (Sec. 116) then, at that time,
tum then, in the next place, deinde, tum there, *as
expletive, not expressed* there, in that place,
ibi therefore, itaque they, ii:; hi:; isti:; illi:; *or not expressed*  
think, arbitror, 1; exi:stimo:, 1; puto:, 1 third,
tertius, -a, -um this, hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id
though, cum. *with subjv.* (Sec. 396) thousand,
mi:lle (Sec. 479) three, tre:s, tria (Sec. 479) through,
per, *with acc.* thy, tuus, -a, -um time, tempus,
-oris, *n.* to, *sign of dat.*;  
 ad, in, *with acc.*; *expressing purpose*, ut, qui:, *with
subjv.*;  
 ad, *with gerund or gerundive*  
to each other, inter, *with acc. of a reflexive
pron.* to-day, hodie: tooth, de:ns, dentis,
*m.* top of, summus, -a, -um tower, turris,
-is, *f.* (Sec. 243.2) town, oppidum, -i:, *n.*
townsman, oppida:nus, -i:, *m.* trace, vesti:gium,
vesti:’gi:, *n.* trader, merca:tor, -o:ris,
*m.* train, exerceo:, 2 tree, arbor, -oris,
*f.* tribe, ge:ns, gentis, *f.* troops,
co:piae, -a:rum, *f. plur.* true, ve:rus, -a,
-um trumpet, tuba, -ae, *f.* try, co:nor, 1;
tempto:, 1 twelve, duodecim two, duo, duae, duo (Sec.
479)

**U**

under, sub, *with acc. or abl.* undertake, suscipio:,
3 unharmed, incolumis, -e unless, nisi unlike, dissimilis,
-e unwilling (be), no:lo:, no:lle, no:lui:, ——­
(Sec. 497) up to, sub, *with acc.* us, no:s,
*acc. plur. of* ego

**V**

very, *superl. degree*; maxime:; ipse, -a, -um
(Sec. 285) victor, victor, -o:ris, *m.* victory,
victo:ria, -ae, *f.* village, vi:cus, -i:, *m.*
violence, vi:s, (vi:s), *f.* violently, vehementer
voice, vo:x, vo:cis, *f.*

**W**

wage, gero:, 3 wagon, carrus. -i:, *m.* wall,
mu:rus, -i:, *m.* want, inopia, -ae, *f.*
war, bellum, -i:, *n.* watch, vigilia, -ae, *f.*
water, aqua, -ae, *f.* wave, fluctus, -u:s, *m.*
way, iter, itineris, *n.* (Sec. 468); via, -ae,
*f.* way, manner, modus, -i:, *m.* we,
no:s, *plur. of* ego; *or not expressed*
weak, i:nfi:rmus, -a, -um weapons, arma, -o:rum, *n.
plur.*; te:la, -o:rum, *n. plur.* wear, gero:,
3 weary, de:fessus, -a, -um what, quis (qui:), quae,
quid (quod) (Sec. 483) when, ubi; cum (Sec. 396);
*often expressed by a participle* where, ubi
which, qui:, quae, quod (Sec. 482);  
 which of two, uter, utra, utrum (Sec.
108)  
while, *expressed by a participle* whither,
quo: who (*rel.*), qui:, quae (Sec. 482);
(*interrog.*) quis (Sec. 483) whole, to:tus,
-a, -um (Sec. 108) whose, cuius;  
 quo:rum, qua:rum, quo:rum, *gen. of*
qui:, quae, quod, *rel.*;

**Page 276**

*or of* quis, quid, *interrog*.  
why, cu:r wicked, malus, -a, -um wide, la:tus, -a,
-um width, la:titu:do:, -inis, *f.* wild beast,
fera, -ae, *f.* willing (be), volo:, velle, volui:,
——­ (Sec. 497) win (*a victory*),
reporto:, 1 wind, ventus, -i:, *m.* wine, vi:num,
-i:, *n.* wing, cornu:, -u:s, *n.* winter,
hiems, -emis, *f.* wisdom, co:nsilium, consi’li:,
*n.* wish, cupio:, 3; volo:, velle, volui:, ——­
(Sec. 497);  
 wish not, no:lo:, no:lle, no:lui:, ——­
(Sec. 497)  
with, cum, *with abl.; sometimes abl. alone*
withdraw, se: recipere without, sine, *with
abl.* woman, fe:mina, -ae, *f.*; mulier, -eris,
*f.* wonderful, mi:rus, -a, -um word, verbum,
-i:, *n.* work, labor, -o:ris, *m.*; opus,
-eris, *n.* worse, peior, peius, *comp. of*
malus worst, pessimus, -a, -um, *superl. of*
malus wound (*noun*), vulnus, -eris, *n.*
wound (*verb*), vulnero:, 1 wreath, coro:na,
-ae, *f.* wretched, miser, -era, -erum wrong,
iniu:ria, -ae, *f.*

**Y**

year, annus, -i:, *m.* yes, certe:; ita; ve:ro:;
*or, more usually, repeat the verb* (Sec. 210)
yonder (that), ille, -a, -ud you, *sing*. tu:;
*plur*. vo:s (Sec. 480); *or not expressed*
your, *sing*. tuus, -a, -um; *plur.* vester,
-tra, -trum (Sec. 98.b)

**Z**

zeal, studium, studi:, *n.*

**INDEX**

The numbers in all cases refer to sections.
  
a:-declension of nouns, 57, 461  
a:-verbs, conjugation of, 488  
ablative case, 48, 50  
 absolute, 381  
 after a comparative, 309  
 of accompaniment, 104  
 of agent, 181  
 of cause, 102  
 of description, 444, 445  
 of manner, 105  
 of means or instrument, 103  
 of measure of difference, 317  
 of place from which, 179  
 of place where, 265  
 of separation, 180  
 of specification, 398  
 of time, 275  
accent, 14-16  
accompaniment  
 abl. of, 104  
accusative case, 33  
 as subject of the infinitive, 214  
 object, 37  
 of duration and extent, 336  
 of place to which, 263, 266  
 predicate, 392  
 with prepositions, 340  
adjectives, 54, 55  
 agreement, 65  
 comparison  
 regular, 301  
 by adverbs, 302  
 irregular, 307, 311, 312,
315  
 declension of comparatives, 303  
 of first and second declensions, 83, 93,
469  
 of third declension, 250-257, 471  
 with the dative, 143  
adverbs, 319  
 comparison, 320, 323  
 formation  
 regular, 320, 321  
 irregular, 322, 323  
agent  
 expressed by the abl. with *a:* or
*ab*, 181  
agreement  
 of adjectives, 65, 215.a  
 of appositives, 81  
 of predicate nouns, 76  
 of relative pronouns, 224

**Page 277**

of verbs, 28  
aliquis, 487  
alius, 108, 110, 470  
alphabet, 1-3  
alter, 108, 110  
antepenult, 9.3; accent of, 15  
apposition, 80, 81  
article  
 not used in Latin, 22.a
  
base, 58
  
cardinal numerals, 327-329, 478 case, 32.2 causal
clauses with *cum*, 395, 396 cause,  
 expressed by the abl., 102  
characteristic  
 subjv. of, 389, 390  
comparative  
 declension of, 303  
comparison  
 abl. of, 309  
 degrees of, 300  
 of adjectives, 300-315  
 irregular, 311-315, 473, 475  
 of adverbs  
 regular, 320-476  
 irregular, 323, 477  
 positive wanting, 315  
 six adjectives in \_-lis\_, 307  
complementary infinitive, 215 compound verbs  
 with the dative, 425, 426  
concessive clauses with *cum*, 395, 396 conjugation
stems, 184 conjugations  
 the four regular, 126, 488-491  
 irregular, 494-500  
consonants, 2 copula, 21 cum  
 conjunction, 395  
cum  
 preposition, 209
  
dative case, 43  
 of indirect object, 44, 45  
 of purpose, or end for which, 437  
 with adjectives, 143  
 with compound verbs, 426  
 with special verbs, 153  
dea  
 declension of, 67  
declension, 23, 32  
degree of difference  
 expressed by the abl., 317  
demonstrative adjectives and pronouns, 112-115, 290-292,
481  
deponent verbs, 338, 339, 493  
descriptive ablative and genitive, 441-445  
descriptive relative clause  
 with the subjv., 389, 390  
deus  
 declension of, 468  
difference, measure of, 316, 317  
diphthongs, 6  
direct statements, 414  
distributive numerals, 327.3, 334  
domi:   
 locative, 267  
domus  
 declension of, 468  
duo  
 declension of, 479  
duration of time, expressed by the acc., 336
  
e:-declension of nouns, 272, 273, 467 e:-verbs, conjugation
of, 489 e-verbs, conjugation of, 490 ego  
 declension of, 280, 480  
enclitics, 16 eo:   
 conjugation of, 499  
extent of space  
 expressed by the acc., 336
  
fearing  
 subjv. after verbs of, 370-372  
fero:   
 conjugation of, 498  
fifth or e:-declension, 272, 273, 467 fi:lia  
 declension of, 67  
fi:lius  
 declension of, 87-89  
finite verb  
 defined, 173  
fi:o:   
 conjugation of, 500  
first conjugation, 488 first or a:-declension, 57,
461 fourth conjugation, 491 fourth or u-declension,
259, 260, 466 from  
 how expressed, 178-181  
future participle  
 formation of, 374.c  
future perfect  
 formation of  
 active, 187.3  
 passive, 202  
future tense  
 formation of, 137, 156
  
gender  
 in English and in Latin, 60  
 in the first declension, 61  
 in the second declension, 72  
 in the third declension, 247  
 in the fourth declension, 260  
 in the fifth declension, 272  
general observations on declension, 74  
genitive case  
 English equivalents of, 33

**Page 278**

of description, 443, 445  
 of nouns in \_-ius\_ and \_-ium\_, 87  
 partitive, 331  
 possessive, 38, 409  
gerund  
 a verbal noun, 402, 403  
gerundive  
 a verbal adjective, 404  
 with *ad* to express purpose, 407
  
hic  
 declension and use of, 290, 291  
how to read Latin, 17
  
i  
 consonant, 3  
i-stems of nouns, 231, 241-244 i:-verbs  
 conjugation of, 491  
i:dem  
 declension of, 287, 481  
ie:ns  
 declension of, 472  
ille  
 declension and use of, 290-293, 481  
imperative  
 formation of, 161, 175  
 irregular, 161.2  
 in commands, 161  
imperfect indicative, formation and use of, 133, 134,
165.1 imperfect subjunctive, 354 indefinite pronouns
and adjectives, 296, 297, 484-487 independent clauses,
219 indirect object, 44, 45 indirect questions, 430-432
indirect statements, 414-419 infinitive  
 as object, 213  
 as subject, 216  
 complementary, 215  
 definition of, 173  
 does not express purpose, 352  
 formation of, 126, 174, 205, 206  
 in indirect statements, 415-410  
 used as in English, 213-216  
inflection  
 defined, 23  
instrument  
 abl. of, 100.b, 103  
intensive pronoun *ipse*, declension and use of, 285,
286, 481  
interrogative pronouns and adjectives, 225-227, 483
intransitive verbs,  
 defined, 20.a  
 with the dative, 153  
io:-verbs of the third conj., 492 ipse  
 declension and use of, 285, 481  
irregular adjectives, 108 irregular comparison  
 of adjectives, 307 311, 312  
 of adverbs, 323  
irregular nouns, 67, 246, 468 irregular verbs, 494-500
is  
 declension and use of, 113-116  
iste  
 declension and use of, 290, 292, 481  
iter  
 declension of, 468
  
Latin word order, 68  
locative case, 267
  
magis and maxime:   
 comparison by, 302  
ma:lo:   
 conjugation of, 4.97  
manner  
 abl. of, 105  
means  
 abl. of, 103  
measure of difference  
 abl. of, 316, 317  
mi:lle,  
 declension of, 479  
 construction with, 331.a,b  
moods, defined, 121
  
-ne, enclitic  
 in questions, 210  
ne:, conj., *that not, lest*  
 with negative clauses of purpose, 350.II  
 with verbs of fearing, 370  
nine irregular adjectives, 108-110 no:lo:   
 conjugation of, 497  
nominative case, 35, 36 no:nne  
 in questions, 210  
no:s  
 declension of, 280, 480  
nouns, 19. 2  
 first declension, 57, 461  
 second declension, 71-74,87-92,462  
 third declension, 230-247, 463-465  
 fourth declension, 259, 260, 466  
 fifth declension, 272, 273, 467  
num, in questions, 210 number, 24 numerals, 327-334,
478, 479
  
o-declension of nouns, 71-74, 87-92, 462 object,
20  
 direct, 37  
 indirect, 44, 45  
order of words, 68 ordinal numerals, 327. 2, 478

**Page 279**

participial stem, 201.2  
participles, defined, 203  
 agreement of, 204  
 formation,  
 of present, 374.b  
 of perfect, 201  
 of future, 374.c,d  
 of deponent verbs, 375  
 tenses of, 376  
 translated by a clause, 377  
partitive genitive, 330, 331  
passive voice  
 defined, 163  
 formation of, 164, 202  
penult, 9.3  
 accent of, 15  
perfect indicative  
 formation,  
 in the active, 185, 186  
 in the passive, 202  
 meaning of, 190  
 definite, 190  
 indefinite, 190  
 distinguished from the imperfect, 190  
perfect infinitive  
 active, 195  
 passive, 205  
perfect passive participle, 201  
perfect stem, 185  
perfect subjunctive  
 active, 361  
 passive, 362  
person, 122  
personal endings  
 active, 122  
 passive, 164  
personal pronouns, 280, 480  
place  
 where, whither, whence, 263-265  
 names of towns and *domus* and *ru:s*,
266-268  
pluperfect indicative  
 active, 187.2  
 passive, 202  
pluperfect subjunctive  
 active, 361  
 passive, 363  
plu:s  
 declension of, 313  
possessive pronouns, 97, 98  
possum  
 conjugation of, 495  
predicate  
 defined, 19  
predicate adjective  
 defined, 55  
predicate noun, 75, 76  
prepositions  
 with the abl., 209  
 with the acc., 340  
present indicative, 128, 130, 147  
present stem, 126.a  
present subjunctive, 344  
primary tenses, 356  
principal parts, 183  
pronouns  
 classification of, 278  
 defined, 19.2.a  
 demonstrative, 481  
 indefinite, 297, 484-487  
 intensive, 285, 286, 481  
 interrogative, 483  
 personal, 480  
 possessive, 97, 98  
 reflexive, 281  
 relative, 220, 221  
pronunciation, 4-7  
pro:sum  
 conjugation of, 496  
purpose  
 dative of, 436, 437  
 expressed by the gerund or gerundive with
*ad*, 407  
 not expressed by the infinitive, 352  
 subjunctive of, 348-350, 365-367
  
quality  
 gen. or abl. of, 441-445  
quam  
 with a comparative, 308  
quantity, 11-13  
questions  
 direct, 210  
 indirect, 430-432  
qui:   
 declension and use of, 220,221, 482  
qui:dam  
 declension of, 485  
quis  
 declension and use of, 225-227, 483  
quisquam  
 declension of, 486  
quisque  
 declension of, 484
  
reflexive pronouns, 281 relative clauses of characteristic
or description, 389, 390 relative clauses of purpose,
348, 349 relative pronouns, 220, 221 result clauses,
384-387 reviews, 502-528 ru:s  
 constructions of, 266
  
se:   
 distinguished from *ipse*, 285.a  
second conjugation, 489 second or o-declension, 71-93,
462 sentences  
 simple, complex, compound, 219  
separation  
 abl. of, 180  
separative ablative, 178-181 sequence of tenses,
356-358 space  
 extent of, expressed by the acc., 336  
specification

**Page 280**

abl. of, 398  
stems  
 of nouns, 230  
 of verbs, 184  
subject  
 defined, 19.2  
 of the infinitive, 213, 214  
subjunctive  
 formation of the present, 344  
 of the imperfect, 354  
 of the perfect, 361, 362  
 of the pluperfect, 361.c, 363  
subjunctive constructions  
 characteristic or description, 389, 390  
 indirect questions, 430-432  
 purpose, 349, 366, 372  
 result, 385, 386  
 time, cause, or concession, with *cum*,
395, 396  
subjunctive ideas, 346 subjunctive tenses, 342, 343
subordinate clauses, 219 sui:   
 declension of, 281, 480  
sum  
 conjugation of, 494  
suus  
 use of, 98.c, 116  
syllables, 8  
 division of, 9  
 quantity of, 13  
syntax  
 rules of, 501
  
temporal clauses with *cum*, 395, 396  
tense  
 defined, 120  
tense signs  
 imperfect, 133  
 future, 137, 156  
 pluperfect active, 187.2  
 future perfect active, 187.3  
tenses  
 primary and secondary, 356  
 sequence of, 357, 358  
third conjugation, 490, 492  
third declension of nouns  
 classes, 231, 463  
 consonant stems, 232-238, 464  
 gender, 247  
 i-stems, 241-244, 465  
 irregular nouns, 246  
time  
 abl. of, 275  
time  
 acc. of, 336  
towns  
 rules for names of, 266, 267, 268  
transitive verb, 20.a  
tre:s  
 declension of, 479  
tu:   
 declension of, 280, 480  
tuus  
 compared with *vester*, 98. b
  
u-declension of nouns, 259, 260, 466 ultima, 9. 3
  
verbs  
 agreement of, 28  
 conjugation of, 126, 488-491  
 deponent, 338, 339, 493  
 irregular, 494-500  
 personal endings of, 122, 164  
 principal parts of, 183  
vester  
 compared with *tuus*, 98.b  
vi:s  
 declension of, 468  
vocabularies  
 English-Latin, pp. 332-343  
 Latin-English, pp. 299-331  
 special, pp. 283-298  
vocative case, 56.a  
 of nouns in \_-us\_ of the second declension,
73.b  
 of proper nouns in \_-ius\_ and of *fi:lius*,
88  
voice  
 defined, 163  
volo:   
 conjugation of, 497  
vo:s  
 declension of, 280, 480  
vowels  
 sounds of, 5, 6  
 quantity of, 12

**Page 205**

*ally, companion* *say*
pride *command* (verb)
*fortify* *theresend* *slain*
sit *trainingalso* *take*
school *havehear* to-day
*hurl* *unfriendlypersuade* *driveonly* *favor* (verb)
*nearest* *suitable*
sacred rite *pleasing*
queen *teachflee* *neighboringobey* *destroylately* *friendlyconstant* seize
*ornament*

**Page 203**

*or* (in a question) *his own*
whither *alonewagon* *prize* (noun)
*townsman* master (owner)
*wretched* *carefulnessripe* *plentywar* *troopsnumber* *plan* (noun)
*my* *peoplefree* (adj.) *beautifulchildren* *no* (adj.)
*wall* *ourgrain* *battleweapon* *spearone* *food*
plow (verb) *steadinessthis* or *that* *fatherlandalready* *townhelmet* *fort*
river *campzeal* *neither* (of two)
*any* *muchhe* *agricultureson* *otherslave* *the other* (of two)
*your* (singular) *hardshe* *bootywoman* *frequenthorse* *armed*

**Page 193**

F. P. horta:tus ero: veritus ero: secu:tus ero: parti:tus ero:

**Page 182**

16, se:decim sextus decimus
17, septendecim septimus decimus
18, duode:vi:ginti: (octo:decim) duode:vi:ce:nsimus
19, u:nde:vi:ginti: (novendecim) u:nde:vi:ce:nsimus
20, vi:ginti: vi:ce:nsimus
21, {vi:ginti: u:nus *or* {vi:ce:nsimus pri:mus *or*
{u:nus et vi:ginti:, *etc*. {u:nus et vi:ce:nsimus, *etc*.
30, tri:ginta: tri:ce:nsimus
40, quadra:ginta: quadra:ge:nsimus
50, qui:nqua:ginta: qui:nqua:ge:nsimus
60, sexa:ginta: sexa:ge:nsimus
70, septua:ginta: septua:ge:nsimus
80, octo:ginta: octo:ge:nsimus
90, no:na:ginta: no:na:ge:nsimus
100, centum cente:nsimus
101, centum (et) u:nus, *etc*. cente:nsimus (et) pri:mus, *etc*.
120, centum (et) vi:ginti: cente:nsimus vi:ce:nsimus
121, centum (et) vi:ginti: u:nus, cente:nsimus (et) vi:ce:nsimus
*etc*. pri:mus, *etc*.
200, ducenti:, -ae, -a ducente:nsimus
300, trecenti: trecente:nsimus
400, quadringenti: quadringente:nsimus
500, qui:ngenti: qui:ngente:nsimus
600, sescenti: sescente:nsimus
700, septingenti: septingente:nsimus
800, octingenti: octingente:nsimus
900, no:ngenti: no:ngente:nsimus
1000, mi:lle mi:lle:nsimus

**Page 181**

*outer, exterior* *outermost, last*
i:nferus, *below* i:nferior, *lower* i:nfimus, i:mus, *lowest*
posterus, posterior, *later* postre:mus, postumus,
*following* *last*
superus, *above* superior, supre:mus, summus,
*higher* *highest*
[[cis, citra:,]] citerior, *hither* citimus, *hithermost*
[[*on this side*]]
[[in, intra:,]] interior, *inner* intimus, *inmost*
[[*in, within*]]
[[prae, pro:,]] prior, *former* pri:mus, *first*
[[*before*]]
[[prope, *near*]] propior, *nearer* proximus, *next*
[[ultra:, *beyond*]] ulterior, *further* ultimus, *furthest*

**Page 178**

Dat. deo: domui:, -o: vi: (rare) itineri:
Acc. deum domum vim iter
Abl. deo: domo:, -u: vi: itinere

**Page 175**

Abl. puero: agro: viro: -o: